

CREATED BY  
DR. WES ROBERTSON  
MACQUARIE UNIVERSITY  
@SCRIPTINGJAPAN  
WESLEYCROBERTSON.WORDPRESS.COM

# INTERMEDIATE JAPANESE UNIT BOOK

Created by Dr. Wesley C. Robertson, Japanese Sociolinguist @Macquarie University.  
This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License.





# TABLE OF CONTENTS ・ 目次

|                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| Intermediate Japanese Unit Book .....       | 1   |
| About This Book ・ この教科書について .....           | 4   |
| How to Use This Text ・ 使い方 .....            | 5   |
| Chapter One ・ 第一章 .....                     | 6   |
| Vocabulary ・ ごい .....                       | 6   |
| Grammar ・ 文法 .....                          | 7   |
| Chapter 1 Kanji ・ かんじ .....                 | 13  |
| Chapter 1 Workbook ・ ワークブック 1 .....         | 17  |
| Chapter 1 Workbook Answer Key ・ 解答集 1 ..... | 23  |
| Chapter Two ・ 第二章 .....                     | 29  |
| Vocabulary ・ ごい .....                       | 29  |
| Grammar ・ 文法 .....                          | 30  |
| Chapter 2 Kanji ・ かんじ .....                 | 39  |
| Chapter 2 Workbook ・ ワークブック 2 .....         | 43  |
| Chapter 2 Workbook Answer Key ・ 解答集 2 ..... | 49  |
| Chapter Three ・ 第三章 .....                   | 55  |
| Vocabulary ・ ごい .....                       | 55  |
| Grammar ・ 文法 .....                          | 56  |
| Chapter 3 Kanji ・ かんじ .....                 | 64  |
| Chapter 3 Workbook ・ ワークブック 3 .....         | 68  |
| Chapter 3 Workbook Answer Key ・ 解答集 3 ..... | 75  |
| Chapter Four ・ 第四章 .....                    | 82  |
| Vocabulary ・ ごい .....                       | 82  |
| Grammar ・ 文法 .....                          | 83  |
| Chapter 4 Kanji ・ かんじ .....                 | 89  |
| Chapter 4 Workbook ・ ワークブック 4 .....         | 93  |
| Chapter 4 Workbook Answer Key ・ 解答集 4 ..... | 99  |
| Chapter Five ・ 第五章 .....                    | 105 |
| Vocabulary ・ ごい .....                       | 105 |
| Grammar ・ 文法 .....                          | 106 |
| Chapter 5 Kanji ・ かんじ .....                 | 115 |
| Chapter 5 Workbook ・ ワークブック 5 .....         | 119 |
| Chapter 5 Workbook Answer Key ・ 解答集 5 ..... | 126 |
| Chapter Six ・ 第六章 .....                     | 133 |
| Vocabulary ・ ごい .....                       | 133 |
| Grammar ・ 文法 .....                          | 134 |
| Chapter 6 Kanji ・ かんじ .....                 | 147 |
| Chapter 6 Workbook ・ ワークブック 6 .....         | 151 |
| Chapter 6 Workbook Answer Key ・ 解答集 6 ..... | 158 |

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chapter Seven・第七章.....                     | 165 |
| Vocabulary・ごい.....                         | 165 |
| Grammar・文法.....                            | 166 |
| Chapter 7 Kanji・かんじ.....                   | 177 |
| Chapter 7 Workbook・ワークブック 7.....           | 181 |
| Chapter 7 Workbook Answer Key・解答集 7.....   | 188 |
| Chapter Eight・第八章.....                     | 195 |
| Vocabulary・ごい.....                         | 195 |
| Grammar・文法.....                            | 196 |
| Chapter 8 Kanji・かんじ.....                   | 217 |
| Chapter 8 Workbook・ワークブック 8.....           | 221 |
| Chapter 8 Workbook Answer Key・解答集 8.....   | 230 |
| Chapter Nine・第九章.....                      | 239 |
| Vocabulary・ごい.....                         | 239 |
| Grammar・文法.....                            | 240 |
| Chapter 9 Kanji・かんじ.....                   | 255 |
| Chapter 9 Workbook・ワークブック 9.....           | 259 |
| Chapter 9 Workbook Answer Key・解答集 9.....   | 267 |
| Chapter Ten・第十章.....                       | 275 |
| Vocabulary・ごい.....                         | 275 |
| Grammar・文法.....                            | 276 |
| Chapter 10 Kanji・かんじ.....                  | 287 |
| Chapter 10 Workbook・ワークブック 10.....         | 291 |
| Chapter 10 Workbook Answer Key・解答集 10..... | 299 |
| Chapter Eleven・第十一章.....                   | 307 |
| Vocabulary・ごい.....                         | 307 |
| Grammar・文法.....                            | 308 |
| Chapter 11 Kanji・かんじ.....                  | 320 |
| Chapter 11 Workbook・ワークブック 11.....         | 324 |
| Chapter 11 Workbook Answer Key・解答集 11..... | 334 |
| Chapter Twelve・第十二章.....                   | 344 |
| Vocabulary・ごい.....                         | 344 |
| Grammar・文法.....                            | 345 |
| Chapter 12 Kanji・かんじ.....                  | 356 |
| Chapter 12 Workbook・ワークブック 12.....         | 360 |
| Chapter 12 Workbook Answer Key・解答集 12..... | 364 |
| Grammar Index・ぶんぼうさくいん.....                | 368 |
| So You've Finished・終わったね、よくできた.....        | 371 |

## ABOUT THIS BOOK ・ この教科書について

The textbook that you're reading is the product of about two years of work. I completed it in small bursts: fifteen minutes here, a half hour there, an hour there, no time at all on other days. All after the end of my "real" work. While exhausting, I am certainly proud of actually completing this project, and I hope it serves as a high-quality, open-access resource that will assist many people with their Japanese study for years to come.

This version of the textbook is its **first** edition. Unlike my prior textbooks, this text is not part of my formal work or intended for my university classes, which means that I did not have a team of other teachers to work with, get ideas from, or ask questions to. For better or for worse then (I mean... it's for worse, certainly), I've had to do all the writing and editing myself. Despite my best efforts then, there will unquestionably be typos and imperfect phrasing throughout, and I sincerely apologize if by chance something non-factual has slipped through. All I can do is ask your understanding that this is an unfunded one man project, and so it will suffer from the inherent flaws of that process. The size of this document also makes Microsoft Word groan and gasp, which means unintentional glitches might appear. I've done my best to stamp them out, but every time I delete a few I find that new ones sprout up somewhere, so it's a bit of an endless war. Finally, while I'm being negative, unlike my other textbooks, this one has also not been "battle tested" in real classrooms. Did I organize the grammar/vocab/kanji in the best order I could? Could some of my example sentences be a bit more "natural"? Is there a better way to explain some of the grammar points? I will never know. The textbook is also missing things I want to include one day: minimally, model dialogues at the start of each chapter which use the chapter's grammar/vocab, and culture/language notes. But this is all for the future. If I keep expanding this textbook with the stuff that I want it to have in a perfect world, I don't know when I will be able to release it, so for now I'm pulling the trigger and sending it out into the internet as-is. I'll address any warts or missing bits in the future when my motivation to return to this project comes back. Right now, I'm a bit tired. But one thing I can promise is that I did my best here, edited the full thing multiple times, and put a lot of work into ensuring that this textbook covers everything needed for N4 (and/or Genki II level courses) and a bit beyond in the clearest way I know how at this moment.

So enough about what this text *isn't* or what it *didn't* do then. What this project *is* is a sort of love letter to the early days of the internet that I grew up with, and what a few websites here and there still attempt to do now. It's a thank you to an older time where people would put detailed guides, resources, and videos online without any real concern for reward. Just for the fun of it, just to share knowledge, and just to do something good. Indeed, this textbook is also in part an attempt to pay forward the assistance I received from Japanese resources in the early days of the internet, and in doing so help people to achieve their own goals for their Japanese learning without placing any new financial burdens on them. I believe firmly that education should be free, as we as a society have both a moral and practical imperative to invest in the dreams and goals of our youth. As I am, however, just some guy, I don't have the power to actually enact changes to education policy. What I do have though is a good job which affords me enough of an income that I can spend some time here and there on something that doesn't have any real financial motive behind it. I've certainly worked hard to get to that point, but I'd feel awful if I did nothing with it.

That said, if you do feel like supporting this project and the other work I do on my blog etc., it is welcome. I do have a [Ko-Fi page \(https://ko-fi.com/scriptingjapan\)](https://ko-fi.com/scriptingjapan) where I accept and appreciate donations. But if not a single soul donates, this textbook will always still be free. My primary hope is that people find it to be of extreme use, and the contents to be of high quality. Nothing more. Personally, I am going to take a bit of a break from large projects like this, and for the near future focus on less time consuming ventures like my [blog/dictionary](#). But I'm sure the itch will come again. Not in an N3 textbook of this size or formal structure I don't think... but... something. Maybe. Until then, best of luck with your studies. I'm rooting for you.

がんばり  
ましょう



## HOW TO USE THIS TEXT · 使い方

This book is designed to build off the content of the Japanese 1 & 2 unit books available on the Free Resources section of [wesleycrobertson.wordpress.com](http://wesleycrobertson.wordpress.com). Please do read those first if you aren't familiar with "plain form" Japanese etc., and check out the website and subscribe if you enjoy the book – there are other free language learning resources available there as well! The current text broadly covers the content of textbooks like Genki II, and is designed to assist learners in moving from N5 level past N4 into the start of N3. Do note that you are reading version 1.0, so apologies for any errors/poor explanations.

The text is currently in a basic form, with each chapter containing the following sections: **vocabulary**, **grammar**, **kanji**, and **workbook**. **Culture notes**, **model dialogues**, and a comprehensive **review** section may be added in the future.

The **vocabulary** section of each chapter lists terms that are useful with the grammar of that section, and words that will appear without any explanation in the text moving forward. Words are generally divided by word type, and verbs are presented in their plain forms. The **grammar** sections explain the major grammar points in each chapter, and provides examples of their use.

The **kanji** section in each chapter lists 18 new kanji. Each kanji is presented with its meaning(s), *kun-yomi* ("Japanese" reading), *on-yomi* ("Chinese" reading), and sample uses. While I have tried to ensure that many of the sample uses of new kanji appear in each chapter's vocabulary list, I have not always been successful in doing so for various boring reasons. As a result, I do encourage you to treat the sample uses section as a sort of secondary vocabulary list; I have not included any sample uses that are not useful to know.

|                                                                             |                 |                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| This is how the kanji should look when you write it by hand.<br><div></div> | Meaning         | One                                                                                                           | The kanji's meaning(s).                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                             | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ひと(つ)                                                                                                         | Common readings of the kanji. Elements in ( ) should be written in hiragana. You don't need to memorize readings absent from "sample uses". |
|                                                                             | <i>On yomi</i>  | いち、いっ                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                             | Sample uses     | <div>いっかい<br/>一回<br/>ひと<br/>一つ<br/>いっぶん<br/>一分</div> <div>いちがつ<br/>一月<br/>いちじ<br/>一時<br/>いちねんせい<br/>一年生</div> |                                                                                                                                             |

Sample uses of the kanji to represent vocabulary. Some examples may include kanji that haven't been introduced. You must be able to read/write all of these by the end of the semester, but you don't have to be able to read/write them before their kanji are introduced. Sample uses are written using the printed font.

Finally, the **workbook** section in each week presents a number of exercises for practicing the content of each week. You may want to check with a study buddy, as while the answer keys are available, many "free answer" spaces will benefit from a second set of eyes.

All clip art in this textbook comes from the incredible [www.irasutoya.com](http://www.irasutoya.com), and all kanji stroke orders come from [www.kakijun.com](http://www.kakijun.com).

This textbook was created by Dr. Wesley C. Robertson of Macquarie University. It is open access and licensed under the Creative Commons [Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/). Under this licence, sharing and using this textbook is permitted if credit is given to the author, but alteration of the textbook is not permitted, nor is reproduction/use of the textbook for profit.



## CHAPTER ONE ・ 第一章

### VOCABULARY ・ ごい

#### Nouns

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| かぶ       | stocks              |
| きんこうこうざ  | bank account        |
| げき       | a play, a drama     |
| こうこく     | print advertisement |
| こうどう     | behavior            |
| こうほしゃ    | a candidate         |
| せいきゅうしょ  | a bill, invoice     |
| さいこう     | great, the best     |
| さいご (に)  | the last (lastly)   |
| さいしょ (に) | the first (firstly) |
| しめきり     | deadline            |
| しゅうしょく   | job hunting         |
| じょうし     | boss                |
| せんきょ     | an election         |
| ばしょ      | a place             |
| ぶんみやく    | context             |
| めんせつ     | (job) interview     |
| レポート     | report              |

#### い Adjectives

|       |                     |
|-------|---------------------|
| あやしい  | suspicious, sketchy |
| でかい   | huge, large         |
| のぞましい | desired, preferable |

#### な Adjectives

|     |                       |
|-----|-----------------------|
| ざつ  | shoddy, poorly done   |
| りっぱ | upstanding, excellent |

#### う Verbs

|      |                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| あやまる | to apologize                      |
| おろす  | to take down, to withdraw (money) |
| おどる  | to dance                          |
| こぼす  | to spill [trans]                  |
| しはらう | to pay                            |
| なおす  | to fix [trans]                    |
| なおる  | fixes, heals [intrans]            |
| ひやす  | to chill [trans]                  |
| ふりこむ | to despoit money                  |

#### る Verbs

|          |                    |
|----------|--------------------|
| あきらめる    | to give up         |
| こぼれる     | to spill [intrans] |
| しんじる     | to believe         |
| [~に]つとめる | to be employed     |
| ひえる      | to chill [intrans] |

#### Comp. Verbs

|         |                    |
|---------|--------------------|
| さくじょする  | to delete          |
| ちょきんする  | to save money      |
| ていしゅつする | to submit (a file) |
| てんそうする  | to forward (email) |
| とうひょうする | to vote            |
| へんしゅうする | to edit            |

#### Verb Phrases

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| [placeに]しゅうし<br>よくする | to get a job         |
| めんせつをうける             | to take an interview |



## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 1.1: Asking/Giving permission via ~てもいい

In this chapter, our grammar points will focus on giving and asking for permission, providing recommendations, and similar activities.

Our first step is simply asking for/giving permission. To do this, we first need to use the ~て form. To review, we create the positive ~て form of...

...nouns and な adjectives by adding で to the word...

|      |   |       |
|------|---|-------|
| せんせい | → | せんせいで |
| すき   | → | すきで   |

Remember that there are な adjectives that end in い like きれい & きれい. Their て form is still +で (e.g., きれいで)

...い adjectives by changing the final い to くて...

|       |   |        |
|-------|---|--------|
| おもしろい | → | おもしろくて |
| かわいい  | → | かわいくて  |

Remember that いい conjugates as though it was よい. The て form is therefore よくて.

...irregular verbs by memorizing them...

|    |   |    |
|----|---|----|
| する | → | して |
| くる | → | きて |

...る verbs by changing る to て...

|     |   |     |
|-----|---|-----|
| たべる | → | たべて |
| しめる | → | しめて |

...う verbs by altering the verb depending on its ending sound...

|                               |            |
|-------------------------------|------------|
| Final = う, つ, る changes to って | すう → すって   |
|                               | もつ → もって   |
|                               | ある → あって   |
| Final = む, ぶ, ぬ changes to んで | のむ → のんで   |
|                               | あそぶ → あそんで |
|                               | しぬ → しんで   |
| Final = く changes to いて       | あるく → あるいて |
| Final = ぐ changes to いで       | およぐ → およいで |
| Final = す changes to して       | はなす → はなして |

...and all word types in their negative plain form by turning ~ない ~なくて

Remember that いく is an exception – it conjugates into 行って for its て form.





| Plain |   | Plain negative |   | Negative て |
|-------|---|----------------|---|------------|
| せんせい  | → | せんせいじゃない       | → | せんせいじゃなくて  |
| しずか   | → | しずかではない        | → | しずかじゃなくて   |
| あつい   | → | あつくない          | → | あつくなくて     |
| する    | → | しない            | → | しなくて       |
| くる    | → | こない            | → | こなくて       |
| たべる   | → | たべない           | → | たべなくて      |
| のむ    | → | のまない           | → | のまなくて      |



Let's focus on verbs, because they are the most commonly used for asking permission. By adding ~もいい (ですか) to a verb's ~て form, you ask if it is okay to do the verb/activity.

ここでおさけを飲む。

[I will **drink** alcohol here.]

ここでおさけを飲んでもいい？

ここでおさけを飲んでもいいですか。

[Is it **okay to drink** alcohol here?]



If you don't end the sentence as a question, you instead *give* permission to do the verb.

「あ、きょうかしよをわすれた！」 「わたしのをつかつてもいいよ。」

[Ah, I forgot my textbook!] [It's **okay to use** mine.]

今週はテストがありませんから、パーティーに行ってもいいですよ。

[There's no tests this week so **it is okay** for you/us **to go to the party**.]



When the verb is conjugated into the negative ~て form, you instead use ~なくてもいい to ask/give permission to *not* do the verb.

今日はかぜをひいたので、アルバイトに行かなくてもいい？

[I caught a cold so is it **okay** if I **don't go to work**?]

いりませんから買わなくてもいいですよ。

[You/we don't need it so **it's fine to not buy** it.]

げんきがたくさんあるから、今おろさなくてもいい。

[We have a lot of cash so you **don't need to withdraw** any now.]



When trying to ask open-ended questions like "what may/should I do" use the ~ば pattern from **Grammar Point 6.4** instead.

We can also attach this pattern to the ~て form of adjectives and nouns, in which case the ~もいい construction asks if the noun/adjective is acceptable.

「木曜日でもいいですか。」 「あ、すみません、木曜日はだめです。」  
 [“Is **Thursday** **okay**?”] [Ah, sorry, Thursday doesn’t work.]

ばんごはんのよやくをいれているんだけど、**たかいところでもいい**?  
 [I’m making the dinner reservations, but is **an expensive place** **okay**?]

しんぱいしないでください! **ちょっとからくても**私は**だいじょうぶ**ですから。  
 [Please don’t worry! I’m **fine** **even if it’s a little bit spicy**.]

だいじょうぶ can also be used in place of いい

### Grammar Point 1.2: Forbidding via ~てはいけない

If someone asks our permission, there are a number of ways we’ve already learned for replying in the negative. Each has differences in terms of how rough/polite/curt it sounds:

「あなたのフライドポテトを一本**食べてもいい**ですか。」

「あ、すみませんが…」

「あ、今日はあまり食べなかったんですが…」

「あ、それはちょっと…」

「私のフライドポテトをたべないでください。」

「いいえ、わたしのです。」

「いやだ。・だめだ。」

The first three are polite, implied rejections. The fourth is polite, but straightforward. The last two are blunt or rude.

We can create an even more explicit form of rejection via the ~て form. To say someone “must not [verb]”, add ~てはいけない to the ~て form of the verb. This form isn’t rude, but it is quite strong, and translates something like “must not”.

ここでたばこを**すってはいけません**。

[You **must not** **smoke** here.]

あしたは早くおきるので、おそくまで**あそんではいけない**。

[I have to wake up early tomorrow so I **can’t** **hang out** until late.]

このファイルは大せつなので来年まで**さくじょしてはいけません**。

[This file is important so you **must not** **delete** it until next year.]

This は is the particle は, so it is pronounced like わ



As you saw, ~てはいけない sometimes translate as “cannot”, but only when something is forbidden, immoral, or a bad idea. We can’t use ~てはいけない to say “cannot” when it can’t be replaced by “must not”. When you can’t do something because it is impossible or you are physically unable, as in Sentence 4, ~てはいけない is inappropriate.



クラスがあるからビールを飲んではいけません。

[I have class so I **can't/must not** drink beer.]

くすりを飲んでいるのでビールを飲んではいけません。

[I'm taking medicine, so I **can/must not** drink beer.]

私のビールではないので飲んではいけません。

[It isn't my beer, so I **cannot/mustn't** drink it.]



ビールがないからビールを飲んではいけません。

[I don't have beer so I **cannot/must not** drink beer.]

This final sentence doesn't make sense, it should be 飲めない.  
~てはいけない can't be used for things that are literally impossible.



### Grammar Point 1.3: Saying [verb] is necessary via ~なければ/~なくては

Our next grammar form will modify verbs to show that something *must* be done. Just like the negative forms of nouns, this new form involves multiple choices and steps, but each combination means the same thing. It is fine to have a preference, but you need to know all combinations as you will encounter them in Japanese speech and writing.

For our first step, we change our verb to its negative plain form. Then, change the final ない to (1) なければ or (2) なくては. Just like では vs じゃ, there's no real difference.



たべる → たべない → たべなければ

なおす → なおさない → なおさなくては

する → しない → しなければ

This は is the particle は, so it is pronounced like わ

For the second and final step, add either (1) ならない or (2) いけません. In polite form, these respectively become なりません and いけません.

とうひょう しない。

[I **won't** vote.]

とうひょう してはいけません。

[I **must not** vote.]

とうひょう しなくては いけません。

とうひょう しなくては なりません。

とうひょう し なければ いけません。

とうひょう し なければ なりません。

[I **must** vote/I **have to** vote.]

~ないといけない  
also works, but  
~ないとならない  
does not.



The terms “must” and “have to” obviously can imply a level of responsibility or obligation, so be careful telling people they *have to* do things too often or forcefully (unless, of course, you *intend* to scold/order them around). However, the phrase can refer to your own responsibilities or refer to matter-of-factual requirements without any complications.

あなたがわるかったから、かれにあやまらなければならないよ。

[You were bad, so you **must** apologize to him.]

よやくをあした入れなくてはなりませんから、はやくきめてください。

[I **need to** make the reservation tomorrow, so please decide soon.]



In casual speech, ~なくては・なければ sometimes become なきゃ・なくちゃ・ないと. When this happens, the second half of the phrase is often dropped or changed to ため.

あ！九時だ！行かなきゃ！

[Ah! It's 9! I **gotta** go!]

さいごの電車にのらなくちゃだめだ。

[I **better** get on the last train.]

#### Grammar Point 1.4: Recommending with ~ほうがいい

To *recommend* that someone do something instead of saying it is okay/mandatory, attach ~ほうがいい to the verb or verb phrase in its **plain positive past** form.



わしょくのレストランでおはしを使ったほうがいいです。

[It is **best to use** chopsticks at a Japanese restaurant.]

テストをうける前に、いっしょうけんめいべんきょうしたほうがいいよ。

[Before taking a test, it is **best to study** as much as you can.]

You can replace いい with other adjectives to say that doing a verb is [more adjective]. If you want to compare actions, you can add a **plain present** form verb + より too.

自分で朝ごはんを作ったほうが（買うより）安くてけんこうです。

[**Making** breakfast yourself is **cheaper and healthier** (than buying it).]

コンピューターでやったほうが（手でやるより）かんたんだね。

[**Doing** it via a computer is **easier** (than doing it by hand), isn't it.]



To recommend that someone *not* do something instead, attach a verb in the **plain negative present** form to ~ほうがいい directly.

今日は行かないほうがいいですよ。

[It's **best to not go** today.]

くさいものを食べないほうがいい。

[You **really shouldn't eat** smelly things.]



Just like with ~たほうが, you can replace the いい in this negative version with any adjective that makes sense. For example, 行かないほうが安い would mean “it is cheaper to not go” rather than “best to not go”.



### Grammar Point 1.5: Using ために to say “for” or “in order to”

The phrase ~ために has two distinct but very useful applications. The first is to say you are going to do a verb *for* a noun, which you do by attaching ~ために to that noun via の.

かのじょ **のために** とてもきれいな花を十本買いました。

[I bought ten beautiful flowers **for** my girlfriend.]

あしたのパーティー **のために** アパートをそうじしている。

[I'm cleaning the apartment **for** tomorrow's party.]



You can also create the meaning of “in order to verb” by attaching ~ために to a verb in its **plain present positive** or **potential (“can do”, see Grammar Point 3.1)** forms.

テストに **ごうかくする** **ために** 毎日れんしゅうしています。

[**In order to** **pass** the test, I'm practicing every day.]

つよく **なる** **ために**、うんどうしたほうがいい。

[**In order to** **become** stronger, it is best if you exercise.]

**ひやす** **ために**、飲みものをれいぞうこに入れてください。

[Please put the drinks in the fridge **in order to** **chill** them.]



### Grammar Point 1.6: Creating different “shoulds” with べき and はず

Finally, Japanese has different ways to say “should” depending on if “should” = *strong obligation* or “should” = *likely to occur*. For the obligation “should”, attach a **plain present positive** verb to ~べき. Note that ~する becomes ~すべき not ~するべき.

学生は毎日 **べんきょうす** **べき**だよ。

[Students **should** **study** every day.]

あなたがこわしましたから、あなたが **なおす** **べき**です。

[You broke it, so you **should** **fix** it.]



To create “(obligation) shouldn't”, negate ~べき rather than the verb that attaches to it.

子どもはこうじょうで **はたらく** **べき**ではない。

[Children **shouldn't** **work** in factories.]

You can negate the verb to create “should [not verb]” instead of “shouldn't [verb]”.

For the “should” that means “likely”, instead attach any **plain form** verb to はず (だ) .

あしたは、雨が **ふらない** **はず**だ。

[It **should** **not rain** tomorrow.]

しゃしんを **とった** **はず**ですが、カメラにありません。

[I'm sure I **took** the picture, but it's not in my camera.]

Unlike べき, these are things that are likely or you believe *should* happen based on what you know. はず is the “probably” should, not the “must” should.



## CHAPTER 1 KANJI • かんじ

This week, we will learn 18 kanji that fill in gaps from Books 1/2, or represent simple terms.

|   |                 |                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 曜 | Meaning         | Day                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | よう                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>きんよう び</small><br/>金曜日 </div> <div> <small>なんよう び</small><br/>何曜日 </div> <div> <small>げつよう び</small><br/>月曜日 </div> <div> <small>にちよう び</small><br/>日曜日 </div>   |
| 国 | Meaning         | Country                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | くに                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | こく・ごく                                                                                                                                                                         |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>くに</small><br/>国 </div> <div> <small>せんごくじだい</small><br/>戦国時代 </div> <div> <small>ちゅうごく</small><br/>中国 </div> <div> <small>かんこく</small><br/>韓国 </div>            |
| 仕 | Meaning         | To attend to, official                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | つか (える)                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | し・じ                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>つか</small><br/>仕える (to serve) </div> <div> <small>しごと</small><br/>仕事 </div> <div> <small>しぐさ</small><br/>仕草 (gesture) </div>                                     |
| 事 | Meaning         | A thing (abstract), a matter                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | こと                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | じ・ず                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>こと</small><br/>事 </div> <div> <small>こうつう じ こ</small><br/>交通事故 </div> <div> <small>しごと</small><br/>仕事 </div> <div> <small>じ む しつ</small><br/>事務室 (office) </div> |

Remember! Don't draw the dangly bits the computers show you whenever they draw a 口

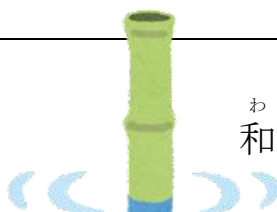


|   |                 |                                                                                                              |
|---|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 長 | Meaning         | Long                                                                                                         |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | なが (い)                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ちょう                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses     | なが<br>長い                      しゃちょう<br>社長                                                                    |
| 短 | Meaning         | Short                                                                                                        |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | みじか (い)                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | たん                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses     | みじか<br>短い                                                                                                    |
| 映 | Meaning         | Reflection                                                                                                   |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | うつ (る)                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | えい                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses     | えい が<br>映画                      うつ<br>映る (to reflect)                                                        |
| 画 | Meaning         | Picture, Image                                                                                               |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | えが (く)                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | が・かく                                                                                                         |
|   | Sample uses     | えい が<br>映画                      まん が<br>漫画<br>けいかく<br>計画 (a plan)                      が ぞう<br>画像 (an image) |
| 猫 | Meaning         | Cat                                                                                                          |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ねこ                                                                                                           |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | びょう                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses     | ねこ<br>猫                      あいびょうか<br>愛猫家 (a cat lover)                                                     |

漫画 is often written as  
マンガ in katakana



|   |                 |                                                 |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 虫 | Meaning         | Insect                                          |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | むし                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ちゅう                                             |
|   | Sample uses     | むし 虫<br>むしば 虫歯 (cavity)                         |
| 石 | Meaning         | Stone                                           |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | いし                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | せき                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | いし 石<br>いっせきにちょう 一石二鳥<br>(two birds, one stone) |
| 竹 | Meaning         | Bamboo                                          |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | たけ                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ちく                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | たけ 竹                                            |
| 糸 | Meaning         | Thread                                          |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | いと                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | けい                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | いと 糸                                            |
| 紙 | Meaning         | Paper                                           |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | かみ                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | し                                               |
|   | Sample uses     | かみ 紙<br>てがみ 手紙<br>わし 和紙 (Japanese paper)        |





|   |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 魚 | Meaning     | Fish                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    | さかな                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|   | On yomi     | ぎょ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>さかな</small><br/>魚 </div> <div> <small>きんぎょ</small><br/>金魚 (goldfish) </div> <div> <small>にんぎょ</small><br/>人魚 (mermaid) </div>                                                                                                  |
| 鳥 | Meaning     | Bird                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    | とり                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | On yomi     | ちょう                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>とり</small><br/>鳥 </div> <div> <small>とりにく</small><br/>鳥肉 </div> <div> <small>とりにく</small><br/>鶏肉 </div>                                                                                                                        |
| 馬 | Meaning     | Horse                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | うま                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | On yomi     | ば                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>うま</small><br/>馬 </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 物 | Meaning     | Thing (tangible)                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | もの                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | On yomi     | ぶつ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>もの</small><br/>物 </div> <div> <small>きもの</small><br/>着物 </div> <div> <small>たもの</small><br/>食べ物 </div> <div> <small>のもの</small><br/>飲み物 </div> <div> <small>どうぶつ</small><br/>動物 </div> <div> <small>たてもの</small><br/>建物 </div> |

Both of these are used to write "chicken meat"



# CHAPTER 1 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 1

## Exercise 1.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

### 1. 曜

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 曜            | 曜 | 曜 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 2. 国

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 国            | 国 | 国 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 3. 仕

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 仕            | 仕 | 仕 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 4. 事

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 事            | 事 | 事 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 5. 長

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 長            | 長 | 長 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 6. 短

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 短            | 短 | 短 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

## 7. 映

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 映            | 映 | 映 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 冫 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 映 | 映 |

## 8. 画

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 画            | 画 | 画 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 冫 | 冫 | 冫 | 冫 | 冫 | 冫 | 冫 | 画 | 画 |

## 9. 虫

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 虫            | 虫 | 虫 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 冫 | 冫 | 中 | 虫 | 虫 | 虫 | 虫 | 虫 | 虫 |

## 10. 猫

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 猫            | 猫 | 猫 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 丿 | 丿 | 犭 | 犭 | 犭 | 犭 | 犭 | 猫 | 猫 |

## 11. 石

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 石            | 石 | 石 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 丿 | 丿 | 石 | 石 | 石 | 石 | 石 | 石 | 石 |

## 12. 竹

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 竹            | 竹 | 竹 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 丿 | 丿 | 竹 | 竹 | 竹 | 竹 | 竹 | 竹 | 竹 |





### Exercise 1.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. いととあそんでいるねこにさかなをわたしてもいいですか。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. どうぶつとにちょうびにしごとをしなくてもいいよ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. ほんからじぶんのくにまでとりやむしをもってかえってはいけません。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. そのうまはあしがながいのではしるのがはやいはずだ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. じかんがあまりないのでみじかいえいがをみたほうがいい。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. いしをなげるべきではないよ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. たけからかみをつくことができる。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 1.3

List one thing you *must* and *must not* do at each location, as per the example.

EXAMPLE: 日本語のクラスでは、日本語で話さなければなりません。

ねてはいけません。

1. おんせんでは、  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. どうぶつえんでは、  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. 電車にのってい時に、  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 1.4

Create three different endings for each sentence by listing advice using each of the grammar patterns listed.

1. 日本に行く前に、  
(～たほうがいい) \_\_\_\_\_  
(～なくてもいい) \_\_\_\_\_  
(～ないほうがいい) \_\_\_\_\_
2. おふろに入っている時に、  
(～てはいけない) \_\_\_\_\_  
(～なくてはならない) \_\_\_\_\_  
(～べき) \_\_\_\_\_
3. うんどうした後で、  
(～べきではない) \_\_\_\_\_  
(～はず) \_\_\_\_\_  
(～なければいけない) \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 1.5

Fill in the second half of each sentence with something that makes sense given the prompt.

1. つよくなるために、\_\_\_\_\_
2. 先生になるために、\_\_\_\_\_
3. 自分の車を買うために、\_\_\_\_\_
4. あしたのパーティーのために、\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 1.6

Fill in the blank to make the English and the Japanese match.

1. He should (=is likely to) come tomorrow.

かれはあした来る\_\_\_\_\_。

2. You don't need to apologize, but you can't give up.

あやま\_\_\_\_\_が、あきらめ\_\_\_\_\_。

3. It's best if you aren't late, so it's best to leave early.

おくれ\_\_\_\_\_ので、はやく出かけ\_\_\_\_\_。

4. I need to sleep properly. I shouldn't always plays games until midnight...

ちゃんとね\_\_\_\_\_。いつも十二時まで\_\_\_\_\_。

5. It's best to save your money, but buying nice things is more fun.

お金を\_\_\_\_\_が、すてきな物を買\_\_\_\_\_。

6. I need to do my best for my family.

かぞく\_\_\_\_\_がんば\_\_\_\_\_。

7. May I forward this email to our boss?

\_\_\_\_\_にこの E メールを\_\_\_\_\_。

# CHAPTER 1 WORKBOOK ANSWER KEY • 解答集 1

## Exercise 1.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

### 1. 曜

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 曜            | 曜 | 曜 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

### 2. 国

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 国            | 国 | 国 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |

### 3. 仕

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 仕            | 仕 | 仕 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |

### 4. 事

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 事            | 事 | 事 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |

### 5. 長

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 長            | 長 | 長 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |

### 6. 短

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 短            | 短 | 短 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |

## 7. 映

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 映            | 映 | 映 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 映 |

## 8. 画

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 画            | 画 | 画 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 画 | 画 |

## 9. 虫

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 虫            | 虫 | 虫 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 口 | 中 | 虫 | 虫 |  |  |  |  |

## 10. 猫

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 猫            | 猫 | 猫 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 勹 | 勹 | 犛 | 犛 | 犛 | 犛 | 犛 | 犛 | 猫 |

## 11. 石

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 石            | 石 | 石 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 丿 | 丿 | 石 | 石 | 石 |  |  |  |  |

## 12. 竹

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 竹            | 竹 | 竹 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 乚 | 个 | 个 | 个 | 个 | 竹 | 竹 |  |  |



|              |   |   |                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 糸            | 糸 | 糸 |                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 紙            | 紙 | 紙 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 魚            | 魚 | 魚 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 鳥            | 鳥 | 鳥 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 馬            | 馬 | 馬 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

[illegible]

## Exercise 1.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. いととあそんでいるねこにさかなをわたしてもいいですか。

Rewrite: 糸とあそんでいる猫に魚をわたしてもいいですか。

Translate: May I pass a fish to the cat playing with thread?

2. どうぶとにちようびにしごとをしなくてもいいよ。

Rewrite: 土曜日と日曜日に仕事をしなくてもいいよ。

Translate: It's okay to not work on Saturday and Sunday.

3. にほんからじぶんのくにまでとりやむしをもってかえってはいけません。

Rewrite: 日本から自分の国まで鳥や虫を持ってかえってはいけません。

Translate: You must not bring birds, bugs, etc. back to your own country from Japan.

4. そのうまはあしがながいのではしるのがはやいはずだ。

Rewrite: その馬は足が長いので走るのがはやいはずだ。

Translate: That horse has long legs so it should run fast.

5. じかんがあまりないのでみじかいえいがをみたほうがいい。

Rewrite: 時間があまりないので短い映画を見たほうがいい。

Translate: We don't have much time so we should watch a short movie.

6. いしをなげるべきではないよ。

Rewrite: 石をなげるべきではないよ。

Translate: You shouldn't throw rocks.

7. たけからかみをつくることができる。

Rewrite: 竹から紙を作ることができる。

Translate: You can make paper from bamboo.

### Exercise 1.3

List one thing you *must* and *must not* do at each location, as per the

EXAMPLE: 日本語のクラスでは、日本語で話さなければなりません。

ねてはいけません。

1. おんせんでは、休まなければなりません。

ビールを飲んではいけません。

2. どうぶつえんでは、どうぶつを見なければなりません。

どうぶつを食べてはだめです。

3. 電車にのっている時に、自分のバッグを持たなければなりません。

電話を使ってはいけません。

### Exercise 1.4

Create three different endings for each sentence by listing advice using each of the grammar patterns listed.

1. 日本に行く前に、  
(～たほうがいい) 日本語をべんきょうしたほうがいいです。

(～なくてもいい) 漢字を3000字おぼえなくてもいいです。

(～ないほうがいい) ビザをわすれないほうがいいです。

ビザ, not ピザ

2. おふろに入っている時に、  
(～てはいけない) ふくをきてはいけない。

(～なくてはならない) 体をあらわなくてはならない。

(～べき) 休むべきだ。

3. うんどうした後で、  
(～べきではない) ジムでねるべきではない。

(～はず) 体が気持ちよくなるはずだ。

(～なければいけない) 何か食べなければいけない。

### Exercise 1.5

Fill in the second half of each sentence with something that makes sense given the prompt.

1. つよくなるために、毎日スポーツをしている。
2. 先生になるために、大学で<sup>education</sup>きょういくをべんきょうしている。
3. 自分の車を買うために、アルバイトをはじめた。
4. あしたのパーティーのために、ビールやおやつをたくさん買った。

### Exercise 1.6

Fill in the blank to make the English and the Japanese match.

1. He should (=is likely to) come tomorrow.

かれはあした来る はずだ。

来るべき would mean  
“should” as in “has an  
obligation to”

2. You don't need to apologize, but you can't give up.

あやま らなくてもいいです が、あきらめ てはいけません

You don't have  
to use plain or  
polite to answer  
these questions,  
it's your choice.

3. It's best if you aren't late, so it's best to leave early.

おくれ ないほうがいい ので、はやく出かけ たほうがいい。

4. I need to sleep properly. I shouldn't always play games until midnight...

ちゃんとね なければいけない。いつも十二時まで ゲームをすべきではない  
ゲームをしないほうがいい

5. It's best to save your money, but buying nice things is more fun.

ちょきんしたほうがいいです ったほうがたのしいです  
お金を が、すてきな物を買 。

6. I need to do my best for my family.

かぞく のために がんばらなければなりません。

7. May I forward this email to our boss?

じょうし にこの E メールを てんそうしてもいいですか。

## CHAPTER TWO ・ 第二章

### VOCABULARY ・ ごい

#### Nouns

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| いけん         | opinion               |
| かいぎ         | work meeting          |
| かこ          | the past              |
| かんがえ        | an idea               |
| きぼう         | wish, desire          |
| きょうし        | teacher               |
| せつめい        | explanation           |
| しょうらい       | (nearer) future       |
| じっけん        | an experiment         |
| てつがく        | philosophy            |
| とうろん        | a debate              |
| はつおん        | pronunciation         |
| はつめい        | invention             |
| はっぴょう       | a presentation        |
| ニュース        | the news              |
| の かい<br>飲み会 | drinking party        |
| まちがい        | a mistake             |
| みらい         | (farther away) future |
| ろんぶん        | thesis                |
| ゆめ          | dream                 |
| ようやく        | a summary             |

#### い Adjectives

|     |                      |
|-----|----------------------|
| あさい | shallow              |
| こわい | scary, scared        |
| したい | close [relationship] |
| ふかい | deep                 |

#### な Adjectives

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| がんこ     | stubborn     |
| らく<br>楽 | easy, simple |

#### う Verbs

|          |                       |
|----------|-----------------------|
| あ<br>上がる | to rise up [intrans]  |
| い<br>言う  | to say                |
| うむ       | to give birth         |
| うまれる     | to be born [intrans]  |
| えらぶ      | to choose             |
| おちつく     | to calm down          |
| おこる      | to become angry       |
| おもう      | to think [opinion]    |
| さ<br>下がる | to go down [intrans]  |
| さそう      | to invite             |
| たたかう     | to fight              |
| ふやす      | to increase [trans]   |
| へらす      | to decrease [trans]   |
| へる       | to decrease [intrans] |
| まちがう     | to be incorrect       |
| まよう      | to be lost [intrans]  |

#### る Verbs

|      |                       |
|------|-----------------------|
| たずねる | to visit, to inquire  |
| ふえる  | to increase [intrans] |

#### Compound Verbs

|         |            |
|---------|------------|
| けんとうする  | to debate  |
| はつめいする  | to invent  |
| はっぴょうする | to present |

#### Adverbs

|     |       |
|-----|-------|
| もっと | more  |
| また  | again |



## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 2.1: The verbs for “to say” and “to think”

In Japanese, to talk about people’s statements and opinions/thoughts, including your own, we need to use the plain form along with the verbs 言う (to say), and 思う (to think).

When talking about your own speech or things often said, end the statement in the **plain form** and then add と言う, conjugating 言う as necessary. In non-casual speech, だ is required before と when quoted speech ends in a **positive present** noun or な-adjective.

父はよくタバコをすうけど、すわないほうがいいと言う。

[My father often smokes, but he **says** it’s best to not smoke.]

私はダメだったと言わなかったよ。

[I **didn’t say** it wasn’t acceptable.]

positive present  
な adjective needs だ

かれはいつもなっとうがとてもけんこうてきだと言っている。

[He is always **saying** natto is very healthy.]



When reporting/paraphrasing an utterance someone else made, rather than just stating they say something often (as above), it is standard to use the (だ) と言っていた form instead of (だ) と言う unless you weren’t there (e.g., you’re quoting a dead person). This isn’t required when 言う is part of a longer sentence, but it’s best to do in all other cases.

かれは行かないと言っていた。でも、多分来る。

[He **said** (lit: was saying) he **won’t go**. But he’ll probably come.]

子どもが来月うまれると中川さんが言っていた。

[Nakagawa **said** the(ir) child will be born next month.]



Since someone’s statement may involve a topic of its own, you might end up with two uses of は when reporting speech. This is fine, but be sure place the speaker-topic in front.

先生は、テストはあしただと言っていました。

[The teacher **said** the test is tomorrow.]

マイクさんは、のぶさんはたけしさんが好きだと言っていた。

[Mike **said** that Nobu likes Takeshi.]



However, when using quote marks don’t add だ after the quote. Just attach と言っている。

彼は「てつがくがきらいです！」と言っていた。

[He **said** “I hate philosophy!”.]

Since this is my direct quote, you can also use polite form before 言う if I used polite form when speaking.





Finally, in casual speech と言う can become っていう instead. You can even drop 言う and end a sentence with just って, but this is best avoided outside of very casual contexts.

あ、まりちゃんは来ないよ。今日八時まではたらくことになったって言っていた。  
[Oh, Mari won't be coming. She **said** she ended up having to work until 8 today.]

うるさいって言ったよ！ちゃんと聞いている？  
[I **said** you're being loud! Are you listening properly?]

かれがとてもおこっているって。  
[(Someone) **said** he's super angry.]



To talk about thoughts, you instead use the verb おもう (思う in kanji). Just like with 言う, we construct the thought in the **plain form** and then attach it to 思う via the particle(s) (だ) と, and use (だ) と 思っている when discussing someone else's thoughts.

猫だと思ったが、犬だった。  
[I **thought** it was a cat, but it was a dog.]

私はかっこいいと思います、かれしはそう思っていない。  
[I **think** it's cool, but my boyfriend doesn't **think** so.]



「そうおもう」 and 「そうだとおもう」 are both used.

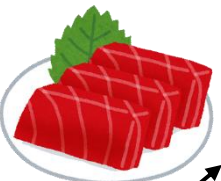
Thoughts can have their own topics too, so it is also fine if these sentences use は twice.

かれはしんじさんは来ないと思った。  
[He **thought** Shinji wouldn't come.]

私は、兄はさしみがきらいだと思っていましたが、きのうたくさん食べました。  
[I **thought** my older brother hated sashimi, but he ate a whole bunch yesterday.]

田中さんは、川田さんはすすきさんが好きだと思っていた。  
[Tanaka **thought** that Kawada liked Suzuki.]

You've had the thought for a while, so っていた is best here even though it's your thought.



Normally, we would drop 私 here.

We can even combine 言う and 思う together in the rare occasions where it is necessary.

行かないと言ったと思っていたが、私はまちがっていた。  
[I **thought** (someone) **said** they wouldn't go but I was wrong.]

だれも何も言わないと思ったが、長くてつまらないうろんがはじまった。  
[I **thought** no one would **say** anything, but a long, boring debate began.]



You aren't reporting speech, so 言った is fine

Don't forget that the verb for "thinking" as in "considering" or in "thinking about [X]" is かんがえる. So if you are thinking about something say かんがえている not おもっている.

Finally, おもう can be used with **Chapter 1's** grammar forms to hedge or weaken the pressure of your recommendations. This can help your advice sound less blunt or forceful.

あしたあやまりに行ったほうがいいと**思います**。

[I **think** it's best if you go apologize tomorrow.]

かれに言ってはいけないと**思う**よ。

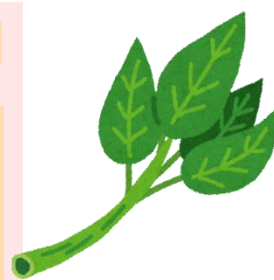
[I **think** you shouldn't say that to him.]



## Grammar Point 2.2: Using ~かた to express “way/how to”

By attaching ~かた (written in kanji as 方) to the stem of a verb, we create a noun meaning “way of doing [verb]”. To review, the stem of a verb is the verb's polite form without ~ます.

| Plain Form | Polite Form | Stem |
|------------|-------------|------|
| 食べる        | 食べます        | 食べ   |
| 飲む         | 飲みます        | 飲み   |
| する         | します         | し    |
| 作る         | 作ります        | 作り   |
| 言う         | 言います        | 言い   |



So by adding 方 to 食べ, for example, we create a noun meaning “way of eating”.

一ばんかんたんな**やり方**をおしえてください！

[Please teach me the easiest **way of doing** it.]

それはちょっとしつれいな**言い方**ですよ。

[That's a bit of a rude **way of speaking**.]

とてもすてきな**はじまり方**だった。

[It was a very wonderful **way to begin**.]

**かんがえ方**をかえなければならないとおもいます。

[I think (I/you/someone) needs to change their **way of thinking**.]



Importantly, the ~方 form can also translate as “how to [verb]” rather than “way of [verb]ing”. In context, the “way of/how to” versions are unlikely to be confused.

このコンピューターの**つかい方**を学校でまなびました。

[I learned **how to use** this computer at school.]

時々プラスチックのパッケージの正しい**あけ方**が分からない。

[Sometimes, I don't understand the right **way to open** plastic packaging.]



## Grammar Point 2.3: もう～まだ

もう and まだ are adverbs whose meaning changes significantly depending on if they are used in **negative** or **positive** sentences, and/or if they are near a ～ている form verb.

When もう is used in a **positive** sentence, it translates as “already”. This is commonly paired with the ～ている form to show that something is “already happening”.



もう はじまっているよ。いそいで！

[It's **already** started. Hurry!]

Remember: Japanese often uses the ～ている form of intransitive verbs in places where English would use past tense.

もう 食べているのですか。私がかえるまで待てませんでしたか。

[You're **already** eating? You couldn't wait until I got home?]

That said, you can also use this “already もう” with **positive** nouns, adjectives, and verbs in other forms. For instance, while もう 食べている is “we’re already eating”, もう 食べる is fine for “we’re already going to eat” – a warning that the person better join you quick.

五月なのに **もう** あつくなりましたね。

[It's only May but it's **already** become hot.]

**もう** 十時ですか。いそがなければなりません！

[Is it **already** 10? I've got to hurry.]

何もしなくてもいいと思いますよ。 **もう** とてもきれいです。

[I think you don't need to do anything. You're **already** very pretty.]



There's one last specific phrase worth noting: もういい (です) works like “that's enough” in English, as it can be a positive or negative statement depending on context and/or tone.

あ、 **もういい** ですよ！ほんとうにがんばりましたね！

[Ah, **that's all you need to do**! You really did a great job.]

「そしてね、あなたは。。。」「 **もういい** よ！うるさい。」

[“And another thing, you...” “**That's enough**! Shut up!”]



When もう is used in a **negative** sentence, the meaning changes from “already” to “anymore” in most cases, creating “no longer doing (anymore)” in the ～ていない form.

今日から **もう** タバコを **すわ**ない。

[From today, I **won't smoke anymore**.]

かのじょは **もう** 五年間 **すつて**ない。

[She's **already smoke-free** for 5 years.]

**もう** あなたの友だち **で**はないよ。

[(Someone is/I am) **not** your friend **anymore**.]



In contrast, the adverb まだ is used in **positive** sentences to mean “still”. Just like もう, this is commonly used with verbs in the ~ている form.

まだ大学で日本語をべんきょうしていますか。  
[Are you **still** studying Japanese at university?]

あの子はまだねているのですか？  
[Is that child **still** sleeping?]



But again, you can also use the term with other words types and in other conjugations.

もう十年間べんきょうしたけど、かれはまだ大学生だ。  
[He's **already** studied for 10 years but he's **still** a university student.]

かれのことがあまり好きではなかったがこれからまだ会うと思う。  
[I didn't really like him but I think I'll **still** meet him after this.]

「ピザがもうないの？」 「ううん、まだあるはずだ。まだ食べるの？」  
[“Is the pizza **already** gone?” “No, there **still** should be some. You're **still** hungry?”]

We use 食べる here over 食べている as they are not currently eating. They *will* eat more; it's the future tense.



When まだ is used in a **negative** sentence, however, it changes to mean “not yet”.

まだかのじょとけっこんしていない。  
[I'm **not married** to her **yet**.]

仕事がまだはじまっていないので、私はまだほんとうの先生じゃない。  
[The job **hasn't started yet**, so I'm **not a real teacher yet**.]

まだ金曜日ではないのですか。わあ、もうとてもつかれていますけど。  
[It's **not Friday yet**? Aagh, I'm **already** so exhausted.]



To summarize, もう and まだ are useful adverbs with a total of four uses, as their meanings change based on whether they appear in **positive** or **negative** sentences:

|    | Positive | Negative      |
|----|----------|---------------|
| もう | already  | (not) anymore |
| まだ | still    | (not) yet     |



## Grammar Point 2.4: Different probabilities of plans

Up until now, we've just used adverbs like *たいてい*, *多分*, and *あまり* to discuss frequency and probability. However, we can also show the likelihood that someone will do something via attaching various forms to the end of Japanese sentences.

To express that something will **maybe** occur, put a sentence's final word in **plain form** and attach *かもしれない* directly. Connectors like *な・だ* are not used (but *~だった* is).

あした、雨がふる**かもしれない**よ。

[It **might** rain tomorrow.]

まだ分からないけど、いい人**かもしれません**。

[I don't know for sure yet, but they **could** be a good person.]

たのしい**かもしれない**。

[It may be fun.]



Most of the time, *かもしれない* is in the **present** tense. If you want to say that something might *have* happened, it's usually best to conjugate the word connected to *かもしれない*.

かれはおこって**いた****かもしれません**。

[He **may have been** angry.]

木曜日に行ったと思うが、金曜日**だった****かもしれない**。

[I think I went on Thursday, but it **may have been** Friday.]



In casual speech, *かもしれない* is often shortened to *かも*.

あ、ごめんね。あした行くことができない**かも**。

[A, sorry. I **might** not be able to go tomorrow.]

To express more a firm plan, attach *つもり* to a sentence-final verb in the **present plain** form (**positive** verb for “intend” but **negative** for “do not intend”). Unlike *かもしれない*, *つもり* must express someone/something's (lack of) intent rather than just probability.

来週ろんぶんを**ていしゅつする****つもり**だ。

[I **intend to submit** my thesis next week.]

かのじょに**あやまらない****つもり**です。

[I **plan on** not apologizing to her.]

これから毎日うんどうする**つもり**だが、とても大きくならない**つもり**だ。

[I **plan on** exercising every day from now, but I **intend to** not become really big.]





You can also negate つもり by using では・じゃない or the phrase つもりはない. If we compare the two, ~ないつもり feels more like “intend not to” whereas つもり (で) はない is more like “had/have no intent to”, and therefore often sounds harsher/more curt.

言わないつもりでしたが、言いました。

[I **intended to** not say it, but I said it.]

行かないつもりだ。いや、ちがう。行くつもりはない。

[I'm **not planning** to go. No, that's not it. I **have no intent** of going.]



For the past tense, conjugate つもり rather than the verb it attaches to.

行くつもりだったが、夜までねた。

[I **intended** to go, but I slept until evening.]

映画を見ないつもりでした。

[I **was set on** not watching the movie.]



Both ~だったつもり  
and ~じゃなかったつもり  
are rarely used, ignore for now.

To add even more intentionality, you can replace つもり with よてい. The word “plan” might work as an English translation of either, but よてい shows a strong confirmation of plan/action while つもり just shows some level of intent.

金曜日に出かけるよていですが、土曜日には出かけるよていではありません。

[I **plan on** going out on Friday but I **don't plan on** going out Saturday.]

あしたから、東京にいないよていだ。

[From tomorrow, I **plan to** not be in Tokyo.]

あなたにせつめいするよていがない。

[I **have no plans to** explain it to you.]



## Grammar point 2.5: Expressing desire via ~たい, ~たがる

In the last textbook, we learned how to use the い adjective ほしい in the [X]は[Y]が[Z] patten to indicate that someone **wants a noun**.

ほしい

くるまがほしいです。でも、中古のくるまはほしくありません。

[I **want** a car. But I **don't want** a second-hand car.]

[Lit: As for me, a car is **desirable**. But a second-hand car is **not desirable**.]



To indicate that someone instead **wants to do a verb**, attach ~たい to the verb's stem. To review, the stem of the verb is the ~ます form with ~ます removed.

食べます (to eat)

食べ (stem)

食べたい (want to eat)



Importantly, once we attach ~たい to a verb, the verb now begins functioning like an い adjective. This is important to remember for two reasons: 1) we now conjugate the final い rather than the whole verb, and 2) we often mark what someone wants to [verb] with が, just with nouns when using ほしい. You can still use を, and there isn't enough of a difference between the two that it's easy or valuable to explain, but you should expect が.

I'll be using the ~が~たい pattern throughout this textbook to get you used to it.

ピザを作る

[To make pizza.]

ピザが作りたい。

[I **want** to make pizza.]

ピザを作りたかった。

[I **wanted** to make pizza.]

ピザが作りたい人は手を上げてください。

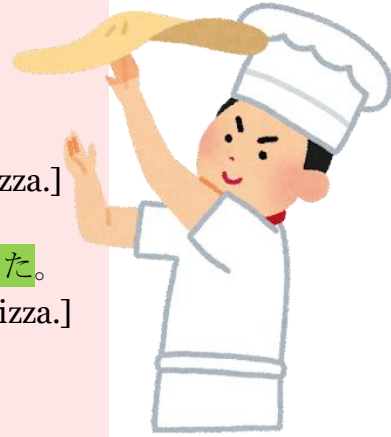
[People who **want** to make pizza, raise your hands please!]

ピザを作りたくない。

[I **don't want** to make pizza.]

ピザが作りたくなかった。

[I **didn't want** to make pizza.]



You don't change any particles other than を to が though under any circumstances.

かん国や中国に行きたくなりました。

[I developed a **desire** to go **to** Korea and China (lit: became **want** to go).]

三十分ぐらいベッドで寝たいです。

[I **want** to sleep **in** my bed for about 30 minutes.]



However, when **stating** what someone else's desires are in Japanese, you shouldn't use the ~たい ending as-is. You may be understood, but it can come off as quite odd. Rather, if you heard a person state a desire, use ~たいと言っていました to show it's reported speech.

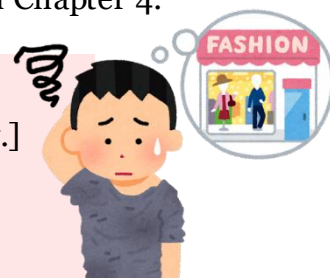
In contrast, if you aren't quoting someone, replace ~たい with ~たいみたい or ~をたがっている. The ~たいみたい form indicates "seems like they want to", while the ~たがる verb (which keeps を) indicates someone is indicating or clearly showing (but not being quoted) that they want to do the verb. We'll discuss both ~みたい and ~がる more in Chapter 4.

川田さんはあしたクラスではっぴょうをしたいと言っていました。

[Kawada **was saying/said** that she **wants** to present in class tomorrow.]

山田さんはあたらしいふくを買いたがっている・買いたいみたい。

[Yamada (**seems as though he**) **is keen** to buy new clothes.]



Don't over analyze this difference between Japanese and English! Ultimately, this is just a way of framing and/or clarifying (known) "self-wants" against others' (potential) desires.



That said, it is absolutely appropriate to use ～たい when **speculating** about other people's desires or **asking** about them (see also the final pizza example above).



田中さんはたたかい **た**くないかもしれません。

[Tanaka probably **doesn't want** to fight.]

今日はあついね。お茶を飲**み**たい？

[It's hot today isn't it. **Wanna** drink some tea?]

Since we are using ～たい rather than ～たがっている, both を and が work here

### Grammar Point 2.6: Listing activities via ～たり、～たり

Up until now, we've used the ～て form to connect verbs. The ～たり form is similar, except that unlike the ～て form it does not imply a set order of events. Instead, ～たり is instead used to give examples of activities one will do.

To create the ～たり form, simply add り to the end of a verb's plain positive past form. You may string as many verbs together as you like, including just one, but you have to end the full chain of verbs with some conjugation of する.

ねる前に、はを**み**がいたり、パジャマを**着**たり**する**。

[Before going to sleep, I **do stuff like** brush my teeth, **put on** pajamas, **etc.**]

ひまな時に、たいていゲームを**し**たり**しま**した。

[When I had free time, I used to **do things like** play video games.]



The ～たり form always uses the verb's **plain past tense** as its base. So if you want to conjugate the sentence, modify the する at the end (as in the second example above). You can also make more complex sentences by using the final する with other grammar points:

きつさてんで本を**読**んだり、コーヒーを**飲**んだり、**休**んだり**する**のが好きだ。

[I like to **do stuff** at cafes like **read** a book, **drink** coffee, and **relax**.]

おんせんで**お**よいだり、大きいこえで**話**したり**し**ないでください。

[Please don't **swim**, **speak** in a loud voice, **etc.**, in the onsen.]



### Grammar Point 2.7: A new “but” via のに

Finally, のに attaches to the end of a sentence to mean “but/although”. It attaches directly to verbs and い-adjectives in all conjugations, but to positive nouns/な-adjectives via な.

もういそがしい**の**に仕事が毎日ふえている。

[**Even though** I'm already busy, my jobs keep increasing every day.]

かれは先生**な**の**に**せつめいするのがとても下手です。

[**Despite** being a teacher he's really bad at explaining things.]



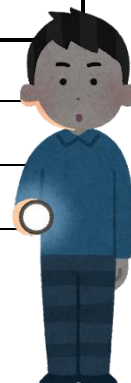
## CHAPTER 2 KANJI • かんじ

This week, we will learn 18 kanji for useful verbs/words, colours, and this week's grammar.

|   |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 方 | Meaning         | Direction                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | かた                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ほう                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>ほう</small><br/>           の方がいい         </div> <div> <small>ほうこう</small><br/>           方向 (direction)         </div> <div> <small>ほうほう</small><br/>           方法 (method)         </div> <div> <small>かた</small><br/>           あの方 (that person (polite))         </div> |
| 思 | Meaning         | Thoughts                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | おも (う)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | し                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>おも</small><br/>           思う         </div> <div> <small>し そう</small><br/>           思想 (a thought)         </div> <div> <small>おも</small><br/>           思い (a thought)         </div>                                                                                    |
| 勉 | Meaning         | Exertion                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | つと (める)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | べん                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses     | <small>べんきょう</small><br>勉強                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 強 | Meaning         | Strong                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | つよ (い)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | きょう                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>つよ</small><br/>           強い         </div> <div> <small>べんきょう</small><br/>           勉強         </div>                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 弱 | Meaning         | Weak                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | よわ (い)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | じゃく                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses     | <small>よわ</small><br>弱い                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



|   |                 |                                                |
|---|-----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 使 | Meaning         | Use                                            |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | つか (う)                                         |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | し                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | つか<br>使う<br>たい し かん<br>大使館 (embassy)           |
| 新 | Meaning         | New                                            |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | あた (ら) (しい)                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しん                                             |
|   | Sample uses     | あた<br>新 しい<br>しんぶん<br>新聞                       |
| 明 | Meaning         | Bright                                         |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | あか (るい)                                        |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | めい                                             |
|   | Sample uses     | あか<br>明 るい<br>せつめい<br>説明<br>あした<br>明日          |
| 暗 | Meaning         | Dark                                           |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | くら (い)                                         |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | あん                                             |
|   | Sample uses     | くら<br>暗 い                                      |
| 説 | Meaning         | Explain, Convince                              |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | と (<)                                          |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | せつ                                             |
|   | Sample uses     | せつめい<br>説明<br>せつめいしょ<br>説明書 (instruction book) |



|   |                 |                                                           |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 色 | Meaning         | Colour                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | いろ                                                        |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しょく                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | いろ 色                      いろいろ 色々                         |
| 赤 | Meaning         | Red                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | あか (い)                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | せき                                                        |
|   | Sample uses     | あか 赤                      あか 赤い                           |
| 青 | Meaning         | Blue, Green, Youth                                        |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | あお (い)                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | せい                                                        |
|   | Sample uses     | あお 青                      せいしゅん き 青春 期 (puberty)<br>あお 青い |
| 黄 | Meaning         | Yellow                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | き                                                         |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | おう                                                        |
|   | Sample uses     | き いろ 黄色                      き いろ 黄色い                     |
| 緑 | Meaning         | Green                                                     |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | みどり                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | りよく                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | みどり 緑                      りよくちゃ 緑茶                       |



|   |                 |                                                                                           |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 帰 | Meaning         | Blue, Green, Youth                                                                        |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | あお (い)                                                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | せい                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>あお 青</div> <div>せいしゅん き 青春 期 (puberty)</div> <div>あお 青い</div>                        |
| 音 | Meaning         | Sound                                                                                     |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | おと                                                                                        |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | おん                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>音</div> <div>音楽</div>                                                                |
| 楽 | Meaning         | Fun                                                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | たの (しい) ・ たの (しむ)                                                                         |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | がく ・ らく                                                                                   |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>たの 楽しい</div> <div>おんがく 音楽</div> <div>たの 楽しむ</div> <div>ようがく 洋楽 (western music)</div> |



CHAPTER 2 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 2

### Exercise 2.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

## 1. 方

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 方            | 方 | 方 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 2. 思

|              |   |   |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 思            | 思 | 思 |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

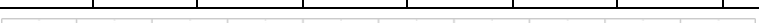
### 3. 勉

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 勉            | 勉 | 勉 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | ㄣ | ㄣ | 𠃍 | 𠃍 | 𠃍 | 𠃍 | 免 | 免 | 勉 |

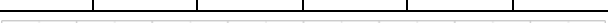
## 4. 強

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 強            | 強 | 強 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ㄣ | コ | 弓 | 𠂉 | 弘 | 弘 | 弘 | 弘 | 強 | 強 | 強 | 強 |

## 5. 弱

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 弱            | 弱 | 弱 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6.使

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 使            | 使 | 使 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



## 7. 新

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 新            | 新 | 新 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 立 | 立 | 辛 | 辛 | 亲 | 亲 | 新 |

## 8. 明

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 明            | 明 | 明 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 |

## 9. 暗

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 暗            | 暗 | 暗 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 暗 | 暗 | 暗 | 暗 | 暗 |

## 10. 說

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 說            | 說 | 說 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 說 |

## 11. 色

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 色            | 色 | 色 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | ノ | ノ | ノ | ノ | 色 | 色 | 色 | 色 | 色 | 色 |

## 12. 赤

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 赤            | 赤 | 赤 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 赤 | 赤 | 赤 | 赤 | 赤 | 赤 |



## Exercise 2.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. にほんのおんがくのほうがいいとおもう。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. しんぶんをあかるくて、みどりのへやでよむ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. どうしてあかのチームのほうがあおのチームよりつよいの？ せつめいして！

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. わたしはちょっとよわくて、スポーツがへたですが、べんぎょうがじょうずです。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. パーティーはとてもたのしいのであしたまでかえらないとおもう。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. いちばんすきないろはきいろなのできいろいふくをよくきる。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise 2.3

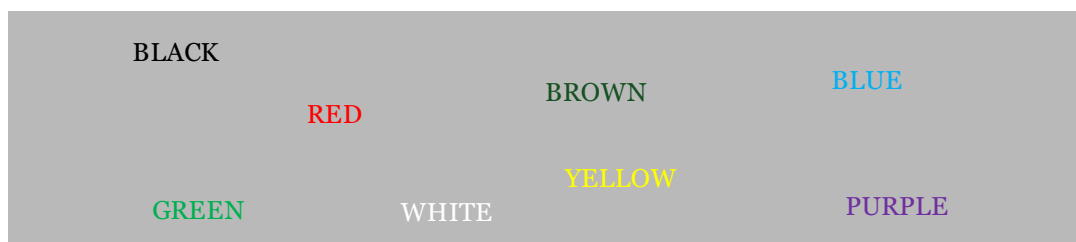
Match each kanji with the correct colour. You might need to look up kanji you don't know.

黒

赤

黄色

青



緑

白

茶色

紫

### Exercise 2.3

Circle the correct option from each ( ) to translate each sentence.

1. I already ate, so I don't want to eat now.

(もう・まだ) 食べましたから、今食べ (たくありません・たがっていません)。

2. He hasn't eaten yet, so he wants to eat.

かれは (もう・まだ) 食べ (ていない・ない) ので食べ (たい・たがっている)。

3. We don't drink anymore so we don't plan on going to the bar.

(もう・まだ) 飲まないでバーに行 (かないつもりだ・かないかもしれない)。

4. I'm already studying so I have no plans to study in the evening.

(もう・まだ) 勉強しているので、夜に勉強する (よてい・つもり) はない。

5. I said I won't go but she said "please", so despite having no intent to go I went.

私は「行かない」 (と言った・と言っていた) がかのじょは「おねがい！」  
(と言った・と言っていた) ので、行く (つもり・よてい) はなかった  
(ので・のに・なので・なのに) 行った。

### Exercise 2.4

Using ~たり, list a variety (at least 3) things you might do at each location.

1. きっさてん

---

2. こうえん

---

3. えいがかん

---

4. コンビニ

---

## Exercise 2.5

Translate each sentence, slowly increasing in difficulty.

1.1 Tanaka is stubborn. \_\_\_\_\_

1.2 I think Tanaka is stubborn. \_\_\_\_\_

1.3 I said Tanaka is stubborn. \_\_\_\_\_

1.4 I might have said Tanaka is stubborn.

1.5 I think she said Tanaka is stubborn.

1.6 I don't think she said "Tanaka is stubborn", but it seemed like she wanted to.

2. That way of thinking is shallow.

2.1 He might have said "that way of thinking is shallow".

2.2 He said "that way of thinking might have been shallow".

2.3 Even though he said "that way of thinking is shallow", he often said the same things in the past.

3. I said I want to go. But I don't think he wants to go, even though he also said he wants to go.

## CHAPTER 2 WORKBOOK ANSWER KEY • 解答集 2

### Exercise 2.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

#### 1. 方

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 方            | 方 | 方 |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 一 | ㇀ | 方 | 方 |  |

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

#### 2. 思

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 思            | 思 | 思 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 冂 | 冂 | 田 | 田 | 田 | 思 | 思 | 思 |

#### 3. 勉

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 勉            | 勉 | 勉 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | ㇀ | ㇀ | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 免 | 勉 |

#### 4. 強

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 強            | 強 | 強 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ㇀ | コ | 弓 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 強 |

#### 5. 弱

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 弱            | 弱 | 弱 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ㇀ | コ | 弓 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 弱 |

#### 6. 使

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 使            | 使 | 使 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 使 | 使 |  |



## 7. 新

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 新            | 新 | 新 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 立 | 立 | 辛 | 辛 | 亲 | 亲 |

## 8. 明

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 明            | 明 | 明 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 日 | 日 | 目 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 |

## 9. 暗

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 暗            | 暗 | 暗 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 日 | 日 | 日 | 目 | 目 | 目 | 目 | 目 |

## 10. 說

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 說            | 說 | 說 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 言 | 言 | 言 | 言 | 言 |

## 11. 色

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 色            | 色 | 色 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | ノ | 夕 | 夕 | 夕 | 色 | 色 | 色 | 色 | 色 |

## 12. 赤

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 赤            | 赤 | 赤 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 土 | 赤 | 赤 | 赤 | 赤 | 赤 | 赤 |



## Exercise 2.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. にほんのおんがくのほうがいいとおもう。

Rewrite: 日本の音楽の方がいいと思う。

Translate: I think Japanese music is better.

2. しんぶんをあかるくて、みどりのへやでよむ。

Rewrite: 新聞を明るくて、緑のへやで読む。

Translate: (Someone) reads the newspaper in the bright, green room.

3. どうしてあかのチームのほうがあおのチームよりつよいの？ せつめいして！

Rewrite: どうして赤のチームの方が青のチームより強いのか？説明して！

Translate: Why is the red team stronger than the blue? Explain!

4. わたしはちよっとよわくて、スポーツがへたですが、べんぎょうがじょうずです。

Rewrite: 私はちょっと弱くて、スポーツが下手で勉強が上手です。

Translate: I'm a bit weak, bad at sports, and good at studying.

5. パーティーはとてもたのしいのであしたまでかえらないとおもう。

Rewrite: パーティーはとても楽しいので明日まで帰らないと思う。

Translate: The party is lots of fun so I think I won't go home until tomorrow.

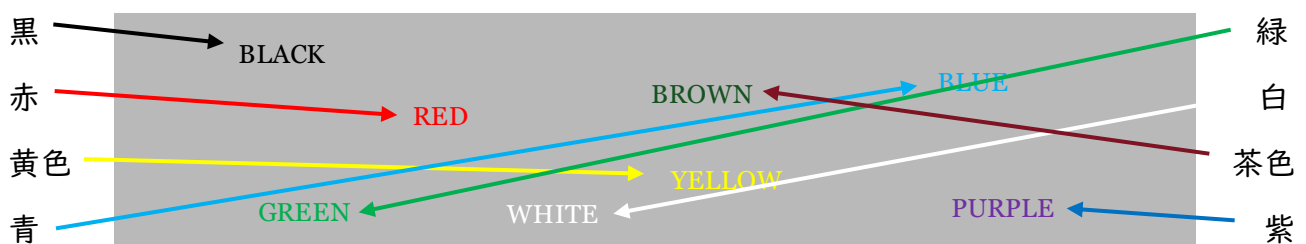
6. いちばんすきないろはきいろなのできいろいふくをよくきる。

Rewrite: 一番好きな色は黄色なので黄色いふくをよく着る。

Translate: My favorite color is yellow so I often wear yellow clothes.

## Exercise 2.3

Match each kanji with the correct colour. You might need to look up kanji you don't know.



### Exercise 2.3

Circle the correct option from each ( ) to translate each sentence.

1. I already ate, so I don't want to eat now.

(もう・まだ) 食べましたから、今食べ (たくありません・たがっていません)。

2. He hasn't eaten yet, so he wants to eat.

かれは (もう・まだ) 食べ (ていない・ない) ので食べ (たい・たがっている)。

3. We don't drink anymore so we don't plan on going to the bar.

(もう・まだ) 飲まないのだからバーに行 (かないつもりだ・かないかもしれない)。

4. I'm already studying so I have no plans to study in the evening.

(もう・まだ) 勉強しているので、夜に勉強する (よてい・つもり) はない。

5. I said I won't go but she said "please", so despite having no intent to go I went.

私は「行かない」(と言った・と言っていた) がかのじょは「おねがい！」  
(と言った・と言っていた) ので、行く (つもり・よてい) はなかった  
(ので・のに・なので・なのに) 行った。

The difference between と言った and と言っていた here is the difference between your own speech and reported speech.

### Exercise 2.4

Using ～たり, list a variety (at least 3) things you might do at each location.

1. きっさてん

お茶を飲んだり、友だちと話したり、休んだりする。

2. こうえん

歩いたり、新聞を読んだり、ピクニックをしります。

3. えいがかん

チケットを買ったり、えいがを見たり、ポップコーンを食べたりする。

4. コンビニ

食べ物を買ったり、マンガを読んだり、お金を ATM からとったりします。

The answers here are all samples. Your answers should differ. Check carefully for spelling/grammar errors, and don't forget to end with a variant of ～する!

## Exercise 2.5

Translate each sentence, slowly increasing in difficulty.

I used plain form here, but you could use polite form. Or try both!

1.1 Tanaka is stubborn. 田中さんはがんこだ。

1.2 I think Tanaka is stubborn. 田中さんはがんこだと思う。

1.3 I said Tanaka is stubborn. 田中さんはがんこだと言った。

1.4 I might have said Tanaka is stubborn.

田中さんはがんこだと言ったかもしれない。

1.5 I think she said Tanaka is stubborn.

(私は)かのじょが「田中さんはがんこだ」と言ったと思う。

1.6 I don't think she said "Tanaka is stubborn", but it seemed like she wanted to.

(私は)かのじょが「田中さんはがんこだ」と言ったと思わないが、言いたがっていた。

2 That way of thinking is shallow.

そのかんがえ方があさい。

2.1 He might have said "that way of thinking is shallow".

かれは「そのかんがえ方があさい」と言ったかもしれない。

2.2 He said "that way of thinking might have been shallow".

かれは「そのかんがえ方があさかったかもしれない」と言った。

2.3 Even though he said "that way of thinking is shallow", he o  
things in the past.

よく言った should be fine too.

かれは「そのかんがえ方があさい」と言ったのに、むかし同じことをよく言っていた。

3. I said I want to go. But I don't think he wants to go, even though he also said he wants to go.

私は「行きたい」と言った。でも、かれも「行きたい」と言っていたのに、

(私はかれが)行きたくないと思う。

You don't use ~たがる here as you are stating your opinion, not an "observation" of want.

## CHAPTER THREE ・ 第二章

### VOCABULARY ・ ごい

#### Nouns

|       |                       |
|-------|-----------------------|
| おしり   | butt                  |
| おなか   | stomach               |
| おまた   | crotch                |
| かお    | face                  |
| かかと   | heel (of foot)        |
| キッチン  | kitchen               |
| くび    | neck                  |
| せなか   | back (of a person)    |
| しょくたく | dining table          |
| じょうほう | information           |
| すいはんき | automatic rice cooker |
| だいどころ | kitchen               |
| ちしき   | knowledge             |
| てのひら  | palm (of hand)        |
| におい   | a smell               |
| ひげ    | moustache, beard      |
| ひざ    | knee                  |
| ひじ    | elbow                 |
| むね    | chest, breasts        |

#### い Adjectives

|       |                     |
|-------|---------------------|
| あつい   | thick               |
| うすい   | thin, watery, pale  |
| かたい   | hard                |
| こい    | thick, dark, strong |
| ふとい   | thick, fat          |
| ほそい   | thin, slender, fine |
| やわらかい | soft                |

#### う Verbs

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| かつ                | to win                 |
| こがす               | to burn (food) (trans) |
| そる                | to shave               |
| たく                | to cook rice           |
| はく                | to vomit               |
| まかす               | to beat (in a game)    |
| <sup>み</sup> 見つかる | to find (intrans)      |
| むすぶ               | to tie (e.g., laces)   |
| やく                | to fry, to bake        |

#### る Verbs

|                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| いためる              | to stir-fry         |
| いためる              | to injure, to hurt  |
| える                | to get, to obtain   |
| [X]がこげる           | [food] burns        |
| [X]がきこえる          | [X] can be heard    |
| まける               | to lose             |
| <sup>み</sup> 見つける | to find (trans)     |
| にる                | to cook via boiling |

While spelled the same, both いためる have different kanji: 炒める vs 痛める

Like みえる, きこえる is used to show that something can be heard. The verb 聞ける (see grammar point 3.1) is instead "able to listen to"

#### Phrases

|          |                         |
|----------|-------------------------|
| おなかがいっぱい | I'm full/full stomach   |
| おゆをわかす   | to boil water           |
| いびきをかく   | to snore                |
| おなかがつく   | become hungry           |
| せきをする    | to cough                |
| とりあえず    | for now, for the moment |
| はなみずが出る  | to have a runny nose    |
| はらがへる    | become hungry           |



あつい is used to refer to thickness of materials, like fabric or a wall.  
 こい is used to refer to thickness/heaviness of density, like paint, flavors, or colours.  
 ふとい is used for thickness of width/radius, like a leg or a tree trunk.  
 ほそい is used for small, thin things, like legs or bodies. It's the opposite of ふとい.  
 うすい is thin density or thickness. It's the opposite of あつい and こい.

## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 3.1: The potential (“can do”) forms of verbs

In the previous textbook, we learned that we can attach ~ことができる to a **present plain form** verb to state that someone can do the verb.

私はおはしを使う。  
[I use chopsticks.]

私はおはしを使うことができる。  
[I **am able to** use chopsticks.]



However, there is another way to say “can(not) verb” in Japanese, which involves conjugating the verb itself into its **potential form** – that is, rather than adding “can”, the verb’s form itself is modified. As always, our method of conjugation requires us to first split our verbs between the three major categories: irregular verbs, る verbs, and う verbs.

For irregular verbs, there is no pattern to the potential form. You just have to memorize it.



| Polite | Plain | Potential |
|--------|-------|-----------|
| します    | する    | できる       |
| きます    | くる    | こられる      |

できる can be written as 出来る in kanji, but is usually in hiragana. こられる in kanji is just 来られる.

For る verbs, making the potential form involves two easy steps: remove the verb’s final ~る, then replace it with ~られる. You can then conjugate further using this *new* final ~る.

食べる → 食べられる

見つける → 見つけれられる

しめる → しめられる

着る → 着られる

Before learning how to make the potential form of う verbs, let’s cover two important features of using *all* potential form verbs. First, what a “normal” verb would treat as a direct object is commonly marked as a subjects (i.e., を becomes が). This used to be taught as a strong rule, but you’ll now hear/see both particles used in contemporary Japan(ese). I’ll only use が with potential verbs across this textbook so you can get used to the pattern.

私はなつとうを食べる。  
[I eat natto.]

私はなつとうが食べられる。  
[I can eat natto.]

かれはボールをはやくなげる。  
[He throws a ball fast.]

かれはボールがはやくなげられる。  
[He can throw a ball fast.]

かれはくるまをうんでんする。  
[He drives a car.]

かれはくるまがうんでんできる。  
[He can drive a car.]

ドアをあけない。  
[(Someone) won’t open the door.]

ドアがあけられない。  
[(Someone) can’t open the door.]





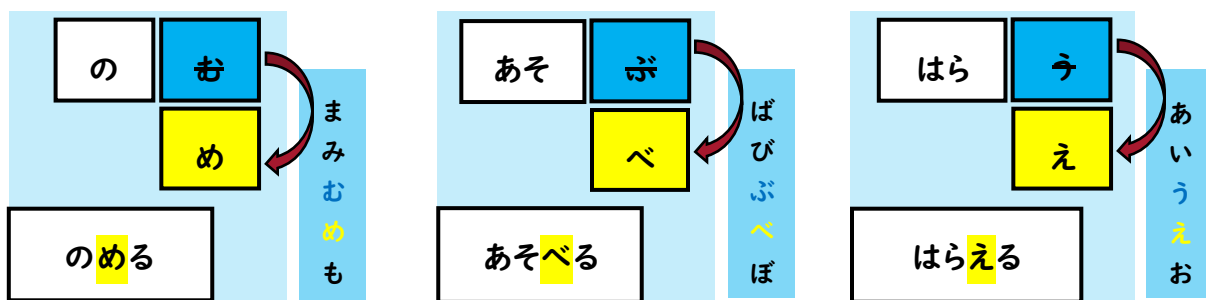
Secondly, Japanese often uses negative intransitive verbs (e.g., “[X] doesn’t [verb]”) where English prefers negative potential verbs (e.g., “[X] cannot [verb]”). Japanese people *do*, of course, use negative potential verbs, especially when stressing responsibility and limits. However, be aware of this tendency, as you will hear/see it (and should use it too!) often.

Compare:

|                                    |                         |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| English: I <b>can't</b> find it    | (Lit: 見つけ <b>られ</b> ない) |
| Japanese: 見つからない                   | (Lit: It's not found)   |
| English: I <b>can't</b> open it.   | (Lit: あけ <b>られ</b> ない)  |
| Japanese: あかない                     | (Lit: It doesn't open)  |
| English: I <b>can't</b> finish it. | (Lit: おえ <b>られ</b> ない)  |
| Japanese: おわらない                    | (Lit: It doesn't end)   |



Let's return to the potential form of う verbs. First change the verb's final sound from [consonant + sound ending in う] to [consonant + sound ending in え], then attach る.



Once *any* verb is in the potential form, it conjugates like a る verb. Don't forget this when changing う verbs into the **negative**, **past**, and/or polite versions of their potential forms.

私はビールが**飲める**が、ワインが**飲めない**。  
[I **can drink** beer, but I **can't drink** wine.]

たんじょうびパーティーに**行けません**でしたが、ギフトを**おくれました**。  
[I **couldn't go** to the birthday party, but I **was able to send** a gift.]

ええ！？ だれも**はらえない**の？？  
[What!? No one **can pay**??]

Remember: in the ~も~ない form the ending has to be negative. This is opposite to English.

いっしょうけんめいがんばったのに、ぜんぜん**かてなかった**。  
[Despite doing all that we could, we **weren't able to win** at all.]

かれと一時間ぐらい**話せました**。  
[I **was able to speak** with him for about an hour.]

**できた**よ！たいへんだったが、**できた**！  
[I **was able to do** it! It was hard, but I **was able to do** it!]

Japanese often uses **できた** where English would just use "I did it!".

「やった！」 is sometimes used similarly (never 「した！」), but it generally functions as more a general "Yay!"



### Grammar Point 3.2: Attempting things for the first time with ~てみる

If we attach ~みる to a verb in its ~て form, ~みる changes the verb's meaning to "try to [verb] for the first time". Be careful: unlike the English "try" which can mean "make efforts to do", as in "I'm trying!", this ~てみる form only means "try = first attempt".

明日パンをやいてみます。

[I'm going to try making bread (for the first time) tomorrow.]

バーで新しいビールを飲んでみたが、あまりおいしくなかった。

[I tried out a new beer at the bar, but it wasn't very delicious.]



As みる is itself a みる verb, you can conjugate it to create more complicated patterns.

今年ほっかいどうに行ってみたい！

[I want to go to Hokkaido this year for the first time.]

そのゲームを少しやってみてもいいですか。

[Is it okay if I try out that game (I'm not familiar with) for a bit?]

これ食べてみてください。

[Please give this food (that you haven't had before) a shot.]



In the ~てみる form, みる is always written in hiragana. If you write the word in kanji, it is very likely to create misunderstandings (i.e., "[verb], then look"). In general, verbs that attach to other verbs to change their meaning are not written in kanji.

読んでみます！

[I'll give it a read!]

読んで見ます。

[I'll read it, and then look at it/something.]

### Grammar Point 3.3: Plain forms of ましょう・ませんか

So how do we say "I'll try" as in "I'll make efforts to do"? Well, the last textbook already introduced one way: the ~ことにしている form. There's another way though, but it requires us to first learn the **plain form** version of the **volitional** form (~ましよう), so let's do that next!

In the first textbook, we covered the forms ~ましよう and ~ませんか as ways of inviting people to and/or suggesting activities. These forms are also possible in plain form, but look slightly different. For ~ましよう, the plain form depends on the verb type. As always, irregular verbs must be memorized.



| Verb | Polite | Plain |
|------|--------|-------|
| する   | しましょう  | しよう   |
| くる   | きましょう  | こよう   |

朝までいっしょにゲームをしよう！

[Let's play games together until morning!]

For る verbs, we create the plain version of ~ましょう by replacing the verb's final ~る with ~よう (or, by attaching ~よう to the verb's stem, however you want to think of it).

出かけようよ！

[Let's get going!]

もう十時だ。ねよう。

[It's already 10. Let's sleep.]

おなかがすいた。何か食べよう。

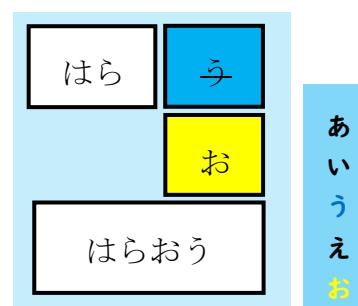
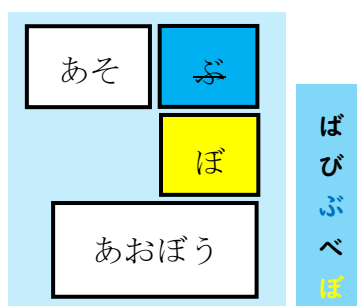
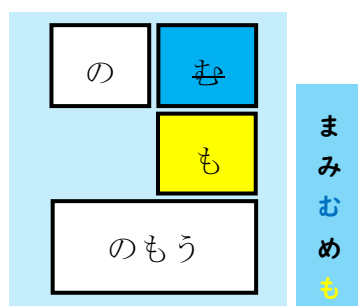
[I'm hungry. Let's eat something.]

もういい。あきらめよう。

[Enough already. Let's give up.]

All examples so far are in casual forms because the plain ~ましょう is not appropriate in formal speech.

For う verbs, change the verb's final sound from [consonant + う] to [consonant + お] and then add another う to extend the vowel sound. For instance, かく becomes かこう, and いそぐ becomes いそごう. Verbs ending in ~う just change to ~おう, as in うたおう.



かれらをまかそうよ！

[Let's beat them!]

もうつかれた。帰ろう。

[I'm already exhausted. Let's go home.]

とても安くなったので今買おうね。

[It became really cheap, so let's buy it right now.]

時間があるからおようごう。

[We've got time, so let's swim.]



Unlike most times when you ask questions using plain form, you **can** attach か to the end of the plain ~ましょう form to ask “shall we” (a suggestion) or “shall I” (an offer).

てつだおうか。

[Shall I help?]

いっしょに勉強しようか。

[Shall we study together?]

来週もあそぼうか。

[Shall we hang out next week too?]

ごはんをたこうか。

[Shall I/Shall we make some rice?]

This plain **volitional form** is not just useful for casual suggestions, however. It is also an important grammar point in its own right, serving as the basis for a few patterns.

First, when we attach ~と思っている to a **plain volitional form**, we indicate intent.

Unlike the plain volitional itself, the final ~と思っている can be turned into polite form.

私は日本に勉強しに行こうと思っています。

[I'm **intending to go** to Japan to study.]



The standard ~と思う can also be used with volitional forms. The difference is that ~と思っている suggests an intent that's pre-established, whereas ~と思う is made on the spot.



来年アメリカに帰ろうと思っている。

[I'm planning on going home to the USA next year, and I've had this plan for a bit.]

じゃ、もうビールも食べ物もないから家に帰ろうと思う。

[Well since there's no more food or beer, I think I'll go home.]

Second, by attaching forms of ~とする to a plain volitional form, we indicate that someone is trying (as in “making efforts” rather than “attempting for the first time”) to do the verb. This contrasts directly with the ~てみる form, as in the second sentence below.

たばこをやめる。

[I will quit smoking.]

たばこをやめてみる。

[I will give quitting smoking a shot.]

たばこをやめようとする。

[I will make efforts to quit smoking.]

たばこをやめようとするつもりはない。

[I have no intent of making efforts to quit smoking.]

たばこをやめようとしている。

[I'm trying to quit smoking.]

たばこをやめることにしている。

[I'm making efforts to quit smoking.]

たばこをやめようとしたが、できなかった。

[I worked hard to quit smoking, but I couldn't.]

たばこをやめようとしたが、できませんでした。

[I put effort into trying to quit smoking, but I couldn't (polite).]



The ~ようとしている form is quite similar in meaning to the ~ことにしている form we learned in the last textbook.

So what about the casual version of ~ませんか? Fortunately that's quite easy. Just end the verb in the **negative plain form**, but add a question mark or rising intonation.

私とデートしない。

[You won't date me.]

私とデートしない？

[Won't you go out with me?]

飲まない。

[(Someone) won't drink.]

飲まない？

[Won't you drink some?]

### Grammar Point 3.4: Question words marked by か make “some”

By attaching か to some question words, you create the word's “some” version. We learned “something” as a stand-alone word in the last book, but other forms are possible:

いつか行きたい。

[I want to go sometime.]

どこかに行った。

[They went somewhere.]

だれかとけっこんした。

[They married someone.]

いくつか is a useful phrase that turns “how many” into “some amount of”.

### Grammar Point 3.5: Turning adjectives into nouns

In Japanese, the suffix ~さ works like ~ness (e.g., thick+ness) in English to turn adjectives into nouns. The way you use ~さ differs slightly though depending on the adjective type.

For い adjectives, ~さ replaces the final ~い of the adjective.



|        |            |        |            |             |              |
|--------|------------|--------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| おおきい   | おおきさ       | あかい    | あかさ        | ひろい         | ひろさ          |
| [big]  | [size]     | [red]  | [redness]  | [wide]      | [width]      |
| かわいい   | かわいさ       | かたい    | かたさ        | むずかしい       | むずかしさ        |
| [cute] | [cuteness] | [hard] | [hardness] | [difficult] | [difficulty] |

Once we attach ~さ, the adjectives become nouns, so we can mark them with particles.

このまぐらのやわからさはすごいいい。

[The softness of this pillow is incredibly good.]

テストのむずかしさをふやした方がいいと思いますか。

[Do you think we should increase the test's difficulty?]

一ばんだいじなことは、おいしさだ。

[The most important thing is the deliciousness/quality of the flavor.]

せなかのかたさがしんぱいで、マッサージがほしい。

[I'm worried about the stiffness of my back, so I want a massage.]

こたつのあたたかさが大好きだ。

[I love the warmth of the kotatsu.]

While rarer, this can be done with negative adjectives too. For instance, おもしろくなさは "not-interesting-ness"



Don't forget that いい always conjugates as though it were よい.



自分のよさをみせるのがたいせつだ。

[It's important to show them your goodness (how good you are).]

For な adjectives, ~さ instead attaches directly to the adjective.

男の人とかじのだいじさとたいへんさを知るべきです。

[Men should know the importance and difficulty of housework too.]

もんだいは、ゲームのかんたんさにあると思います。

[The problem is in simplicity of the game, I think.]

かのじょはかれのがんこさがあまり分かっていないね。

[She doesn't really understand his stubbornness, does she.]

その言い方のていねいさに問だいがないけどやさしさがないよ。

[There's no problem with the politeness of that phrasing but it lacks kindness.]



Be careful, because not all adjectives work well with ~さ. For instance, 好きさは odd.



### Grammar Point 3.6: Expressing “too much” via ~すぎる

The suffix ~すぎる is a る-verb that can be attached to adjectives and verbs to state that something is “too [adjective]” or “[verbs] too much”. The rules for attaching ~すぎる depend on the word type, but further conjugation always happens to ~すぎる as though the entire adjective was now a る verb.

For い adjectives, ~すぎる replaces the final ~い of the adjective.



このカレーはからすぎると思う。

[I think this curry is **too spicy**.]

あのレストランのパンはいつもかたすぎます。古いかもしれません。

[That restaurant's bread is always **too hard**. Maybe it's old.]

ううん、そのシャツはぜんぜん大きすぎないよ！

[No, that shirt **isn't too big** at all!]

For な adjectives, ~すぎる attaches to the adjective directly.

ここはしずかだ。しずかすぎる。

[This place is quiet. **Too quiet**.]

かれはきれいすぎて、話しに行くのがむずかしい。

[He's **too pretty**, and so going to talk to him is difficult.]

ていねいすぎる話し方は、時々しつれいな話し方になります。

[A way of speaking that is **too polite** can sometimes become a rude way of speaking.]



For **positive** verbs, just attach ~すぎる to the verb's **stem** (~ます form minus ~ます).

うわあ、食べすぎました！飲みすぎました！おなかがいたすぎてつらいです！

[Waaa, I **ate too much**! I **drank too much**! My stomach **hurts so much** it's awful!]

いそがしい時に、はたらきすぎないでください。

[When you are busy, please **don't work too much**.]

ちょっとうんどうしすぎたので、明日は休む。

[I **exercised** a bit **too much**, so I'll take tomorrow off (from exercising).]

ううん、まだ行きすぎていないよ。

[No, you **haven't gone too far** yet.]

~すぎる can be used for exaggeration and emphasis like this too.

Tense changes in English effect the base verb, but in Japanese they effect the attached ~すぎる.

The ~すぎる suffix can also attach to a verb or adjective's **plain negative form** by replacing the final ~い in ~ない with ~さすぎる to mean “too little [verb/adjective]”.

お金がなさすぎて、しごともおもしろくなさすぎて、たいへんだ。

[I have **too little** money, my job is **extremely uninteresting** too, it's rough.]



### Grammar Point 3.7: Connecting explanations via し

Up until now, we've used から or ので at the end of a sentence or clause to express reasons. However, から and ので only express one reason. When you need/want to give multiple reasons, you can instead connect statements together via attaching し to the end of **each** explanation. Like や or ~たり, this form often has the implication that the reasons you are giving are just a few of many examples.

While using し, each reason you give must end in the plain form, but in any tense or positivity. For reasons that end in nouns or な-adjectives in the **plain positive present**, this means that you must attach だ to the noun or adjective before adding し.

おいしいし、シェフがしんせつだし、家に近いし、このレストランは大好きです。  
[It's delicious, the chef is friendly, it's near home... **that's why** I love this restaurant.]

あつかったし、足もいためたし、きのうはほんとうにつらかった。  
[**Because** it was hot, I hurt my leg, **etc.**, I just really had a bad time yesterday.]

「どうしてお金がないのですか。」  
「さいきんあたらしいふくを買ったし、友だちと飲みに行ったし、やちんも上がったし、これからはもっとちょきんしないと。」  
[“Why don't you have any money?”]  
[“Recently I bought new clothes, went drinking with friends, rent went up too... **those are the reasons** and from here on out I really need to save more.”]

As you can see from the examples above, explanations marked with し often just “hang” in front of a complete sentence, and may contain their own topics, subjects, etc. The sentence that follows the last し is also often less blatantly connected to the reasons than when we use words like から・ので, so there is often a lot of freedom in translating the sentence.

You can also invert the order, using し to provide explanations for what you've just said. In this case, you can end the explanation list with し. This is not inherently casual.

いい先生ですよ。説明がいいし、メールのへんじを書くのがはやいし。  
[They're a good teacher. Their explanations are good, they reply to emails fast...]  
大きらいだった。ばかだったし、レージだったし、しつれいなことも言ったし。  
[I hated them. They were dumb, lazy, said rude things... **these and more are why**.]

Finally, you can also just list one reason with し. Again, the difference from から・ので here is that when you use し other explanations are implied.

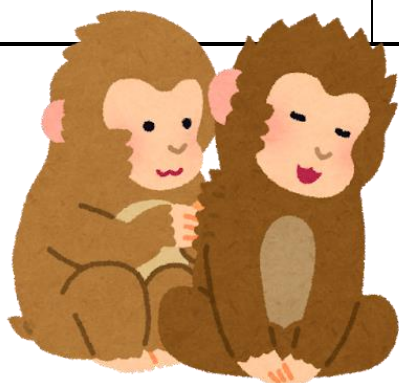
あたらしいのを買いたい！今とても安いし。  
[I want to buy a new one! They are cheap now (**which, among other things, is why**).]  
おなかがいたいし、今日はもう食べません。  
[My stomach hurts, **and for that among other reasons** I won't eat more today.]



## CHAPTER 3 KANJI ・ かんじ

This week, we will learn 18 kanji, focusing on body parts and useful verbs.

|   |                 |                                                                                                                                   |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 頭 | Meaning         | Head                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | あたま                                                                                                                               |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | とう・ず                                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | あたま 頭                      ずっとう 頭痛                                                                                                |
| 顔 | Meaning         | Face                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | かお                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | がん                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses     | かお 顔                                                                                                                              |
| 首 | Meaning         | Neck                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | くび                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しゅ                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses     | くび 首                      しゅと 首都 (metropolis)<br>てくび 手首 (wrist)                      しゅしょう 首相 (Prime Minister)<br>あしくび 足首 (ankle) |
| 毛 | Meaning         | Hair                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | け                                                                                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | もう                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses     | かみ け 髪の毛                      むなげ 胸毛 (chest hair)<br>け ぶか 毛深い (hairy)                      もうふ 毛布 (blanket)                       |



|   |             |                                                                                                                                |
|---|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 肉 | Meaning     | Meat, flesh                                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                                                                                |
|   | On yomi     | にく                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses | <div>にく</div> <div>肉</div> <div>ぎゅうにく</div> <div>牛肉</div> <div>ぶたにく</div> <div>豚肉</div> <div>きんにく</div> <div>筋肉 (muscle)</div> |
| 胸 | Meaning     | Chest                                                                                                                          |
|   | Kun yomi    | むね                                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | きょう                                                                                                                            |
|   | Sample uses | <div>むね</div> <div>胸</div> <div>だいきょうきん</div> <div>大胸筋 (pectoral muscles)</div> <div>むなげ</div> <div>胸毛</div>                   |
| 腕 | Meaning     | Arm                                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | うで                                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | わん                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses | <div>うで</div> <div>腕</div> <div>じょうわんにとうきん</div> <div>上腕二頭筋 (biceps)</div> <div>ちやわん</div> <div>茶碗 (rice bowl)</div>           |
| 腹 | Meaning     | Stomach                                                                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    | はら・なか                                                                                                                          |
|   | On yomi     | ふく                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses | <div>なか</div> <div>お腹</div> <div>ふっきん</div> <div>腹筋</div> <div>はら</div> <div>腹がへた</div>                                        |
| 痛 | Meaning     | Pain                                                                                                                           |
|   | Kun yomi    | いた (い) ・いた (む) ・いた (める)                                                                                                        |
|   | On yomi     | つう                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses | <div>いた</div> <div>痛い</div> <div>ずっとう</div> <div>頭痛</div> <div>いた</div> <div>痛める</div>                                         |

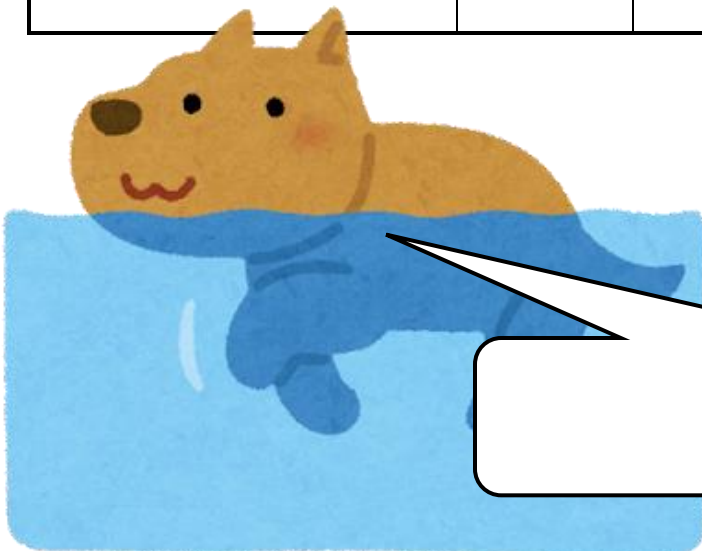
The radicle that looks like 月 is actually 肉 squished into a corner. This radicle indicates the kanji deals with the body.



|   |                 |                                                                                      |
|---|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 教 | Meaning         | Teach, education                                                                     |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | おし（える）・おそ（わる）                                                                        |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | きょう                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | 教える                      教育                                                          |
| 起 | Meaning         | Wake                                                                                 |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | おき（る）                                                                                |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | き                                                                                    |
|   | Sample uses     | お<br>起きる                                                                             |
| 寝 | Meaning         | Sleep                                                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ね（る）                                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しん                                                                                   |
|   | Sample uses     | ね<br>寝る                      しんしつ<br>寝室 (bedroom)                                    |
| 切 | Meaning         | Cut                                                                                  |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | き（る）                                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | せつ                                                                                   |
|   | Sample uses     | き<br>切る                      しんせつ<br>親切<br>きっぷ<br>切符                      せつぷく<br>切腹 |
| 払 | Meaning         | Pay, dispose of                                                                      |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | はら（う）                                                                                |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ひつ・ふつ                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses     | はら<br>払う                      ばら<br>酔っ払う<br>しはら<br>支払う                               |



|   |             |                                                                                           |
|---|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 太 | Meaning     | Fat, thick                                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    | ふと (る) ・ふと (い)                                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | たい                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | <div>ふと 太る                      たいよう 太陽</div> <div>ふと 太い                    たい こ 太鼓</div> |
| 瘦 | Meaning     | Thin                                                                                      |
|   | Kun yomi    | や (せる)                                                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | しゅう・そう                                                                                    |
|   | Sample uses | や 痩せる                                                                                     |
| 取 | Meaning     | Take                                                                                      |
|   | Kun yomi    | と (る)                                                                                     |
|   | On yomi     | しゅ                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | と 取る                                                                                      |
| 泳 | Meaning     | Swim                                                                                      |
|   | Kun yomi    | およ (ぐ)                                                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | えい                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | <div>およ 泳ぐ                      すいえい 水泳 (swimming)</div>                                  |



泳いでいるよ

CHAPTER 3 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 3

### Exercise 3.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

## 1. 頭

[illegible]

## 2. 顔

[illegible]

### 3. 首

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 首            | 首 | 首 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 4. 毛

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 毛            | 毛 | 毛 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5. 肉

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 肉            | 肉 | 肉 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 肉 | 肉 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6. 胸

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 胸            | 胸 | 胸 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 𠃊 | 𠃊 | 𠃊 | 𠃊 | 𠃊 | 𠃊 | 𠃊 | 𠃊 |

## 7. 腕

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 腕            | 腕 | 腕 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 腕 |

## 8. 腹

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 腹            | 腹 | 腹 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 腹 |

## 9. 痛

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 痛            | 痛 | 痛 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 一 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 疒 | 疒 | 疒 | 疒 | 痛 |

## 10. 教

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 教            | 教 | 教 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 丰 | 考 | 考 | 孝 | 孝 | 孝 | 教 |

## 11. 起

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 起            | 起 | 起 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 走 | 走 | 起 | 起 |

## 12. 寢

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 寢            | 寢 | 寢 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 丨 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 寢 | 寢 |





### Exercise 3.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. かみのけがこすぎて、きれなかった。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. おきたあとでおなかがすいたので、にくをたべた。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. ジムでうんどうしすぎました。やせましたが、むねもうでもいためました。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. あたまがいいし、おしえるのがじょうずだし、とてもいいせんせいだ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. およぐまえにはらおう。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. ワニはくびがふとくて、しっぽがながい。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. かおもあたまもあたらしいせっけんであらってみた。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 3.3

On the next page, fill in the tables to conjugate each verb into the various forms. The “plain too” form refers to Grammar Point 3.6.

1. します

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

2. きます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" |  | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|--|-------------|
|            |             |               |  |             |

3. まけます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

4. あらいます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

5. かちます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

6. あやまります

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

7. おすびます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

8. うみます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

9. やきます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

10. いそぎます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

11. こがします

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|            |             |               |               |             |

### Exercise 3.4

Translate each sentence. Each uses two or more grammar points from this week.

1. I can't made bread well. But tomorrow, I will try a new way of making bread.

[illegible]

2. I'm trying to win, but it's too difficult.

3. I'm really busy, I can't sleep recently, I'm tired... I'm considering quitting the job.

4. The thickness of my beard is too horrible, so I'm going to try shaving it.

5. No one can change the length of their legs.

6. Let's try reading it together (write in casual speech)!

### Exercise 3.5

Using the adjectives in the box as a base, translate each word into Japanese.

おおきい    あたまのいい    あつい    むずかしい    ひろい  
こい    ちがう    ふるい    たかい    うつくしい    とおい    やさしい    たいへん  
むずかしい    おもしろい    くさい    うつくしい    ながい

Length: \_\_\_\_\_ Size: \_\_\_\_\_ Intelligence: \_\_\_\_\_

Difficulty: \_\_\_\_\_ Spaciousness: \_\_\_\_\_ Distance: \_\_\_\_\_

Thickness (liquid): \_\_\_\_\_ Thickness (solid): \_\_\_\_\_

Interestingness: \_\_\_\_\_ Amount of Trouble: \_\_\_\_\_

Beauty: \_\_\_\_\_ Stink: \_\_\_\_\_ Stubbornness: \_\_\_\_\_

Kindness: \_\_\_\_\_ Expense: \_\_\_\_\_ Oldness: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 3.6

Select the correct option from each set to create a sentence that makes sense.

1. ズボンは長 {すぎる・く・さ・い} ので、長 {すぎる・く・さ・い} をかえてください。今は {きない・きれない・きれない・はかない・はけない・はかれない} ので、新しいのも買 {える・わない・う・おう・えない} と思っています。
2. {どこか・だれか・どこ} でお茶を飲 {もう・まない・み・られる} よ。
3. 今年は日本へ行 {く・けない・ける・こう・かない・って} が、  
{だれか・いつか・だれ・いつ} 行 {く・けない・ける・こう・かない・ってみ} たいです。
4. 多分 {こられる・こられない・くられる・くられない・これる・これない・  
くれる・くれない} と思うが少なくとも何かをおく {る・り・れ・っている} 。
5. 食べ {られた・すぎた・てみた・た} が、まず {さで・すぎて・なくて・いし}  
あまり食べ {られなかった・すぎた・てみた・た} 。
6. クラスにきょうみがな {くてみて・さすぎて・さ} べんきょうが {できない・でき  
られる・しられる・せる} 。
7. お、あのきっさてんはすてきだ！入 {ってみるし・ってみよう・ってみもう} 。
8. 本のむずかし {さ・すぎる・くなさすぎる} がひどくて、読 {られ・め・も・ま}  
ない。おもしろく {なさすぎる・ないし・なさ} 、高か {かったし・すぎた・  
さ} 、 {なにか・どこか・だれか} ですてたい。
9. コーヒーを飲 {もうと思った・めた・みすぎた・まなさすぎた} し、ストレスもあ  
るし、寝 {ようと思っていた・られた・すぎて・られなかった・たし} 。
10. りょうりが上手になりたいので、さいきん毎日ばんごはんを作 {ろうとしている・  
ってみる・れる} 。でもまだ上手に作 {ろうとしてない・ってみない・れない} 。
11. この店はいつもにぎやか {すぎた・すぎて・すぎる・すぎるし・すぎない} が、い  
ちばんいやなのは、食べものの {やすさ・やすすぎ・たかさ・たかすぎ} だね。
12. よく {さ・すぎた・し・できた} 。少し休 {める・もう・まれる・みすぎる} ！

## CHAPTER 3 WORKBOOK ANSWER KEY • 解答集 3

### Exercise 3.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

## 1. 頭

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 頭            | 頭 | 頭 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

## 2. 顔

[illegible]

### 3. 首

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 首            | 首 | 首 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 4. 毛

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 毛            | 毛 | 毛 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5. 肉

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 肉            | 肉 | 肉 |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6. 胸

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 胸            | 胸 | 胸 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 胸 | 胸 | 胸 | 胸 | 胸 | 胸 | 胸 |

## 7. 腕

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 腕            | 腕 | 腕 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 腕 |

## 8. 腹

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 腹            | 腹 | 腹 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 腹 |

## 9. 痛

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 痛            | 痛 | 痛 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 一 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 疒 | 疒 | 疒 | 疒 | 痛 |

## 10. 教

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 教            | 教 | 教 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 教 |

## 11. 起

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 起            | 起 | 起 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 起 |

## 12. 寢

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 寢            | 寢 | 寢 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 丨 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 寢 |





### Exercise 3.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. かみのけがこすぎて、きれなかった。

Rewrite: かみの毛がこすぎて、切れなかった。

Translate: The hair was too thick, (and) so I couldn't cut it.

2. おきたあとでおなかがすいたので、にくをたべた。

Rewrite: 起きた後でお腹がすいたので、肉を食べた。

Translate: I was hungry after I woke up, so I ate meat.

3. ジムでうんどうしすぎました。やせましたが、むねもうでもいためました。

Rewrite: ジムでうんどうしすぎました。痩せましたが胸も腕も痛めました。

Translate: I worked out too much at the gym. I've lost weight, but I hurt my chest and arm.

4. あたまがいいし、おしえるのがじょうずだし、とてもいいせんせいだ。

Rewrite: 頭がいいし、教えるのが上手だし、とてもいい先生だ。

Translate: They are smart, good at teaching... just a great teacher.

5. およぐまえにはらおう。

Rewrite: 泳ぐ前に払おう。

Translate: Let's pay before swimming.

6. ワニはくびがふとくて、しっぽがながい。

Rewrite: ワニは首が太くて、しっぽが長い。

Translate: Crocodiles have thick necks and long tails.

7. かおもあたまもあたらしいせっけんであらってみた。

Rewrite: 顔も頭もあたらしいせっけんで洗ってみた。

Translate: I tried washing my face and head with new soap.

### Exercise 3.3

On the next page, fill in the tables to conjugate each verb into the various forms. The “plain too” form refers to Grammar Point 3.6.

1. します

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| する         | できる         | できない          | しよう           | しすぎる        |

2. きます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" |  | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|--|-------------|
| くる         | こられる        | こられない         |  | きすぎる        |

3. まけます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| まける        | まけられる       | まけられない        | まけよう          | まけすぎる       |

4. あらいます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| あらう        | あらえる        | あらえない         | あらおう          | あらいすぎる      |

5. かちます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| かつ         | かてる         | かてない          | かとう           | かちすぎる       |

6. あやまります

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| あやまる       | あやまれる       | あやまれない        | あやまろう         | あやまりすぎる     |

7. おすびます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| おすぶ        | おすべる        | おすべない         | おすぼう          | おすびすぎる      |

8. うみます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| うむ         | うめる         | うめない          | うもう           | うみすぎる       |

9. やきます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| やく         | やける         | やけない          | やこう           | やきすぎる       |

10. いそぎます

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| いそぐ        | いそげる        | いそげない         | いそごう          | いそぎすぎる      |

11. こがします

| Plain Pos. | Plain "Can" | Plain "Can't" | Plain "Let's" | Plain "Too" |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| こがす        | こがせる        | こがせない         | こがそう          | こがしすぎる      |

### Exercise 3.4

Translate each sentence. Each uses two or more grammar points from this week.

1. I can't make bread well. But tomorrow, I will try a new way of making bread.

パンをあまり上手に作れない(やけない)。でも、明日あたらしい作り方をやってみる。

2. I'm trying to win, but it's too difficult.

かとうとしているが、むずかしすぎる。

3. I'm really busy, I can't sleep recently, I'm tired... I'm considering quitting the job.

とてもいそがしいし、さいきんねられないし、つかれているし、仕事をやめと思っている。

4. The thickness of my beard is too horrible, so I'm going to try shaving it.

ひげの太さがひどすぎるので、そってみる。

5. No one can change the length of their legs.

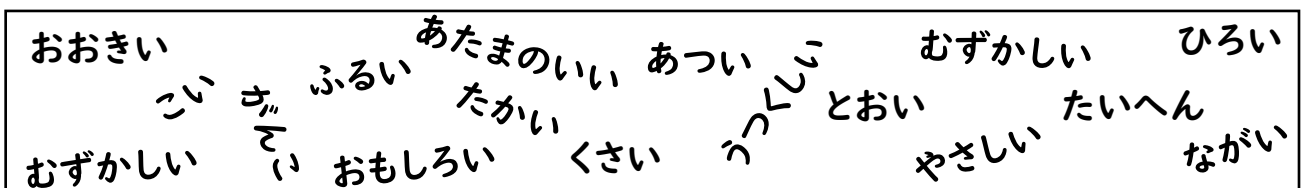
だれも足の長さをかえられない。(足の長さをかえられる人がいない。)

6. Let's try reading it together (write in casual speech)!

いっしょに読んでみよう!

### Exercise 3.5

Using the adjectives in the box as a base, translate each word into Japanese.



Length: ながさ Size: おおきさ Intelligence: あたまのよさ

Difficulty: むずかしさ Spaciousness: ひろさ Distance: とおい

Thickness (liquid): こさ Thickness (solid): あつさ

Interestingness: おもしろさ Amount of Trouble: めんどくささ

Beauty: うつくしさ Stink: くささ Stubbornness: がんこさ

Kindness: やさしさ Expense: たかさ Oldness: ふるさ

## Exercise 3.6

Select the correct option from each set to create a sentence that makes sense.

1. ズボンは長 {すぎる・く・さ・い} ので、長 {すぎる・く・さ・い} さい。今は {きない・きられない・きれない・はかない・はけない・はかれない} ので、新しいのも買 {える・わない・う・おう・えない} と思っています。

今ははかない might be okay  
but it's not as good.

The pants are too long so please change their length. Since I can't wear them right now, I'm thinking of buying new ones.

2. {どこか・だれか・どこ} でお茶を飲 {もう・まない・み・られる} よ。

Let's drink some tea somewhere.

3. 今年は日本へ行 {く・けない・ける・こう・かない・って} が、  
{だれか・いつか・だれ・いつ} 行 {く・けない・ける・こう・かない・ってみ} たいです。

I can't go to Japan this year but I want to go sometime.

4. 多分 {こられる・こられない・くられる・くられない・これる・これくられる・くれない} と思うが少なくとも何かをおく {る・り・れ・つ} 。

I can see an argument for  
こられない・くる・こない  
here too to be honest.

I think I can probably come but at the very minimum I can send something.

5. 食べ {られた・すぎた・てみた・た} が、まず {さで・すぎて・なくて・いし} あまり食べ {られなかった・すぎた・てみた・た} 。

I had a bite but it was too gross, and so I wasn't able to eat it really.

6. クラスにきょうみがな {くてみて・さすぎて・さ} べんきょうが {できない・できられる・しられる・せる} 。

I am so uninterested in class that I can't study.

7. お、あのきつさてんはすてきだ！入 {ってみるし・ってみよう・ってみもう} 。

Oh, that cafe is really nice! Let's have a look inside!

8. 本のむずかし {さ・すぎる・くなさすぎる} がひどくて、読 {られ・め・も・ま} ない。おもしろく {なさすぎる・ないし・なさ}、高か {かったし・すぎた・さ}、{なにか・どこか・だれか} ですてたい。

The book's difficulty is too much, I can't read it. It's not interesting, it was expensive.. I just want to throw it away somewhere.

9. コーヒーを飲 {もうと思った・めた・みすぎた・まなさすぎた} し、ストレスもあるし、寝 {ようと思っていた・られた・すぎて・られなかった・たし} 。

I drank too much coffee, I'm stressed, and therefore I couldn't sleep.

10. りょうりが上手になりたいので、さいきん毎日ばんごはんを作 {ろうとしている・ってみる・れる}。でもまだ上手に作 {ろうとしてない・ってみない・れない} 。

I want to become good at cooking so recently I'm trying to cook dinner every night. But I can't make it well yet.

11. この店はいつもにぎやか {すぎた・すぎて・すぎる・すぎるし・すぎない} が、いちばんいやなのは、食べものの {やすさ・やすすぎ・たかさ・たかすぎ} だね。

This restaurant is always too busy, but the worst thing is the price of the food.

12. よく {さ・すぎた・し・できた}。少し休 {める・もう・まれる・みすぎる}！

Great job! Let's take a break!

## CHAPTER FOUR · 第四章

### VOCABULARY · ごい

#### Nouns

|         |                      |
|---------|----------------------|
| うでどけい   | wrist watch          |
| おみやげ    | souvineer            |
| かんこうきやく | tourists, sightseers |
| きっぷ     | ticket               |
| こんいろ    | deep blue            |
| さいきん    | recently             |
| さいてい    | the worst            |
| じゅんび    | preparations         |
| せびろ     | suit (older word)    |
| ぜいきん    | tax                  |
| てぶくろ    | gloves               |
| ぶどう     | grapes               |
| のうりよく   | ability/talent       |
| みかん     | mandarin             |
| むらさき    | purple               |
| もっと     | more                 |
| りよかん    | Japanese inn         |
| ろてんぶろ   | outdoor bath         |

#### い Adjectives

|          |                                                 |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------|
| あぶない     | dangerous                                       |
| うらやましい   | jealous                                         |
| えらい      | upstanding, remarkable,<br>having social status |
| [と]なかがいい | on good terms w/ [人]                            |
| めずらしい    | rare                                            |

#### Phrases

|                         |                                     |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <sup>たい</sup> 大した[noun] | significant, important              |
| どのぐらいかかる                | about how much/long<br>does it take |
| はじめて[verb]              | [verb] for the first time           |

#### う Verbs

|                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <sup>おも</sup> <sup>だ</sup> 思い出す | to remember             |
| かう                              | to raise/have a pet     |
| きまる                             | to be set [intrans]     |
| さがす                             | to look for, to search  |
| [じかんを]すごす                       | to spend [time doing]   |
| [に]とまる                          | to stay (in hotel etc.) |
| みつかる                            | to be found [intrans]   |

#### る Verbs

|      |                    |
|------|--------------------|
| きめる  | to decided [trans] |
| みつける | to find [trans]    |

#### Compound Verbs

|         |                       |
|---------|-----------------------|
| いんさつする  | to print              |
| かくにんする  | to confirm            |
| かんこうする  | to sightsee           |
| きんちょうする | to get nervous        |
| こうかんする  | to exchange           |
| しょうかいする | to introduce          |
| じゅんびする  | to prepare            |
| ぼしゅうする  | to recruit (job etc.) |
| りゅうがくする | to study abroad       |

#### な Adjectives

|        |                       |
|--------|-----------------------|
| いっぱんてき | general, normal       |
| ちやち    | cheap, shoddy         |
| ごうか    | gorgeous, extravagant |

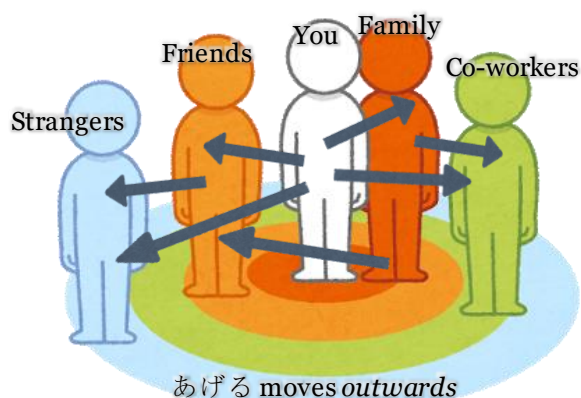


## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 4.1: Giving & receiving items

In Japanese, there are two verbs that work like “to give” in English: あげる and くれる. Both are る verbs, and both indicate that someone gives something (direct object + を) to another person (target of action + に), but each verb is used in two distinct situations.

The verb あげる is used when the act of “giving” moves *outwards* from your in-group. So if you give something to your father, use あげる. If your father gives something to their boss, use あげる. But if your father’s boss gives something to your father, you can’t use あげる.



私は父に新しい手ぶくろをあげた。

[I gave new gloves to my father.]

Here the giver is closer to you than Tanaka OR they and Tanaka are both out-group to a similar extent.

高山さんにビールをあげますか。

[Will you give Tanaka a beer?]

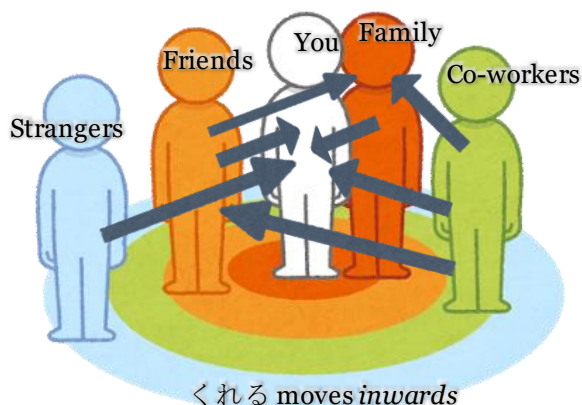
先生は私に本をあげますか。

[Gibberish]

You are your closest in-group. If the teacher is giving something to you, that always moves *inwards*, so あげる can't be used.



In contrast, くれる is used when the act of “giving” moves *into* your personal circle. So if your father gives you something, use くれる. If your father’s boss gives him something, also use くれる. But if your friend gives your teacher something? You need to use あげる.



あ、それを一本くれない？

[Won't you give me one of those?]

先生が私たちにおみやげをくれました。

[The teacher gave us all souvenirs.]

お父さん、みかんをひとつくれるよ。

[Gibberish]



The verb やる (to do) can be used to give things to non-humans.

犬に水をやった。

[I gave the dog some water.]

Your father is outside of your in group compared to you, so if you give him something you use あげる.

As it stands, it sounds like a *very* odd demand (“Father, you *will* give me one mikan”).

To say “receive” or “get”, instead use the う verb もらう. The person who gets the object is marked with は (or が, as appropriate), and the person who they got it from is marked by either に or から. There is no real difference between the two.

English can drop “to” from “gave to”, but we can’t drop に.

If talking about acts of giving that doesn’t involve you, always take the perspective of the person you are talking to.

For instance, to inquire if someone gave Tom a book, you would ask Tom 「トムさんにくれた?」, but ask the giver 「トムさんにあげた?」

先生が私に本をくれた。

[A teacher gave (inwards) me a book.]

私は先生から本をもらった。

[I got a book from the teacher]

かれにプレゼントをあげました。

[I gave (outwards) a present to him.]

かれにプレゼントをもらいました。

[(Someone) received a present from him.]

父にあげに行く。

[I’ll go to give it to my dad.]

父にもらいに行く。

[(Someone) will go to get it from my dad.]

父にあげた。

[I gave it to my dad.]

父にくれた。

[They gave it to my dad.]

父にもらった。

[??? got it from my dad.]



Because of the two giving verbs, we can tell who gave the present to the speaker’s dad even without a stated topic. In contrast, who received the present in sentence 3 is not 100% clear.

## Grammar Point 4.2: Giving & receiving actions

We can also attach the giving/receiving verbs we just learned to the ~て form of verbs to indicate that someone does [verb] for someone else, emphasizing that the act was done as a favor or help. To clarify how this grammar point works, I’ve used English translations which may read oddly. However, note that they do not sound odd in Japanese! Although natural English translations often drop explicit reference to the ~てあげる・くれる form, dropping them from Japanese would often obscure the sentences’ meaning.

Just like with “to give”, ~てあげる describes actions done by someone who is closer to you than the person they help. The “giver” is still marked by は, and the “target” by に.

私は母にばんごはんを作ってあげた。

[I made dinner for my mom (as a gift/favor).]

友だちが先生にせつめいしてあげました。

[My friend explained it to the teacher (to help them).]

ジェフは車いすをなおしてあげると言っていた。

[Jeff said he will fix the wheelchair (to help someone who isn’t me, probably you).]

行ってあげられなかった。

[I was unable to go (as a favor to someone).]





Using ~てあげる when talking to the person you will help/helped can sound arrogant, so you should usually avoid it. It's best to stick with ~ましょうか for offering assistance.



てっだって **あげます** !  
[I will help **as a favor**!]  
(Can sound arrogant)

てっだうよ !  
[I'll help!]  
(Fine, but casual/blunt)

てっだいましょうか。  
[Shall I assist you?]  
(Polite, no problems)

Of course, if you intend to stress that you went out of your way for some reason, such as for clarity and/or while making a complaint, you can easily use ~てあげる to emphasize this.



きのう買って **あげた** のにもうこわしたのですか？  
[I bought it **for you (as a kindness, you know)** yesterday but you broke it already?]

In contrast, ~てくれる indicates that someone [verbs] for the benefit of someone who is closer to you than the [verber]. If someone does something for **you**, always use ~てくれる.

今日あそんで **くれて**、ほんとうにありがとう !  
[Thanks so much **for (doing the favor of)** hanging out with me today!]

父のボスが私たちをさそって **くれました**。  
[My dad's boss **(did us the kind favor of)** inviting us.]

だれも分からなかったので、先生がもういっかいせつめいして **くれた**。  
[No one understood, so the teacher **helped us all out by** explaining again.]

兄がみせて **くれなかった**。  
[My older brother **didn't** show it to me **(which would have assisted me)**.]

While the literal translations might sound overpolite in English, adding ~てくれる here is quite natural in Japanese.



Because sentence elements are regularly dropped in Japanese, the proper use of these two forms can often be key to understanding a sentence or even interpersonal relationships.



もう田中さんに作って **あげた** よ。  
[(Someone, probably me) already made it **for** Tanaka **(who is outside this group)**.]

もう田中さんに作って **くれた** よ。  
[(Someone, not me) already made it **for** Tanaka **(who is closer to us than the giver)**.]

Don't overanalyse this as "Japanese people are always polite". These features are *normal*, and polite speech is inherently *more than normal*. Often times, these verbs are basically just used to show the direction of actions (which is especially necessary when pronouns are dropped), rather than express deep thanks.





The form ~**てやる** can also mean “give (outwards)”, but it is almost always rude (or *very* casual and close), as it usually indicates actions “given” as punishment or from contempt.



分からないの？ じゃ、（あなたに）おしえて**やる**！  
[You don't get it? Well then, I'll teach you **(a lesson)**!]

More natural English might read something like “As if I'd ever lend money to a jerk like you” in context.

きらいな人にお金を返して**やらない**よ。  
[I **wouldn't lower myself to do the favor of** lending money to someone I don't like.]

The ~**てもらう** form is then used to show that someone received a beneficial act. Just like with ~**をもらう**, the person they receive the act from is marked with **に** or **から**. Compared to ~**てあげる**・**くれる**, ~**てもらう** therefore emphasizes the receiver rather than the giver.

私はこれを母に作って**もらった**。  
[My mom made this **for me/I received the favor of** making this from my mom.]

先生に教えて**もらおう**。  
[Let's get the teacher to explain it **to us**.]

A natural sounding translation may invert the “doer” or even change the verb from “get” to “give”. That's fine! But don't forget what the actual sentence is saying in Japanese.

聞いてみたが、何も言っても**もらわなかった**。  
[Lit: I tried asking, but I **didn't get the favor of** them saying anything.]  
[Natural: I tried asking, but they didn't **let me in on** anything.]

When used in the wrong contexts, ~**てもらう** in the present/future tense can sound threatening, so be careful.

じゃ、せつめいして**もらう**よ。  
[Well, in that case, I'll **receive the favor of** explaining it from you.]



To finish this off, let's compare sentences using each major version of these ~**て** + forms.

父は山口さんに本をかって**あげました**。  
[My dad **gave** Yamaguchi **the favor** of lending them a book.]

父は私に本をかって**くれました**。  
[My dad **gave** me **the favor** of lending me a book.]

In more natural English:  
My dad loaned Yamaguchi a book.  
My dad loaned me a book.  
I borrowed a book from my dad.

私は父に本をかって**もらいました**。  
[I **received the favor** from my dad of being lent a book.]



### Grammar Point 4.3: Saying “for” with ために and にとって

In the prior grammar point, a lot of the translations used “for”. However, there actually was no explicit use of “for” in any of the earlier sentences; the “for” was just implied via the verbs and through using に to mark direction of action.

To say “for” explicitly in Japanese, you first have to decide which English meaning of “for” you want. To express the word for “for” as in “do it **for** me” use ために. When used with nouns, as in [do it **for** noun], ために attaches to the noun via の.

明日のテストの**ために**六時間勉強しました。

[I studied six hours **for** tomorrow’s test.]

私はかぞくの**ために**はたらくんだ。しごとがあまり好きじゃない。

[I work **for** my family. I don’t really like my job that much.]

私の**ために**なおして**くれた**の？ありがとう！

[You **(did me a favor and)** fixed it **for me**? Thank you!]

It’s okay to mix ために and the ~て forms earlier. It comes off as emphatic rather than redundant.

毎日かんこうきやく**のために**りょかんをそうじしなければいけません。

[We have to clean the inn every day **for** the sightseers.]

When using ために to mean [**for** doing verb], attach it directly to the verb’s **plain present polite** form. This may translate more like “in order to verb” in many cases.

早く起きる**ために**早く寝るのがいい。

[Sleeping early is good **for** waking up early.]

来年日本に行く**ために**今色々なじゅんびをしている。

[I’m currently doing various preparations **in order to** go to Japan next year.]

エネルギーをふやす**ために**コーヒーを飲んだ。

[I drank coffee **for the purpose of** increasing my energy.]

Do not use this form for “in order to be able to do”. See Chapter 10.4.

To instead say “for” as in “when it comes to”, use にとって. This only attaches to nouns.

私**にとって**、ねこのほうが犬よりかわいい。だからねこを飼っている。

[**For** me, cat’s are cuter than dogs. That’s why I own cats.]

かのじょ**にとって**日本語はとてもむずかしい言語だ。

[**For** her, Japanese is a very difficult language.]

“For” meaning “surprisingly”, as in “Today is hot **for** January” uses neither form. See Chapter 11.7.

#### Grammar Point 4.4: Doing things in advance with ~ておく

We have two more patterns involving the ~て form this chapter. The first is the ~ておく form, which is used in context to note that something is done in advance, or in preparation.

明日のピクニックのためにランチを作っておいたよ。

[I made lunch **in advance** for tomorrow's picnic.]

雨がふるのでまどを閉めておきましょう。

[It will rain so **let's** shut the windows **beforehand**.]

寝る前にスーツを出しておいた方がいいかもしれません。

[Before going to sleep, it might be best to take out the suit **so its ready**.]



A note of caution for ~て[verb] forms, often called auxillary verbs: many can't be combined. Something like 書いてみておいた is strange and won't make sense.

#### Grammar Point 4.5: Requesting with ~てくださいませんか

We close this chapter with one more ~て form construction. By combining the ~てくれる form with the ~ませんか form, we create a polite way of asking someone for a favor.

あれをわたしててくださいませんか。

[**Would you mind** passing me that?]

だいじな話があるんですが、ちょっと聞いててくださいませんか。

[I have something important to talk about, **could you** listen for a bit?]



We can also use ~てもらえませんか in this way too. This is awkward to translate literally in English, but works just like ~てもらう, as the receiver is the topic and the giver is marked by に. The ~てもらえませんか form can become more polite via ~いただけませんか, as we'll discuss more in Chapter 8.2, and becomes ~くれない in casual speech.



今日は（あなたに）行ってもらえませんか。

[**Would you mind** going today? (Lit: **Could I receive** the favor of going from you?)]

つごうのよい時に教えていただけませんか。

[Lit: When convenient for you, **could I receive** you teaching me?]

[Natural: When convenient, **could you please** teach me?]

ちょっとてづたってくれない？

[**Can you** help a bit?]

~てくれる? with rising intonation is just "will you/are going to (do for me)?", which is one step less polite than ~くれない but still a semi-polite request.

The あなたに is rarely actually said, I'm just including it so you can see the grammar.



# CHAPTER 4 KANJI • かんじ

This week, we will learn 18 kanji, focusing on compounds used to write common words.

|   |             |                                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 部 | Meaning     | Bureau, part                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    | へ・べ                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | ぶ                                                                                                               |
|   | Sample uses | <div>ぶぶん</div> 部分 (a part) <div>ぶちよう</div> 部長 (department head) <div>へや</div> 部屋                                |
| 屋 | Meaning     | Shop, house, dealer                                                                                             |
|   | Kun yomi    | や                                                                                                               |
|   | On yomi     | おく                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>いざかや</div> 居酒屋 (izakaya) <div>や お や</div> 八百屋 (greengrocer) <div>へや</div> 部屋 <div>おくがい</div> 屋外 (outdoors) |
| 両 | Meaning     | Both                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | ふたつ                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | りょう                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses | <div>りょうしん</div> 両親 <div>りょうほう</div> 両方                                                                         |
| 親 | Meaning     | Parents, kindness                                                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    | おや・した (しい)                                                                                                      |
|   | On yomi     | しん                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>おや</div> 親 <div>しんせつ</div> 親切 <div>りょうしん</div> 両親 <div>した</div> 親しい (emotionally close)                    |
| 酒 | Meaning     | Alcohol                                                                                                         |
|   | Kun yomi    | さけ                                                                                                              |
|   | On yomi     | しゅ                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>さけ</div> お酒 <div>にほんしゅ</div> 日本酒                                                                           |

You parents are watching you (見) stand (立) on top of a tree (木)



|   |                 |                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 最 | Meaning         | Most                                                                                                                                     |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | もっと (も)                                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | さい                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>さいきん<br/>最近</div> <div>さいご<br/>最後</div> <div>さいこう<br/>最高</div> <div>さいしょ<br/>最初</div> <div>さいてい<br/>最低</div> <div>さいあく<br/>最悪</div> |
| 低 | Meaning         | Low                                                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ひく (い)                                                                                                                                   |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | てい                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>ひく<br/>低い</div> <div>さいてい<br/>最低</div>                                                                                              |
| 初 | Meaning         | To begin, to start                                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | はじ (め)                                                                                                                                   |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しょ                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>はじ<br/>初めて</div> <div>さいしょ<br/>最初</div>                                                                                             |
| 良 | Meaning         | Good                                                                                                                                     |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | よ (い)                                                                                                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | りょう                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>よ<br/>良かった</div>                                                                                                                    |
| 悪 | Meaning         | Bad                                                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | わる (い)                                                                                                                                   |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | あく                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>わる<br/>悪い</div> <div>さいあく<br/>最悪 (awful/evil)</div> <div>わるもの<br/>悪者 (a bad person)</div>                                           |



|   |                 |                       |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 街 | Meaning         | Town                  |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | まち                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | がい                    |
|   | Sample uses     | まち<br>街<br>まちなか<br>街中 |
| 市 | Meaning         | City                  |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | いち                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | し                     |
|   | Sample uses     | とうきょうし<br>東京市         |
| 村 | Meaning         | Village               |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | むら                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | そん                    |
|   | Sample uses     | むら<br>村               |
| 雑 | Meaning         | Rough, sloppy, crude  |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | まじ (る)                |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ざつ                    |
|   | Sample uses     | ざつ<br>雑な<br>ざっし<br>雑誌 |
| 誌 | Meaning         | Documents             |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | し                     |
|   | Sample uses     | ざっし<br>雑誌             |





|   |                 |                                                                    |
|---|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 飛 | Meaning         | Fly, jump                                                          |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | と (ぶ)                                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ひ                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | と<br>飛ぶ<br>ひこうき<br>飛行機                                             |
| 機 | Meaning         | Machine                                                            |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | はた                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | き                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | きかい<br>機械 (machine)<br>きかい<br>機会 (chance)<br>ひこうき<br>飛行機           |
| 院 | Meaning         | Temple, institution                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | いん                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses     | びょういん<br>病院<br>だいがくいん<br>大学院<br>じいん<br>寺院 (temple)<br>びょういん<br>美容院 |





# CHAPTER 4 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 4

## Exercise 4.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

### 1. 部

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 部            | 部 | 部 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 2. 屋

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 屋            | 屋 | 屋 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 3. 両

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 両            | 両 | 両 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 4. 親

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 親            | 親 | 親 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 5. 酒

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 酒            | 酒 | 酒 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### 6. 最

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 最            | 最 | 最 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |





## Exercise 4.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. りょうしんがくるので、へやをかたづけておく。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. かいものをするために、おおきいまちまでいかなければなりません。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. かれはめがわるいので、びょういんでまっているあいだにざっしをよんであげた。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. さいしょはよかったですが、さいごのぶぶんはさいあくだったとおもいます。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. こどもがパイロットにひこうきのcockpitをみせてもらいました。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. わたしにとって、いろいろなむらにいって、そのむらのおさけをのんでみるのがさ  
いこうのたびだ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. このしには、ひくいたてものがおおい。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 4.3:

For each sentence, fill in the 「 」 with the correct particles, and place あげる, くれる, or もらう in the correct conjugation in each \_\_\_\_\_, given the translation.

1. I gave him some grapes.

私「 」 かれ「 」 ぶどう「 」 \_\_\_\_\_。

2. He gave me a mikan.

かれ「 」 私「 」 みかんをいっこ \_\_\_\_\_。

3. We got the tickets from her dad.

きっぷ「 」 かのじよのお父さん「 」 \_\_\_\_\_。

4. The teacher gave me a book, so I gave them a present.

先生「 」 私「 」 本「 」 \_\_\_\_\_から、先生「 」  
プレゼント「 」 \_\_\_\_\_。

5. Let's help Mariko out and look for it.

まりこさん「 」 さがして \_\_\_\_\_。

6. He's the one who introduced my wife to me.

かれ「 」 つま「 」 私「 」 しょうかいして \_\_\_\_\_ 人です。

7. I was introduced to my husband by him.

私「 」 かれ「 」 だんな「 」 しょうかいして \_\_\_\_\_。

8. Yamada is the person who found the box my father made for his friend.

山田さん「 」 父「 」 友だち「 」 作って \_\_\_\_\_ はこ「 」  
みつけて \_\_\_\_\_ 人です。

9. You *will* be explaining this to me. Because I won't kill you (if you do).

あなた「 」 せつめいして \_\_\_\_\_ よ。 ころして \_\_\_\_\_ から。



### Exercise 4.4

Select the correct option for each 「                      」 to create a grammatically correct sentence.

1. 私「のために・にとって」おもしろかった。
2. 学生が来る「まえ・あと」に「よてい・やくそく」をかくにんして  
「おきましょう・くれましょう・やりましょう」。
3. だれ「のために・にとって」やったの？
4. 雨がこれから「ふる・ふった・ふっている」からまどを「しまつて・しめて」  
「おいて・あげて・もらつて」「くれませんか・あげませんか」。
5. 田中さん「のために・にとって」、知らない人「のために・にとって」食べ物を  
作つて「あげる・くれる・もらう」のがとてもたのしいです。
6. ビールを「飲む・飲まない」人「のために・にとって」れいぞうこにジュースも  
「入れて・入つて」「にて・やいて・ひやして・こがして」「おく・くれる」ね。

### Exercise 4.5

Translate the sentences as they get progressively more complicated.

1. Tanaka bought it for me.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. My dad cleaned Tanaka's apartment for him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. That person is the Tanaka who received the favor of my dad cleaning his apartment.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Tanaka, who received the favor of my dad cleaning his apartment, bought gloves for me that Sam made for Eric.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

# CHAPTER 4 WORKBOOK ANSWER KEY • 解答集 4

## Exercise 4.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

### 1. 部

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 部            | 部 | 部 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

### 2. 屋

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 屋            | 屋 | 屋 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |

### 3. 両

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 両            | 両 | 両 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |

### 4. 親

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 親            | 親 | 親 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |

### 5. 酒

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 酒            | 酒 | 酒 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |

### 6. 最

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 最            | 最 | 最 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |







## Exercise 4.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. りょうしんがくるので、へやをかたづけておく。

Rewrite: 両親が来るので部屋をかたづけておく。

Translate: My parents are coming so I'll clean my room (in advance).

2. かいものをするために、おおきいまちまでいかなければなりません。

Rewrite: 買い物をするために、大きい街まで行かなければなりません。

Translate: I need to go to a big city to shop.

3. かれはめがわるいので、びょういんでまっているあいだにざっしをよんであげた。

Rewrite: かれは目が悪いので病院で待っている間に雑誌を読んであげた。

Translate: His eyes are bad, so while we waited at the hospital I read a magazine to him.

4. さいしょはよかったですが、さいごのぶぶんはさいあくだったとおもいます。

Rewrite: 最初は良かったですが、最後の部分は最悪だったと思います。

Translate: It was good at first, but I think the last bit was horrible.

5. こどもがパイロットにひこうきのコックピットをみせてもらいました。

Rewrite: 子どもがパイロットに飛行機のコックピットを見せてもらいました。

Translate: The child was shown the cockpit by the pilot.

6. わたしにとって、いろいろなむらにいって、そのむらのおさけをのんでみるのがさ  
いこうのたびだ。

Rewrite: 私にとって色々な村に行ってその村のお酒を飲んでみるのが最高のたびだ。

Translate: For me, going to a bunch of villages and trying their booze is the best type of trip.

7. このしには、ひくいたてものがおおい。

Rewrite: この市には、低いたてものが多い。

Translate: There are lots of low buildings in this city.

### Exercise 4.3:

For each sentence, fill in the 「 」 with the correct particles and place あげる くれる or もらう in the correct conjugation in each \_\_\_\_\_, giving the English translation.

I use plain form endings here, but polite form endings are also fine.

1. I gave him some grapes.

私「は」かれ「に」ぶどう「を」あげた\_\_\_\_\_。

2. He gave me a mikan.

は could work here too, but が often feels better with no context.

「が」私「に」みかんをいっこくれた\_\_\_\_\_。

3. We got the tickets from her dad.

きっぷ「を」かのじよのお父さん「に・から」もらった\_\_\_\_\_。

4. The teacher gave me a book, so I gave them a present.

先生「が」私「に」本「を」くれた\_\_\_\_\_から、先生「に」プレゼント「を」あげた\_\_\_\_\_。

For some of these, it is possible to create other correct versions by drastically re-arranging things so the English and Japanese translations don't match but the meanings do, but the answers you see here are most straightforward.

5. Let's help Mariko out and look for it.

まりこさん「に」さがしてあげましょう\_\_\_\_\_。

は is OK here, but が is better without context since it makes the entire phrase a clause modifying 人

He is the one who introduced my wife to me.

かれ「が」つま「を」私「に」しょうかいしてくれた\_\_\_\_\_人です。

7. I was introduced to my husband by him.

私「は」かれ「に」だんな「を」しょうかいしてもらった\_\_\_\_\_。

8. Yamada is the person who found the box my father made for his friend.

山田さん「は」父「が」友だち「に」作ってあげた\_\_\_\_\_はこ「を」みつけてくれた\_\_\_\_\_人です。

9. You *will* be explaining this to me. Because I won't kill you (if you do).

あなた「に」せつめいしてもらう\_\_\_\_\_よ。ころしてやらない\_\_\_\_\_から。



## Exercise 4.4

Select the correct option for each 「 」 to create a grammatically correct sentence.

1. 私「のために・にとって」おもしろかった。

**It was interesting for me.**

2. 学生が来る「まえ・あと」に「よてい・やくそく」  
「おきましょう・くれましょう・やりましょう」。

**Let's confirm the plan in advance before the student's come.**

3. だれ「のために・にとって」やったの？

**Who did you do it for?**

4. 雨がこれから「ふる・ふった・ふっている」からまどを「しまって・しめて」  
「おいて・あげて・もらって」「くれませんか・あげませんか」。

**It will rain after this, so could you please shut the windows in advance for me?**

5. 田中さん「のために・にとって」、知らない人「のために・にとって」食べ物を  
作って「あげる・くれる・もらう」のがとてもたのしいです。

**For Tanaka, making food for people he doesn't know is very fun.**

6. ビールを「飲む・飲まない」人「のために・にとって」れいぞうこにジュースも  
「入れて・入って」「にて・やいて・ひやして・こがして」「おく・くれる」ね。

**I'll also chill some juice in the fridge for people who don't drink beer, yeah?**

## Exercise 4.5

Translate the sentences as they get progressively more complicated.

1. Tanaka bought it for me.

**田中さんが私に買ってくれた。**

2. My dad cleaned Tanaka's apartment for him.

**父が田中さんのアパートを（田中さんに）そうじしてあげた。**

3. That person is the Tanaka who received the favor of my dad cleaning his apartment.

**あの人が・は父にアパートをそうじしてもらった田中さんです。**

4. Tanaka, who received the favor of my dad cleaning his apartment, bought gloves for me that Sam made for Eric.

**父にアパートをそうじしてもらった田中さんがサムさんが**

**The Tanaka who received apartment cleaning from my dad GA Sam GA**

**エリックさんに作ってあげた手ぶくろを私に買ってくれた。**

**Eric (target) make-gave gloves (direct object)**

**Bought for me.**

From サム to を is one clause. Sam is the "doer" of the verb in the clause so he's the clause's topic. But を marks everything from "Sam" to "gloves" as the direct object, which Tanaka then buys for "me".

I suppose that, in theory, this could be ~あげませんか, but that's creates a bit of an odd scenario where you are asking someone to close the window **for someone else** as a request. It's not impossible though.

## CHAPTER FIVE ・ 第五章

### VOCABULARY ・ ごい

#### Nouns

|                             |                  |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| あらし                         | storm            |
| アナウンサー                      | announcer        |
| おんど                         | temperature      |
| かんそうき                       | clothes dryer    |
| きこう                         | climate          |
| きり                          | mist             |
| こおり                         | ice              |
| じゅうたい                       | traffic jam      |
| せんたく                        | laundry          |
| せんたつき                       | washing mashine  |
| たいおん                        | body temperature |
| タオル                         | towel            |
| てんきようほう                     | weather forecast |
| <small>でんし</small><br>電子レンジ | microwave oven   |
| つゆ (梅雨)                     | the rainy season |
| つゆ (露)                      | dew              |
| マフラー                        | muffler, scarf   |
| はれ                          | clear skies      |
| ばんぐみ                        | program (on TV)  |
| ひょう                         | hail             |
| へんか                         | a change         |

#### い Adjectives

|     |                 |
|-----|-----------------|
| ぬるい | lukewarm, tepid |
|-----|-----------------|

#### な Adjectives

|       |                           |
|-------|---------------------------|
| かわいそう | pitful, sympathy inducing |
| ざんねん  | unfortunate               |
| とくべつ  | special, specific         |
| ひつよう  | necessary                 |
| ふよう   | unnecessary               |

#### う Verbs

|       |                      |
|-------|----------------------|
| あたたまる | to warm up [intrans] |
| おとす   | to drop [trans]      |
| かかる   | to hang [intrans]    |
| かれる   | to wither (plants)   |
| かわかす  | to dry [intrans]     |
| かわく   | to dry [trans]       |
| かわる   | to change [trans]    |
| こおる   | to freeze [intrans]  |
| つづく   | to continue [trans]  |
| ぬらす   | to wet [trans]       |
| ほす    | to hang (to dry)     |
| もやす   | to burn [trans]      |

のどがかわく  
(throat dries)  
means "thirsty"

#### る Verbs

|       |                      |
|-------|----------------------|
| あたためる | to heat up [trans]   |
| おちる   | to fall [intrans]    |
| かえる   | to change [trans]    |
| かける   | to hang (up) [trans] |
| つづける  | to continue [trans]  |
| はれる   | to clear (sky) [int] |
| ぬれる   | to get wet [intrans] |
| もえる   | to burn [intrans]    |

#### Compound Verbs

|                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| [に]さんかする                  | to participate in     |
| せんたくをする                   | to do laundry         |
| れんらくする                    | to contact someone    |
| よやく <small>い</small> を入れる | to make a reservation |
| ようやくする                    | to summarize          |

## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 5.1: Asking “Have you ever...?”

In Japanese, we can use the **positive plain past tense** of verbs to talk about things people have done. If you take *any verb phrase* in this tense and attach it to ~ことがある, we get a construction that means “has done verb”. Let’s look at some simple examples:

私は日本に行ったことがあります。

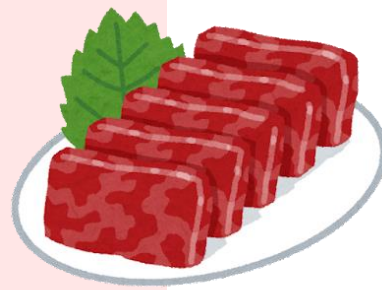
[I **have been** to Japan.]

日本でばさしを食べたことがありますか。

[**Have** you **had/eaten** raw horse in Japan?]

もう十かいぐらいかれに言ったことがあると思う。

[I think I’ve already **said** it to him around ten times.]



To explain what is going on, the verb (phrase) before ことがある is a relative clause which modifies こと. Literally then, this grammar point means something like “[Person] has the thing/experience (= ことがある) of having done [verb]”.

As mentioned, the verb that attaches to こと must be in the **positive plain past** tense. Any further conjugation to change the meaning of the sentence happens to ある instead.



ミーラさんはスマホをお落としたことがないと言っていた。

[Meera was saying that she’s **never** **dropped** her smart phone.]

三十さいになるまで、ビールを飲んだことがありませんでした。

[I **had never** **drunk** a beer until I turned 30.]

~たことができました  
is not impossible,  
but it is quite rare.

The “have never” use of this grammar point can be emphasized by including [1 + a counter + も] before the verb. Obviously, the counter must be appropriate to the direct object. For activities, use the counter ~かい, as in the second example below.

日本語の本を一さつも読んだことがありませんが、いつか読んでみたいです。

[I haven’t even read **a single** book in Japanese, but I want to try someday.]

かれは自分でせんとくをいっかいもやったことがないって。信じられない。

[He said he hasn’t done his own laundry **even once**. Unbelievable.]



## Grammar Point 5.2: Using によると for “According to”

Our next two grammar points are focused on new ways to report speech that work well together, and also help compliment the reporting patterns we learned in Chapter 2.

Our first of these new grammar points is ~によると. This simple phrase attaches to a **noun** to express that what comes *after* is “according to” the attached noun. For example:

天気予報によると、明日は雨がふりますよ。かさをわすれないでください。

[According to the weather forecast, it will rain tomorrow. Don't forget an umbrella!]

かのじょによると、三十分ぐらいかかるはずだ。

[According to her, it should take about 30 minutes.]



However, as mentioned in Chapter 2, it's often best to note when something isn't your own knowledge/comment in Japanese. Let's look at a new way to do this in Grammar Point 5.3.

## Grammar Point 5.3: Reporting speech/hearsay with そうです & みたいです

Our first new way of reporting speech is そうです. This ending attaches to a sentence in the **plain form** to show that you are presenting second-hand information or hearsay. When following a noun or な adjective, だ is required before そうです.



天気予報によると、明日は雨がふるそうです。

[According to the weather forecast, it seems like it will rain tomorrow.]

まこと  
誠 先生のむすこさんは悪い学生だそうです。

[I heard that Prof. Makoto's son is a bad student.]

The “it seems like” here is translated to make the grammar obvious. You might not include it when translating in real life.

Importantly, そうです never conjugates into anything other than **positive present form**. If you want other tenses, change the ending of the plain form sentence before そうです.

誠先生はとても悪い学生だったそうです。

[I heard that Prof. Makoto was a very bad student.]

パティさんによるとパーティーにだれもこなかったそうだ。まずかったね。

[According to Patty, it seems like no one came to the party. Awful, right?]

おいしくないそうです。

[Word on the street is it's not tasty.]





We need to be careful though, because another use of **そうです** exists with a slightly different meaning and grammatical ruleset. We can use this other **そうです** to indicate that something *seems like* or *appears to be* (based on vision/smell etc., not what you heard).

When used with adjectives in their **positive** forms, this second **そうです** swallows up the final **い** or **だ** that would normally appear at the end of their plain form. Let's compare how this looks against the first **そうです** with each adjective type:

Experience based

それはとてもおいし**そうです**よ！

[That **looks** so tasty!]

かれはげんき**そう**だ。よかったね。

[He **seems** well **to me**. That's good.]

Hearsay based

それはおいしい**そうです**よ！

[**Apparently**, that's really tasty!]

かれはげんき**だそう**だ。よかったね。

[**They're saying** he's well. Thankfully.]

There is one exception though: when you want to say something looks “good”, **いい** and **そうです** combine into **よさそうです** rather than **よそうです**.

こんがっきのせいせきは**よさ**そうです。

[Their grades **seem like** they'll be good this semester **from what I can tell**.]

You can also attach the “experience” **そうです** to adjectives in their negative plain form. To do so, take the final **ない** and change it to **なさ**そうです.

ぜんぜんたのしく**なさ**そうだけど？

[I mean, it **looks/seems** like it's **not** any fun at all?]

このかもくは人気**がない**そうです。かんたん**じゃなさ**そうですから？

[This subject **apparently isn't** popular. Maybe because it **looks not** easy?]

You can also use an entire [adjective+**そう**] phrase as a な adjective to modify a noun.

それはとても**たのし**そう**な**ゲームだ。

[That's a very **fun-looking** game!]

りょうりが**上手**そう**な**人だと最初に思いましたが、とても下手です。

[I thought they **looked like** a good-at-cooking person at first, but they're awful.]

“I thought they looked like they'd be good at cooking” would probably be a more natural English translation, but it deletes the grammar.

Verbs can also be attached to this second **そうです** form, and the attachment pattern also depends on the verb's positivity. For **positive** verbs, attach **そうです** directly to the stem.

雨がふる**そうです**。

雨がふり**そうです**。

[Word on the street is it will rain today.][Looks like rain.]

「落ち**そう**？」「ううん、落ち**そう**ではない。<sup>だいじょうぶ</sup>大丈夫だよ。」

[Does it look like it's going to fall?] [No, doesn't look like that. You're good.]

ここには食べられ**そう**なものがあまりないんです。

[There's nothing I feel like I can eat here.]

The verb can conjugate before connecting to **そう**, as in the use of the potential form here. But the basic rule doesn't change. Be sure the statement is still based on your impression or vision.

These constructions can also indicate personal feelings, as in **なきそう** (feel like crying) or **はきそう** (feel like you'll vomit).

For **negative** verbs, change the verb's final **～ない** to **～なさ** (like with negative adjectives) before adding **～そうです**.

雪が**ふらない****そうです**。

雪が**ふらなさ****そうです**。

[I heard it won't snow.]

[Looks to me like snow won't fall.]

わあ、ラッキーだ！今日はじゅうたいが**なさ****そう**だ！

[Oh yeah, what luck! Seems like no traffic jams today!]

This sentence would be said while looking at traffic conditions yourself. **じゅうたいが**ない**そう**だ would instead be said before you can see the issue, such as after hearing a traffic report.

Unlike the first “reporting” **そうです**, we can conjugate this “seems like” **そうです** into other tenses. Do pay attention to if its best to conjugate **そうです** itself or the adjective (as above), although in some cases there isn't much difference between the two.

ぜんぜん悪**そう**ではなかったよ。いつか買おう？

[It didn't seem bad to me at all. Shall we buy one sometime?]

かんたん**そう**でしたが、ほんとうにむずかしかったです。

[It looked simple, but it was really difficult.]

お金があまりないので、来年海外に行け**そう**ではない。<sup>かいが</sup>

[We don't have much money, so it's not looking like we can go abroad next year.]



Importantly, for *all* ~そうです constructions indicating observations and feelings, we *never* use them with adjectives that subjectively describe aesthetic properties. For instance, *きれい* is never used in the construction *きれいそう* even though we say “it looks pretty” in English. If something is pretty, just say so in Japanese! Likewise, if something looks cute, you don’t say *かわいそう*. Just call it *かわいい*. In fact, *かわいそう* is an adjective in and of itself! So if you call a cute-looking cat *かわいそう* instead of *かわいい* you’ve called it “pitiful” rather than “cute”. And *that* would be very *かわいそう*.



Moving on, you may have noticed that we didn’t use the “seems like” *そうです* with nouns. This is because we can’t! To say a noun resembles another item, mark the second item with *みたい* instead. Note that *みたい* is not an *い* adjective, but instead works grammatically like a *な* adjective. So if something *looked* like something else end with *だった・でした*.

あの男の人は体が大きいし、けぶかいし、ゴリラみたいです。

[That man over there is big, hairy... all in all looks like a gorilla.]

きのうのひょうは石みたいだったね。痛かった。

[Yesterday’s hail was like rocks, eh? It hurt.]



This *みたい* can, like the “seems like” *そう*, be used as a *な* adjective too.

うそみたいな話だ。信じられない。

[That’s a story that seems like a lie. I can’t believe it.]



The word *みたい* has a second use though, which brings us back to our initial grammar point: we can also use *みたい* after **plain form** verbs and adjectives to express that something *seems to be* the case. This can overlap with our first use of *そうです*, but more implies something you think from seeing/feeling/gossip rather than trusted speech, and aren’t 100% willing to commit to.

木村さんはきのうあまりねられなかったみたいです。

[It appears as though Kimura wasn’t able to sleep well last night.]

オーストラリアのどうぶつはあぶないみたいだ。

[Word is that Australian animals are dangerous.]

Like the “reporting” *そうです*, this “reporting” *みたいです* does not conjugate out of the present positive.



Phew, that’s a lot! On the next page let’s compare all of these forms that we’ve covered:

あついです。 あつい**そうです**。 あつ**そうです**。 あつい**みたいです**。  
 [It is hot, fact.] [I **heard** it is hot.] [It **looks** hot.] [**Seems** hot.]

あつくない**そうです**。 あつくなさ**そうです**。 あつくない**みたいです**。  
 [**Word is** that it isn't hot.] [**Doesn't look** hot.] [**Seems like** it's not hot.]



The difference between these two sentences would be that ~なさそうです is based off observation of the item or trustworthy info. You might say it after looking at a bowl of soup that has no steam, or while staring out the window to judge the weather. The second is more based off reading what's going on. You might say it after seeing someone gobble down soup without any signs of pain, or talking about something you've heard from rumors. But both are interchangeable in many cases.

雨がふる。 雨がふる**そうです**。 雨がふり**そうです**。 雨がふる**みたいです**。  
 [It will rain.] [**They said** it'll rain.] [**Looks like** rain.] [**Seems like** it'll rain.]



パンダだった。 パンダだった**そうだ**。 パンダ**みたい**だった。  
 [It was a panda.] [**They're saying** it was a panda.] [**Looked like** a panda.]

LOOKED like a panda, but WAS NOT a panda.  
 パンダだったみたい would be "gossip says it's a panda"

#### Grammar Point 5.4: Hard/easy to [verb]

Since Grammar Point 5.3 was a bit long, let's move onto something that is a bit more おぼえやすい. To say that something is "easy to [verb]", just attach ~やすい to the verb's stem.

最近のスマホはとても**使い**やすいと思います。  
 [I think recent smart phones are very **easy to use**.]

手で食べられるから**食**べやすいね。  
 [It's **easy to eat** because you can eat it with your hands.]



Remember: a verb's stem is just it's ~ます form without ~ます

In contrast, to say that something is difficult to do, attach ~にくい to the verb's stem.

漢字は**おぼえ**にくいと思いますか。  
 [Do you think kanji are **difficult to memorize**?]

しんじさんによると、今**さがし**にくいそうです。  
 [According to Shinji, it seems like it's a bit **hard to search** now.]



May imply inconvenience for Shinji

In either case, the new construction becomes an い adjective and can modify nouns.

りょうりしたことがないので、もう少し**作り**やすいレシピを選んだほうがいいよ。  
 [You've never cooked before, so you should choose a bit **easier-to-make** recipe.]



This status as an い adjective also affects any further conjugation.

飲みにくくないけど飲みやすくもない。

[It's **not hard to drink**, but it's **not easy to drink** either.]

毎日れんしゅうしましたから、やりやすくなりました。

[I practiced every day, so it became **easier to do**.]

ページがぬれていたのでも読みにくかった。

[The pages were soaked so it **was hard to read**.]



Generally speaking, both ~やすい and ~にくい imply a mental or personal limit rather than a objective, broad, and/or physical one. For the later cases, it is better to use constructions like ~[verb]のが[easy/hard]. However, in some cases both forms do overlap.

オタクのグッズは買いにくい。

[It's **hard to buy** otaku stuff (implication: because its embarrassing).]

オタクのグッズを買うのがむずかしい。

[It's hard to buy otaku stuff (implication: due to low stock or similar external limit).]

このベッドは寝やすい。

[This bed is **easy to sleep in** (for me, personally, it helps me go to sleep quickly).]

このベッドで寝るのが大変だ。

[This bed is hard to sleep in (for everyone, because its made of rocks or something).]



### Grammar Point 5.5: Three big ifs

Our final grammar point for this chapter compares distinct ways of saying “if”. The first is the “generic if”, which is usable in most (but not all!) situations. To create this form add ~ら to the **plain past** form of nouns, adjectives, and/or verbs, making ~たら or ~だら.

行ったら

(If [someone] goes)

泳いだら

(If [someone] swims)

作ったら

(If [someone] makes)

暑かったら

(If it's hot)

先生だったら

(If [they are] a teacher)

しずかだったら

(If it's quiet)





The most straightforward use of the ~たら form is to express that *if* the first half of the statement is/becomes true, the second half will (or will probably) occur/also be true.

少し寝たら気持ちよくなると思います。

[I think I'll feel better **if I sleep** for a bit.]

暑かったら、エアコンをつけたほうがいい。

[**If it's/you're hot**, it's best to turn on the AC.]

日本人だったら、きつとなつとうが好きだ。

[**If they are Japanese**, surely they like natto.]

ひまだったら明日買い物をしに行こうよ。

[**If I'm/your/we're free** let's go shopping tomorrow.]

私たちがつきあったら、ディズニーランドまでつれて行ってくれる？

[**If we were dating**, would you take me to Disneyland?]

~たら is can be followed by どうする to mean "what would [人] do if?"

For instance:

かぜをひいたらどうする？

[What will you do if you catch a cold?]

来なかったらどうしましょうか？

[What shall we do if they don't come?]



However, one major conditional of ~たら is that the second half of the sentence must occur *after* the first half. You may not state "If A, then B *would have* happened" via ~たら.

明日雨がふったら、予定をキャンセルしないといけない。

[**If it will rain** tomorrow, we'll have to cancel our plans.]

明日雨がふったら、今夜かさをじゅんびしておいたほうがいい。

[**If it will rain** tomorrow, we should prepare umbrellas **this evening and also review our Japanese grammar because this sentence is wrong**.]

If you want to say the second sentence, you need to use a different if/phrasing, because preparing the umbrellas happens *before* it rains.



When the first condition is *very* likely to occur, ~たら can also function like "when". In contrast, when the second half of this kind of sentence is in the past tense, ~たら implies "when" along with some amount of surprise or shock.

日本に帰ったらすぐれんらくするね。

[**When I get home** to Japan, I'll contact you immediately.]

へやに入ったらベッドにぶたがいました。

[**When I entered** my room, **there was a pig on the bed (unexpected)**!]

The first sentence could be "if" in a different context, such as if said by someone who doesn't know if/when they'll ever return.



The second form of “if” is created by attaching と to a word’s **plain present** form to indicate that if the first condition is met, the second will *absolutely* occur. This form is mostly attached to verbs, but can be attached to other word types too when it makes sense.

このボタンをおすと、ドアがあく。

[If you push this button, the doors open.]

As you can see, this “if” is commonly used with cause-and-effect changes in state. It can therefore translate as “when” in some cases.

寒いと is also  
okay here!

寒くなると、温かいスープを食べたくなる。

[When it gets cold, I inevitably start wanting to eat hot soup.]

仕事をしないとお金がなくなるよ。

[If you don’t work, your money will for sure disappear.]

This form can also be used to warn/caution people about “certain” results.

大学の先生だと、とてもいそがしいです。

[If they are a university teacher, they’ll certainly be very busy.]

Remember: the form that connects to ~と is always in the **plain present**, even if the rest of the sentence is in a different tense.

小学生の時、夏になるとかぞくでりょこうしました。

[In elementary school, whenever it became summer we’d go on a trip as a family.]

Compared to other Japanese “if”s, ~と is the most restricted by far. Do not use it for habits, hypotheticals, or any other “if” forms that do not stress “If A then B *absolutely* occurs”.

Our final way of saying “if” is then なら, which attaches directly to **plain** forms but without だ. This version stresses that the first part of the sentence is a (hypothetical) condition. It is also the only “if” where what happens first can come *after* the word “if” (see final example).

かれが行くなら私は行かない。

[If he goes, I won’t.]

There are many cases where ~たら, ~と, and/or ~なら are interchangeable with only minor differences in nuance. If you are unsure, default to ~たら.

車の話なら、みちこさんと話したほうがいいです。車がよく分かります。

[If it’s a discussion about cars, talk to Michiko. She’s really good with cars.]

日本に行くならふねで行こう。

[If we go to Japan, let’s go by boat]

なら can also attach to nouns to focus the conversation on that noun. As in ひらがななら読めます for “I can read, if it’s hiragana.” This can work like “When it comes to”.

Since we would get on a boat *before* going to Japan, 行ったら doesn’t work here.

# CHAPTER 5 KANJI ・ かんじ

This week, we will learn 18 kanji, focusing on kanji relating to temperature & weather.

|   |             |                                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 体 | Meaning     | Body                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | からだ                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | たい                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>からだ<br/>体</div> <div>たいおん<br/>体温</div> <div>だいたい<br/>大体</div> <div>たいじゅう<br/>体重 (body weight)</div>        |
| 空 | Meaning     | Sky, Open, Empty                                                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    | そら・から                                                                                                           |
|   | On yomi     | くう                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>そら<br/>空</div> <div>から はこ<br/>空の箱</div> <div>くうこう<br/>空港 (airport)</div> <div>あおぞら<br/>青空 (blue sky)</div> |
| 予 | Meaning     | Previous                                                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    | あらかじめ (め)                                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | よ                                                                                                               |
|   | Sample uses | <div>よてい<br/>予定</div> <div>てんきよほう<br/>天気予報</div>                                                                |
| 報 | Meaning     | Reward, report                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | もく (いる)                                                                                                         |
|   | On yomi     | ほう                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>じょうほう<br/>情報</div> <div>てんきよほう<br/>天気予報</div>                                                              |
| 落 | Meaning     | Fall                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | お (ちる) ・ お (とす)                                                                                                 |
|   | On yomi     | らく                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>お<br/>落とす</div> <div>お<br/>落ちる</div> <div>お っ<br/>落ち着く</div>                                               |





|   |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 変 | Meaning     | Change                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | か（わる）・か（える）                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | へん                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>か</small><br/>変わる         </div> <div> <small>へんか</small><br/>変化         </div> <div> <small>か</small><br/>変える         </div> <div> <small>たいへん</small><br/>大変な         </div>       |
| 決 | Meaning     | Decide                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | き（める）・き（まる）                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | てい                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>き</small><br/>決める         </div> <div> <small>かくてい</small><br/>確定         </div> <div> <small>き</small><br/>決まる         </div> <div> <small>けつてい</small><br/>決定         </div>       |
| 季 | Meaning     | Season                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|   | On yomi     | き                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>き せつ</small><br/>季節         </div>                                                                                                                                                   |
| 節 | Meaning     | Joint, verse, period, melody                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Kun yomi    | ふし                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | On yomi     | せつ・せち                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>き せつ</small><br/>季節         </div>                                                                                                                                                   |
| 温 | Meaning     | Warm                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | Kun yomi    | あたた（かい）・あたた（まる・める）                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | On yomi     | おん                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>あたた</small><br/>温 かい         </div> <div> <small>たいおん</small><br/>体温         </div> <div> <small>あたた</small><br/>温 める         </div> <div> <small>おん ど</small><br/>温度         </div> |

温かい is the “general”  
kanji for “warm”.

暖かい is more  
specifically for climate

暖

Meaning Warm

Kun yomi あたた (かい) ・ あたた (める・まる)

On yomi だん

Sample  
uses

あたた

暖かい

のれん

暖簾 (store curtain)

ちきゅうおんだんか

地球温暖化

(global warming)

寒

Meaning Cold

Kun yomi さむ (い)

On yomi かん

Sample  
uses

さむ

寒い

悪寒 (a chill)

冷

Meaning Cool

Kun yomi つめ (たい) ・ ひ (やす) ・ ひ (える)

On yomi れい

Sample  
uses

つめ

冷たい

れいぞうこ

冷蔵庫

ひ

冷やす

ひ

冷える

暑

Meaning Hot

Kun yomi あつ (い)

On yomi しよ

Sample  
uses

あつ

暑い

む

蒸し暑い

ざんしよ

残暑

(lingering summer heat)

熱

Meaning Hot, fever

Kun yomi あつ (い)

On yomi ねつ

Sample  
uses

あつ

熱い

ねつ

熱

暑い is preferred for  
climate, working like  
the opposite of 寒い  
while 熱い is more for  
“heat”, working like  
the opposite of 冷たい

|   |                 |                                                 |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 厚 | Meaning         | Thick                                           |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | あつ (い)                                          |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | こう                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | あつ 厚い<br>のうこう 濃厚 (thick)                        |
| 窓 | Meaning         | Window                                          |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | まど                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | そう                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | まど 窓<br>どうそうせい 同窓生<br>(alumni of the same year) |
| 黒 | Meaning         | Black                                           |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | くろ・くろ (い)                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | こく                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | くろ 黒い<br>こくじん 黒人<br>くろばん 黒板 (blackboard)        |



CHAPTER 5 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 5

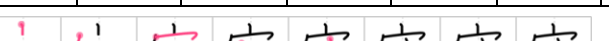
### Exercise 5.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

## 1. 体

|              |   |   |                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 体            | 体 | 体 |                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 2. 空

|              |   |   |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 空            | 空 | 空 |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 3. 予

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 予            | 予 | 予 |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 4. 報

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 報            | 報 | 報 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 土 | 去 | 去 | 立 | 幸 | 幸 | 報 | 報 | 報 |  |

## 5. 落

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 落            | 落 | 落 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

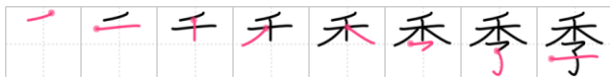
## 6. 変

[illegible]

## 7. 決

|              |   |   |                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 決            | 決 | 決 |                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

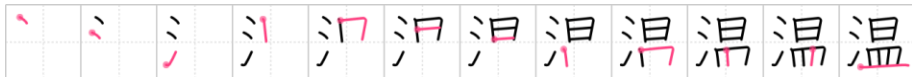
## 8. 季

|              |   |   |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 季            | 季 | 季 |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 9. 節

|              |   |   |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 節            | 節 | 節 |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

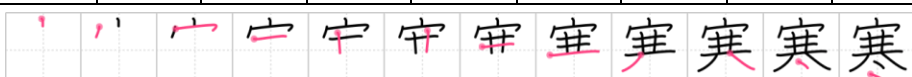
## 10. 溫

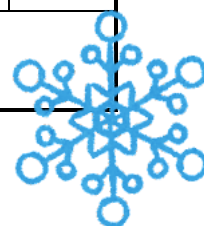
|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 溫            | 溫 | 溫 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 11. 暖

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 暖            | 暖 | 暖 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 12. 寒

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 寒            | 寒 | 寒 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



### 13. 冷

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 冷            | 冷 | 冷 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 | 丶 |

### 14. 暑

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 暑            | 暑 | 暑 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 日 | 日 | 早 | 早 | 早 | 早 | 早 | 早 |

### 15. 熱

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 熱            | 熱 | 熱 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 土 | 去 | 去 | 去 | 去 | 去 | 去 | 去 |

### 16. 厚

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 厚            | 厚 | 厚 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 厂 | 厂 | 厂 | 厂 | 厂 | 厂 | 厂 | 厂 | 厂 | 厂 |

### 17. 窓

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 窓            | 窓 | 窓 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 | 丨 |

### 18. 黒

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 黒            | 黒 | 黒 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 日 | 甲 | 甲 | 里 | 里 | 里 | 里 | 里 |



## Exercise 5.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. あついスープをゆかにおとしたことがありますか。



Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. てんきよほうによると、あしたはとてもさむくなるそうです。



Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. ちょっとたいへんで、わかりにくかったみたいだ。



Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. くろいまどがあいているならしめてください。そとはあついですから。



Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. からだをはやくあたためたほうがいい。シャワーをあびたらどう？



Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. ふゆになると、かぜがつめたくなって、ゆきがそらからふります。



Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. そのあついジャケットをかうことをきめたそうだ。まだたかさすぎるとおもうけど。



Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_



Fill in the blanks to report the gossip from Michiko (left) and Ichiro (right).

1. \_\_\_\_\_、たけしさんは\_\_\_\_\_に\_\_\_\_\_そうです。
2. \_\_\_\_\_、しまこさんはきのう\_\_\_\_\_ひょう\_\_\_\_\_。
3. \_\_\_\_\_、ありなさんは\_\_\_\_\_。
4. \_\_\_\_\_が\_\_\_\_\_。
5. \_\_\_\_\_、明日は\_\_\_\_\_そうです。
6. \_\_\_\_\_、えみさんは\_\_\_\_\_で  
ラーメン\_\_\_\_\_。
7. \_\_\_\_\_、あべさんは\_\_\_\_\_がありますが  
ほうが\_\_\_\_\_そうです。

Change each word into its various translations by adding **nothing other than** conjugation and そう・みたい (as appropriate)

1. だいじょうぶ \_\_\_\_\_ (I heard it's fine)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Seems fine to my eyes)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (I suppose this means it was fine)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (I heard it was okay)
2. もえ \_\_\_\_\_ (Word is that it burnt)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Doesn't look like it will burn)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (They said it was easy to burn)



3. ゆき \_\_\_\_\_ (Evidence indicates it snowed)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (They said it snowed)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Looks like it's going to snow)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Looked like it was going to snow)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (It's like snow (but it isn't)!)

4. さむ \_\_\_\_\_ (Word is that it's cold)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Word is that it was cold)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Looks cold)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Looked cold)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Apparently it's cold)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (A cold-looking apartment)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (It's like a cold-looking apartment)



5. 先生 \_\_\_\_\_ (They are a teacher, apparently)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (They remind me of a teacher)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (They don't look to be a teacher)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (Seems like it wasn't a teacher actually)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (They said it wasn't a teacher)

### Exercise 5.5

Match the sentences on the left and the right to create constructions that make sense.

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. こどもにとって       | A. 飲みにくくなった。      |
| 2. 字がとても小さいので    | B. 肉が食べにくいです。     |
| 3. もう二十年間勉強したので、 | C. つぎの日に起きにくくなるね。 |
| 4. お酒をたくさん飲むと    | D. 漢字が読みやすいです。    |
| 5. コーヒーが冷えたので    | E. 読みにくい。         |

- 
- |                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. ここに学生がたくさんひっこしたので | A. かたい肉も切りやすいよ。   |
| 2. いけんがだいてい同じだから     | B. あまり使いやすくないんです。 |
| 3. このナイフを使ったら、       | C. せんたくがやりにくくなった。 |
| 4. とても高かったのに         | D. 聞こえやすくなる。      |
| 5. ボリュームを上げると        | E. よいアパートがみつけにくい。 |
| 6. せんたっきがこわれたら       | F. 私にとって話しやすい人    |



## Exercise 5.6

Select the *best* “if” form in each blank.

1. 何も食べな (いと・ないなら・なかったら) しぬよ。
2. お風呂に入 (いると・いるなら・はいたら) 魚がいました。
3. 冬にな (ると・なるなら・なったら) 寒くなる。
4. 来週行 (くと・くなら・ったら) 今週じゅうびをしておいたほうがいいです。
5. かれが来 (ると・るなら・たら) 私は帰る。
6. あやま (ると・るなら・ったら) だいじょうぶだ。
7. 日本語の先生 (だと・なら・だったら) 日本語が読めるはずだ。
8. お酒の話 (だと・なら・だったら) 私はきょうみがぜんぜんありません。
9. かのじょがほんとうに買った (いと・いなら・かったら) もう買ったと思う。
10. 私はいつもビールを飲 (むと・むなら・んだら) ねむくなります。



## Exercise 5.7

Translate the English in Japanese.

1. Has baseball-like hail ever fallen here?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. According to Mio, you can hang your wet scarf outside tonight. It won't freeze.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. It looks cool (=temperature), but apparently it's already warm.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. This kanji is easy to read but hard to write.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. If I go to Japan, what do I need to do first?  
\_\_\_\_\_



# CHAPTER 5 WORKBOOK ANSWER KEY • 解答集 5

## Exercise 5.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

### 1. 体

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 体            | 体 | 体 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | 丨 | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 休 | 休 |

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

### 2. 空

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 空            | 空 | 空 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 丶 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 空 | 空 |

### 3. 予

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| 予            | 予 | 予 |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | 予 |  |  |  |  |  |

### 4. 報

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 報            | 報 | 報 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | + | 土 | 土 | 土 | 土 | 幸 | 幸 | 報 |

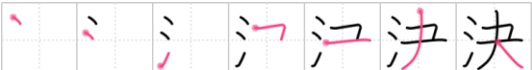
### 5. 落

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 落            | 落 | 落 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 一 | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | 落 | 落 | 落 |

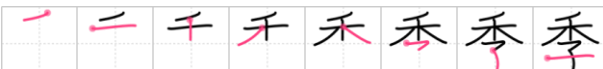
### 6. 変

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 変            | 変 | 変 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 一 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 変 | 変 |

## 7. 決

|              |   |   |                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 決            | 決 | 決 |                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

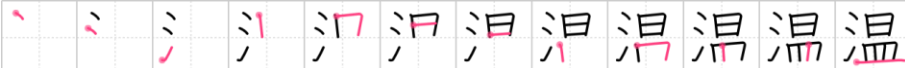
## 8. 季

|              |   |   |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 季            | 季 | 季 |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 9. 節

|              |   |   |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 節            | 節 | 節 |                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

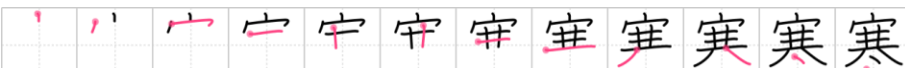
## 10. 溫

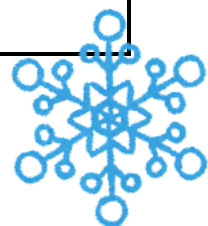
|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 溫            | 溫 | 溫 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 11. 暖

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 暖            | 暖 | 暖 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 12. 寒

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 寒            | 寒 | 寒 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



### 13. 冷

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 冷            | 冷 | 冷 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 丿 | ノ | 人 | 冫 | 冫 | 冷 | 冷 |  |  |

### 14. 暑

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 暑            | 暑 | 暑 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冫 | 冫 | 日 | 日 | 早 | 里 | 里 | 暑 | 暑 |

### 15. 熱

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 熱            | 熱 | 熱 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | + | 土 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 |

### 16. 厚

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 厚            | 厚 | 厚 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 厂 | 厂 | 厶 | 厶 | 厶 | 厶 | 厚 | 厚 | 厚 |

### 17. 窓

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 窓            | 窓 | 窓 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 丶 | 冫 | 冫 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 窓 | 窓 | 窓 |

### 18. 黒

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 黒            | 黒 | 黒 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冫 | 冫 | 日 | 甲 | 里 | 里 | 黒 | 黒 | 黒 |



## Exercise 5.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined part.

Because 暑い refers to climate/weather, it doesn't work for soup.

1. あついスープをゆかにおとしたことがあります



Rewrite: 熱いスープをゆかに落としたことがありますか。

Translate: Have you ever dropped hot soup on the floor?

2. てんきよほうによると、あしたはとてもさむくなるそうです。



Rewrite: 天気予報によると、明日はとても寒くなるそうです。

Translate: According to the weather report, it will be very cold tomorrow.

3. ちょっとたいへんで、わかりにくかったみたいだ。



Rewrite: ちょっと大変で分かりにくかったみたいだ。

Translate: Seems like it was a little troublesome & hard to understand.

4. くろいまどがあいているならしめてください。そとはあついですから。



Rewrite: 黒い窓があいているならしめてください。外は暑いですから。

Translate: If the black window is open, please close it. Because it's hot out.

5. からだをはやくあたためたほうがいい。シャワーを

暖める is for weather/room temp, not bodies/items/things etc.



Rewrite: 体をはやく温めたほうがいい。シャワーをあびたらどう？

Translate: You should warm your body fast. How about a shower?

6. ふゆになると、かぜがつめたくなって、ゆきがそらからふります。



Rewrite: 冬になると、かぜが冷たくなって、雪が空からふります。

Translate: When it becomes winter, the wind gets cold and snow falls from the sky.

7. そのあついジャケットをかうことをきめたそうさ。まだたかすぎるとおもうけど。

Rewrite: その厚いジャケットを買うことを決めたそうさ。まだ高すぎると思うけど。

Translate: Seems like they decided on buying that thick jacket. I still think it's too expensive but...



### Exercise 5.3

Fill in the blanks to report the gossip from Michiko (left) and Ichiro (right).

|                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>みちこ | Takeshi has been to France. Shimako had never seen hail until yesterday.<br>Arina is a tourist. Nobuyuki liked Takeshi.                          | <br>いちろう |
|                                                                                          | Tomorrow, it will rain. Emi has never heated up ramen in a microwave.<br>Abe has dried his clothes in a drier, but prefers hanging them outside. |                                                                                             |

1. みちこさんによると、たけしさんは フランス に 行ったことがある そうです。
2. みちこさんによると、しまこさんはきのう まで・の前に ひょう を見たことがなかったそうです。
3. みちこさんによると、ありなさんは かんこうきやくだそうです。
4. みちこさんによると、のぶゆきさんはたけしさん が すきだったそうです。
5. いちろさんによると、明日は 雨がふる そうです。
6. いちろさんによると、えみさんは 電子レンジ で  
ラーメン を温めたことがないそうです。
7. いちろさんによると、あべさんは かんそうきでふくをかわした こと が ありますが  
外でほした ほうが好きだ そうです。

### Exercise 5.4

Change each word into its various translation and そう・みたい (as appropriate)

I've done my best here to use English in a way that makes "hearsay" そうです and "vibes" みたいです reporting distinct but if there are parts that you found confusing, I'm sorry. It's hard.

- |           |                    |                                    |
|-----------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. だいじょうぶ | <u>だそうです。</u>      | (I heard it's fine)                |
|           | <u>そうです。</u>       | (Seems fine to my eyes)            |
|           | <u>だったみたい。</u>     | (I suppose this means it was fine) |
|           | <u>だったそうです。</u>    | (I heard it was okay)              |
| 2. もえ     | <u>たそうです。</u>      | (Word is that it burnt)            |
|           | <u>(られ)なさそうです。</u> | (Doesn't look like it will burn)   |
|           | <u>やすいそうです。</u>    | (They said it was easy to burn)    |



If you used ~られ for "can't" that's okay.



3. ゆき がふったみたいです。 (Evidence indicates it snowed)  
がふったそうです。 (They said it snowed)  
がふりそうです。 (Looks like it's going to snow)  
がふりそうでした。 (Looked like it was going to snow)  
みたいです。 (It's like snow (but it isn't)!)

4. さむ いそうです。 (Word is that it's cold)  
かったそうです。 (Word is that it was cold)  
そうです。 (Looks cold)  
そうでした。 (Looked cold)  
みたいです。 (Apparently it's cold)  
そうなアパートです。 (A cold-looking apartment)  
そうなアパートみたいです。 (It's like a cold-looking apartment)



5. 先生 だそうです。 (They are a teacher, apparently)  
みたいです。 (They remind me of a teacher)  
じゃなさそうです。 (They don't look to be a teacher)  
じゃなかったみたいです。 (Seems like it wasn't a teacher actually)  
じゃなかったそうです。 (They said it wasn't a teacher)

### Exercise 5.5

Match the sentences on the left and the right to create constructions that make sense.

1. こどもにとって  A. 飲みにくくなった。  
2. 字がとても小さいので  B. 肉が食べにくいです。  
3. もう二十年間勉強したので、  C. つぎの日に起きにくくなるね。  
4. お酒をたくさん飲むと  D. 漢字が読みやすいです。  
5. コーヒーが冷えたので  E. 読みにくい。

1. ここに学生がたくさんひっこしたので  A. かたい肉も切りやすいよ。  
2. いけんがだいてい同じだから  B. あまり使いやすくないんです。  
3. このナイフを使ったら、  C. せんたくがやりにくくなった。  
4. とても高かったのに  D. 聞こえやすくなる。  
5. ボリュームを上げると  E. よいアパートがみつけにくい。  
6. せんたつきがこわれたら  F. 私にとって話しやすい人

## Exercise 5.6

Select the *best* “if” form in each blank.

- 何も食べな (いと・ないなら・なかったら) しぬよ。
- お風呂に入 (いると・いるなら・はいったら) 魚がいました。
- 冬にな (ると・なるなら・なったら) 寒くなる。
- 来週行 (くと・くなら・ったら) 今週じゅうびをしておいたほうがいいです。
- かれが来 (ると・るなら・たら) 私は帰る。
- あやま (ると・るなら・ったら) だいじょうぶだ。
- 日本語の先生 (だと・なら・だったら) 日本語が読めるはずだ。
- お酒の話 (だと・なら・だったら) 私はきょうみがぜんぜんありません。
- かのじょがほんとうに買った (いと・いなら・かったら) もう買ったと思う。
- 私はいつもビールを飲 (むと・むなら・んだら) ねむくなります。

~たら can be used for most of these, but it's not always the *best*. For some, like #4/#8 though, you can't use ~たら.

## Exercise 5.7

Translate the English in Japanese.

- Has baseball-like hail ever fallen here?

ここにやきゅうのボールみたいなひょうはふったことがある？

- According to Mio, you can hang your wet scarf outside tonight. It won't freeze.

みおさんによると、ぬれているマフラーを外でほしてもいいそうだ。こおらない(そうだ)。

- It looks cool (=temperature), but apparently it's already warm.

すずしそうだが、もうあたたかいみたい。

- This kanji is easy to read but hard to write.

この漢字は読みやすいが書きにくい。

- If I go to Japan, what do I need to do first?

日本に行くなら、最初に何をしたらいい？



## CHAPTER SIX ・ 第六章

### VOCABULARY ・ ごい

#### Nouns

|             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| いるか         | dolphin           |
| えさ          | food for animals  |
| おとな<br>大人   | adult             |
| おす          | male animal       |
| か           | mosquito          |
| が           | moth              |
| けだもの        | beast             |
| くじら         | whale             |
| くま          | bear              |
| ことば         | word              |
| きつね         | fox               |
| きりん         | giraffe           |
| さい          | rhinoceros        |
| さる          | monkey            |
| しか          | deer              |
| しゅっちょう      | business trip     |
| じゅうい        | veterinarian      |
| せいかく        | personality       |
| せいそくち       | habitat           |
| ぞう          | elephant          |
| たいじゅう<br>体重 | body weight       |
| ちず          | map               |
| とうくつ        | cave              |
| みずうみ        | lake              |
| めす          | female animal     |
| りょうし        | person who fishes |

#### Compound Verbs

|        |                 |
|--------|-----------------|
| とうみんする | to hibernate    |
| ひるねをする | to nap          |
| びっくりする | to be surprised |

#### う Verbs

|      |                                     |
|------|-------------------------------------|
| うごく  | to move [int.]                      |
| かう   | to keep as a pet                    |
| かく   | to scratch                          |
| かじる  | to nibble                           |
| かむ   | to bite                             |
| かる   | to hunt                             |
| くばる  | to hand out                         |
| なく   | to cry                              |
| なく   | (an animal) sings, howls, cries out |
| たたく  | to hit, to knock                    |
| つかまる | to be caught [int.]                 |
| つる   | to (catch) fish                     |
| とぶ   | to fly, to jump                     |
| ゆるす  | to forgive                          |

While spelled the same, each **なく** has different kanji:  
泣く vs 鳴く

#### る Verbs

|         |                     |
|---------|---------------------|
| [Xに]あきる | to get bored with X |
| つかまえる   | to catch [tra.]     |
| なでる     | to pet, to stroke   |
| なめる     | to lick             |

#### Adverbs

|        |                     |
|--------|---------------------|
| すぐに    | immediately, ASAP   |
| ちよくせつに | directly            |
| ほかの    | an other            |
| ほんとうに  | really, truly       |
| 好きなだけで | as much as you want |

#### い Adjectives

|        |                    |
|--------|--------------------|
| けぶかい   | hairy              |
| ひとなつこい | friendly, sociable |



## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 6.1: Two versions of “only”

In Japanese, there are two ways to say “only”. The first is **だけ**. This is the most “general” version, as it has no extra implied meanings. However, it does have a bunch of useful applications with minor grammatical differences.

In the “XはYです” pattern, **だけ** follows a noun used for Y to mean “only Y”.

ばんご飯はこれ**だけ**ですか。  
[Is this **all** that’s for dinner?]

「あ、びっくりした！」 「ごめん！わたし**だけ**だった。」  
[“I was so frightened!” “Ah, sorry! It was **only** me.”]



This [Noun]**だけ** form can also be used as an entire noun phrase that can be marked with particles in relative clauses, or attached to other nouns via **の** as a modifier.

一週間**だけ**の休みは足りません。  
[A vacation that’s **only** one-week-long just isn’t enough.]

私**だけ**が使える車が欲しい。  
[I want a car **only** I can use.]

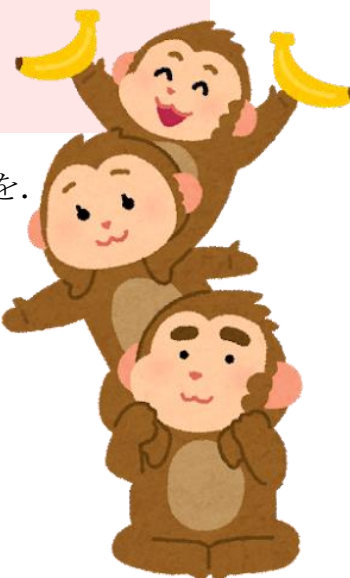


Outside of the XはYです pattern, **だけ** can either go in front of *or* replace the particle **を** in sentences using a non-copular verb (i.e., a verb other than **です**) at the end.

え？今日はおかし**だけ**食べたの？  
[What? You ate **only** candy today?]

自分のビール**だけ**買ったらいじょうぶだと思う。もういっぱいあるから。  
[I think it will be fine if you **just** buy your beer **only**. ‘Cuz we have a lot already.]

ボール**だけ**をなげてください。  
[Throw **only** the ball please.]



When using a counter, **だけ** follows the counter rather than replaces **を**.

カラオケでうたを二つ**だけ**うたいました。  
[I sang **only** two songs at karaoke.]

どうぶつえんにさるが三びき**だけ**いました。  
[There were **only** three monkeys at the zoo.]

だけ can also replace or combine with は・が, although usually は changes to だけが.

私**だけが**日本に行った。  
[**Only** I went to Japan.]

家に入ったら、姉**だけ**いなかった。ほかの人がみんないた。  
[When I went inside, **only** my older sister was gone. Everyone else was there.]

五百円**だけが**ほしい。  
[I want **just** 500 yen.]

だけ can also appear at the end of plain form sentences to stress that something isn't a big deal or is quite limited. For instance, 五百円がほしい**だけ** would stress that your need, in your mind, isn't that huge. We won't tackle this grammar point until X.X, but the basics are quite easy to understand.

And だけ combines with に, で, and と to create だけに, だけで, and だけと.

「今日ぎんこうに行った？」 「ううん、時間がなくて、スーパー**だけに**行った。」  
[“Did you go to the bank today?” “Nah, I had no time and went **to** the market **only**.”]

これはとくべつな店**だけで**買えるバージョンです。  
[This is a version that you can buy **at** special stores **only**.]

五人で行くつもりだったが、まりさん**だけと**行くことになった。  
[We planned to go as 5, but I ended up going **with just** Mari.]



Finally, we can also add だけで to the end of a verb phrase ending in the **plain positive present** form to mean “just by doing [verb]”.

これを買う**だけで**、あなたの人生がとても楽になりますよ！  
[**Just by** buying this, your life will become very carefree!]

きのう、二つのビールを飲む**だけで**よった。弱くなったかも。  
[Yesterday, I got drunk after **only** drinking two beers. Maybe I've lost tolerance.]

一かいやってみる**だけで**人生が変わるよ。  
[**Just by** trying it once, your life will change.]

ゲームをやるのが一番楽しいけど、見る**だけでも**楽しい。  
[Playing games is the most fun, but **just** watching is fun as well.]

Using a plain form verb before だけ to create a noun phrase is also fine! For example:

およいだ**だけ**だと思ふ

means “I think they **only** swam”.



The second version of “only” uses the word しか. This version of “only” often has a negative meaning. It is used in complaints, and/or to stress that something is less than desired or ideal. Unlike だけ, しか is not used before です. Instead, it *replaces* を, が, and は, and **must** be used with a negative ending... but this doesn’t create a negative meaning.

To show how this works, let’s contrast sentences using だけ and しか. In terms of literal meaning, the sentences are more or less the same despite their constraining conjugations. But しか always expresses a more negative feel.

一万円 **だけ** あげる。

一万円 **しか** あげ **ない**。

[I’ll **only** give you 10,000 yen (neutral).] [I’ll give you 10,000 yen **and that’s IT**.]

としょかん **だけ** あった。

としょかん **しか** なかった。

[There **only** was a library (neutral).] [There **only** was a library **unfortunately**.]

知らない人 **だけ** いた。

知らない人 **しか** い **なかった**。

[I didn’t know anyone there (neutral).] [Only strangers were there (awkward).]

Both are more literally “Only people I didn’t know were there”

As you can see, the negative ending of the ~しか form doesn’t create a double negative. Like ~あまり or ~ぜんぜん, it’s just required as part of how Japanese works. As a result ~だけない and ~しかない are very different, and there is no “don’t” form of しか. See below.

私 **だけ** が好き **じゃない**。

私 **しか** 好き **じゃない**。」

[I’m the **only** one they **don’t** like.]

[They **only** like me (complaint).]

The しか “only” can also be used with に, で, and と. However, opposite of だけ, these particles come **before** しか, creating にしか, でしか, and としか.

一つのお寺 **にしか** 行けなかった。

[I could **only** go **to** one temple (but I wanted to go to more).]

自分の部屋 **でしか** 勉強できない。

[I/they can **only** study **in** my/their room **which is frustrating**.]

マイクさん **としか** 話さなかったのでつまらなかった。

[I **only** talked **with** Mike so it was really boring **as I wanted to chat with others too**.]

This second sentence could also be “Only I like it”, as we don’t know if は or が is replaced by しか. By adding dropped elements though, we can make things clear. かれらは私しか好きじゃない would be 100% “They only like me (and this is bad for some reason)”



## Grammar Point 6.2: Using ~てから for “right after”

The ~てから form is in many cases synonymous with the ~た後で form, in that ~てから shows that what follows a verb will happen **after** the action ~てから is connected to. In many cases, both forms are fairly interchangeable.

そつぎょうし **てから** 日本へひっこした。

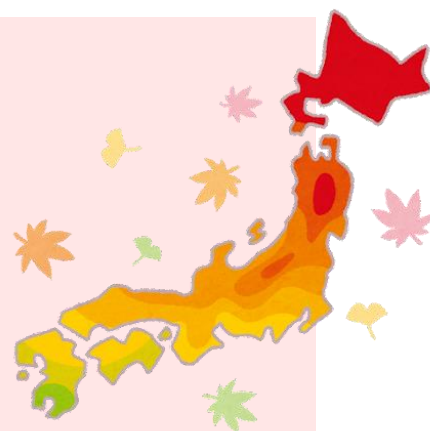
そつぎょうし **た後で** 日本へひっこした。

[**After** I graduated, I moved to Japan.]

おゆをわかし **た後で** ストーブをつけてください。

おゆをわかし **てから** ストーブをつけてください。

[Please turn on the stove **after** you boil the water.]



However, compared to ~た後で, ~てから implies a sense of immediacy. While the two forms can both express that something happened soon after something else, ~てから *always* has this feel to it and therefore is not appropriate when there is a long time gap. So if we were to forcibly separate the two, it might look something like this:

そつぎょうし **てから** 日本へひっこした。

[**After** I graduated, I went to Japan **in a pretty short time frame**.]

Again, I am forcibly separating the two here. There are contexts where their meanings are identical.

そつぎょうし **た後で** 日本へひっこした。

[I went to Japan **after** I graduated, **but there may have been years inbetween, you can't be sure without further context, all you know is that I graduated first**.]

食べて **てから** おさをあらおう。

[**After** eating, let's wash the dishes **as the next major thing we do**.]

食べた **た後で** おさをあらおう。

[Let's wash the dishes **after** eating, **rather than the other way around, but no hurry**.]



As a result, this next sentence would be inappropriate if you got home at 5 and then went to bed around 10 or 11. There is an implication you slept soon after which ~た後で lacks.

ごぜん五時にサッカーしあいから帰っ **てから** 寝た。

[**After** I got home from the soccer match at 5 AM I went to bed (quickly).]



~てから can also mean “since [verb] happened”, which we will discuss in **GP 11.10**.

### Grammar Point 6.3: Simultaneous actions (~ながら、あいだ、and ついでに)

Up until now, we've used the ~ている時に form to say that someone does two things at a similar time. For instance, if someone was eating while watching TV we might say..

彼はテレビを **見ている時に** 食べていた。

[He was eating **when he was watching** TV.]



There's nothing wrong with this phrasing, but the ~ながら verb suffix allows us to stress that two actions are simultaneous, rather than just that one occurs at some point within the time frame the other does.

To use ~ながら, simply attach it to the stem of a verb. To review, the stem of a verb is the verb's positive polite form without ~ます.



#### dictionary form

たべる

→

#### polite form

たべます

→

#### stem

たべ

のむ

→

のみます

→

のみ

する

→

します

→

し



Once ~ながら is attached to a verb, it produces the meaning of “while [verb]ing” or “at the same time as [doing verb]”. The thing that comes after ~ながら is done while the first verb is being enacted/occurring, and is the main focus of the sentence.

彼は料理をし **ながら** 音楽を聞くのが大好きみたいです。

[It seems he loves listening to music **while** cooking.]

勉強し **ながら** スマホでゲームをすべきではない。

[You shouldn't play games on your phone **while** studying.]

とり can also  
さえずる, or  
“chirp”.

鳥はとび **ながら** ないたりするの？

[Do birds sing and stuff like that **while** they fly?]



There are two small caveats to using ~ながら. First, the same person must do both actions. So we can use ~ながら to say “He was eating while watching TV” like above. But the sentence on the next page could not be created using ~ながら:



彼がテレビを見ている時に私は食べていた。

[While he was watching TV I was eating.]



あいだ

The position noun 間 can be used instead of 時 for a similar purpose though. There's often no real difference, except that 時 emphasizes time while 間 emphasizes an interim period.



あかちゃんが寝ている間にちょっと休もうよ。

[Let's take a bit of a rest while the baby is sleeping.]

This sentence involves different actors on each side!

Secondly, if two things don't happen exactly at the same time, but rather one occurs inside the other (often as a side task or even detour), we have to use ついでに instead. By attaching ついでに to a **plain positive present** verb (directly) or a noun (via +の) that refers to an activity, you indicate "while this action is occurring **but** before it finishes". Opposite to ~ながら, the main action therefore occurs in front of ~ついでに.

帰るついでにまきこさんの新しい家を見に行った。

[On the way home, I went to look at Makiko's new house.]

買い物のついでにこの本をとしょかんにかえしてくれない？

[While you're out shopping, won't you return this book to the library for me?]



As you can see, like with ~ながら the doer of the verb marked by ~ついでに also has to do the verb that comes after. The verbs aren't done at the same time, however, as rather one is accomplished during the other (often disrupting the other briefly). Let's compare:

大学に行きながらふくしゅうする学生はえらいね。

[Students who review while on their way to uni are amazing, don't you think?]

大学に行くついでにきつさてんに入ったけど、時間がかかりすぎたのでおくれた。

[On the way to uni I went inside a cafe, but because it took too long I was late.]



We can also use ついでに at the start of a sentence in some contexts, as below:

明日、となりのまちまで行くよね？ついでにこれを父の家に持って行ける？

[Tomorrow you're going to the next town right? While you're at it, could you take this to my dad's place (implied to be on the way or in that town)?]

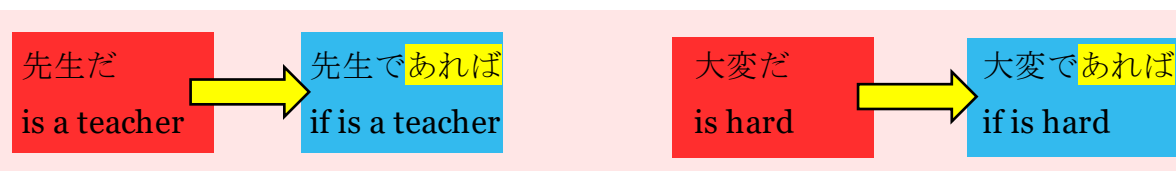


## Grammar Point 6.4: ~ば and related “if” forms

In **Chapter 5.5**, we learned a number of ways to say “if”. The ~ば form is yet another “if”, with its own implications. More importantly though, like the ~て form it serves as the basis for a number of grammar patterns. We actually learned one of these back in **Chapter 1.3**!

Like ~たら, the ~ば form creates a fairly general conditional. It is considered the most formal of the various “ifs”, and appears more in writing than in speech. If we compare ~たら and ~ば, ~たら focuses more on the outcome of the “if” while ~ば more expresses that “if this condition is met, what comes after ~ば will follow”. Some people call ~ば the “hypothetical if” for this reason, as you **cannot** use it when expressing possibilities you have control over like “if I go to work tomorrow” (but “if I *can* go” is fine).

Before we look at some examples, let’s establish how to make the ~ば form. As usual, our rules are divided between nouns & な adjectives, い adjectives, and verbs. To create the ~ば form of a noun or な adjective, just attach ~であれば to the word.



新しいアパート**であれば**、何もこわれていないはずだ。

[If it's a new apartment, nothing should be broken.]

This sounds quite critical, as in expressing shock someone can't read, whereas **はず** is more an assumption or probability.

日本語の先生**であれば**、日本語が読めるべきだ。

[If they are a Japanese teacher, they should be able to read Japanese!]

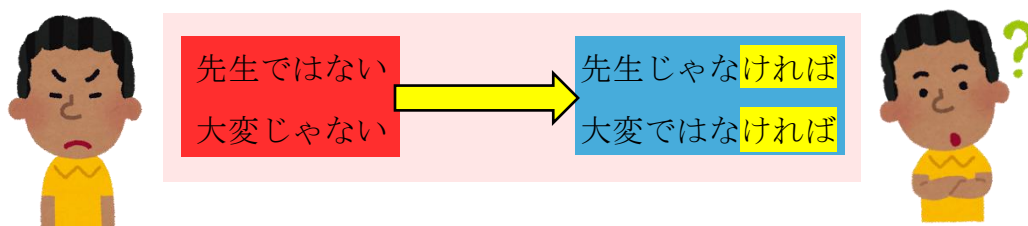
私がお金持ち**であれば**たくさんりょこうしたいです。

[If I was rich, I'd want to travel a lot.]

~ば is especially appropriate for imaginary hypotheticals like this.

In all the above sentences, ~なら or ~だったら would be preferred in speech in most cases. The ~であれば form specifically feels older, literary, stiff and/or formal. I would therefore recommend that you avoiding it when talking, but you will absolutely see it in writing.

For a negative noun or な adjective, just change ~じゃ・ではない to ~じゃ・ではなければ



The negative ~なければ form does not have the same formal feel as the ~であれば form, and can be used in more casual conversations without hesitation.

日本語の先生 **じゃなければ** どうして日本語が読めますか。

[If you **aren't** a Japanese teacher, why can you read Japanese?]

大変 **ではなければ** ちょっとてつだってくれない？

[If it's **not** troublesome, could you help me a bit?]



For い adjectives, we do the same thing as the negative form of nouns and な adjectives: take the final ~い of the word's **present plain** form and change it to ~ければ. This rule applies to both positive and negative い adjectives.

|                                |                                  |                                |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| あつ <b>い</b> →<br>あつ <b>ければ</b> | たの <b>しい</b> →<br>たの <b>しければ</b> | おも <b>い</b> →<br>おも <b>ければ</b> |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|

|                                                     |                                                     |                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| さむ <b>い</b> →<br>さむ <b>くない</b> →<br>さむ <b>くなければ</b> | くろ <b>い</b> →<br>くろ <b>くない</b> →<br>くろ <b>くなければ</b> | あたたか <b>い</b> →<br>あたたか <b>くない</b> →<br>あたたか <b>くなければ</b> |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|

寒**ければ**、ドアと窓を閉めたほうがいいですよ。

[If you're cold, it's best to shut the windows and doors.]

今いそが**しければ**、明日も来られます。

[If you are busy now, I can come tomorrow too.]

十ドルしか**なければ**ここで何も買えないと思う。

[If we only have 10 dollars I don't think we can buy anything here.]

安**くなければ**買えません。しかし、高**くなければ**買いたくありません。

[If it's **not cheap**, I can't buy it. But **if it's not expensive**, I don't want to buy it.]

食**べたくなければ**食べなくてもいいけど、これからもう作ってあげないよ。

[If you **don't want to eat it** you don't have to, but I won't make it again for you.]



Finally, for verbs of **all types**, the positive ~ば form is made by taking the final -u sound and replacing the -u with -eba, keeping the consonant before -u as-is (if there is one). The negative is then, the verb's **plain negative** form with ~ない changed to ~なければ (just like other words). If this is all tricky to visualize, our two irregular verbs look like this...

| Plain Form | ~ば Form | ~ば Form Neg. | ~たら Form |
|------------|---------|--------------|----------|
| する         | すれば     | しなければ        | したら      |
| くる         | くれば     | こなければ        | きたら      |

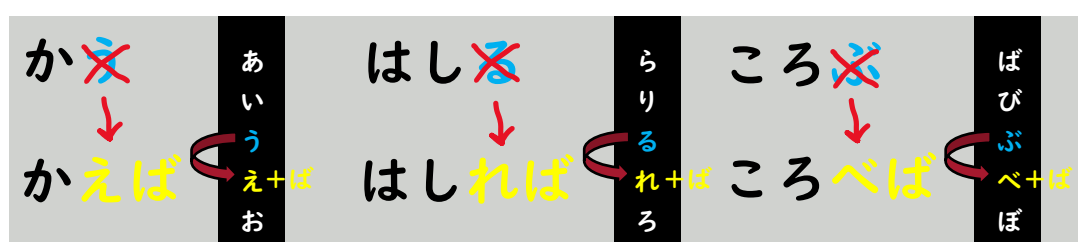
...and all positive る verbs just end up with their final ~る becoming ~れば. That is, since we change the final -(x)u sound to -(x)eba, -ru becomes -reba.



Here are some more conjugated る verbs, compared with their ~たら forms:

| Plain Form | ~ば Form | ~ば Form Neg. | ~たら Form |
|------------|---------|--------------|----------|
| たべる        | たべれば    | たべなければ       | たべたら     |
| できる        | できれば    | できなければ       | できたら     |
| あたためる      | あたためれば  | あたためなければ     | あたためたら   |
| しらべる       | しらべれば   | しらべなければ      | しらべたら    |

For all う verbs, our “final -(x)u sound to -(x)eba” pattern also works: just change the ending sound to the ~え kana with the same starting consonant with ~ば attached after.



メモを取れば  
おぼえられる!



Here are conjugated う verbs of each possible ending, compared with their ~たら forms:

| Plain Form  | ~ば Form       | ~ば Form Neg.              | ~たら Form       |
|-------------|---------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| うた <u>う</u> | うた <u>え</u> ば | うた <u>わ</u> な <u>け</u> れば | うた <u>っ</u> たら |
| た <u>つ</u>  | た <u>て</u> ば  | た <u>た</u> な <u>け</u> れば  | た <u>っ</u> たら  |
| しま <u>る</u> | しま <u>れ</u> ば | しま <u>ら</u> な <u>け</u> れば | しま <u>っ</u> たら |
| あそ <u>ぶ</u> | あそ <u>べ</u> ば | あそ <u>ば</u> な <u>け</u> れば | あそ <u>ん</u> だら |
| の <u>む</u>  | の <u>め</u> ば  | の <u>ま</u> な <u>け</u> れば  | の <u>ん</u> だら  |
| し <u>ぬ</u>  | し <u>ね</u> ば  | し <u>な</u> な <u>け</u> れば  | し <u>ん</u> だら  |
| ある <u>く</u> | ある <u>け</u> ば | ある <u>か</u> な <u>け</u> れば | ある <u>い</u> たら |
| およ <u>ぐ</u> | およ <u>げ</u> ば | およ <u>が</u> な <u>け</u> れば | およ <u>い</u> だら |
| はな <u>す</u> | はな <u>せ</u> ば | はな <u>さ</u> な <u>け</u> れば | はな <u>し</u> たら |



The negative ~ば form of all verbs is then just their **negative positive plain** form with ~ない changed to ~なければ. Let's look at some examples of all the verb types below:



明日まで出せば多分大丈夫です。

[If you turn it in by tomorrow it's probably fine.]

いみがまだ分からなければたぶんむりだね。

[If we still don't understand the meaning it's probably impossible for us.]

勉強すればごうかくする。勉強しなければごうかくしない。かんたんな話だ。

[If you study, you'll pass. If you don't study, you won't. It's a simple story.]



However, there is one important condition: because ~ば emphasizes a hypothetical, it is not appropriate for giving statements of intent, making requests, expressing desires, or providing recommendations. So these four sentences have no ~ば version:

窓があくなら、しめてください。

[If the window opens, please close it.]

早く出られるなら、来てください。

[If you can leave early, please come.]

お酒を飲んだらうんてんするのがだめだ。

[If you are going to drink you must not drive.]

田中さんに会ったらわたしてね。

[If you meet Tanaka give it to him.]

As always,  
~たら is  
the safest  
option.

There are two exceptions to this condition though! You may use ~ば for orders etc. in long sentences where the subject of each sentence half is different...

かのじょが「はい」と言ってくれれば、けっこんするつもりです。

[If she says yes, I plan to marry her.]

かれが来週まであやまらなければ、私はクレームすると思う。

[If he doesn't apologize by next week, I think I'll make a complaint.]

You may keep the subject of each half the same if a verb is conjugated into a non-verb form. For instance, three pages ago the ~食べたくなければ example kept the same subject. This is okay because the ~たい form works like an adjective.

...and when the verb conjugated into ~ば represents a state. What is a “state”? Well, when talking about verbs, a “state” is most commonly いる or ある.

来年お金があれば猫をкаいたい。

[Next year, if I have money, I want a cat as a pet.]

Something like ちょきんできれば (“if I can save money”) or たくさんかせげば (“if I earn a lot”) wouldn't allow us to end with 猫をкаいたい.

しつもんがあればじゅぎょうがおわる前に聞いてくださいね。

[If you have questions, ask them before class is over, yeah?]

However, as traits are “constant states”, you can generally follow ~ば with requests, demands, statements forbidding actions, etc., when you are using ~ば with an adjective.

おいしければたくさん買います!

[If it is delicious I'll buy a lot!]

れいぞうこには食べ物が少なければ、何も食べないでください。

[If there's not much food in the fridge, please don't eat anything.]

暑ければ走らないほうがいいよ。

[If it's hot, it's best to not run.]



And lastly, the ~ば form also works with どうする to ask what someone *should* do:

どうすればいいですか。だれが行けばいいですか。何も分からなくてつらいです。

[What should I/we do? Who should go? I don't understand anything and it's hard.]

おつかれさま! That was a long grammar point. I definitely recommend going back and reading it again before moving on. Also, don't forget! If you are in a situation where you forget the minute rules of each “if” in Japanese or are just confused about which form is best, ~たら is always the safest version of “if” in Japanese.



## Grammar Point 6.5: Regret and longing, via ~ばよかった and ~のに

When using ~ば, you can express that it would have been good *if* something *had been* done by placing ~よかった immediately after a word's **positive** or **negative present** ~ば form.

きのうお酒を飲まなければよかった。頭がいたい。

[It would have been better if I didn't drink booze yesterday. My head hurts.]

私にもっと早くおしえてくれればよかった！もうばんごはんを作ったよ。

[If would have been good if you told me earlier! I already made dinner.]

子どもの時、もっとりょこうすればよかったです。

[It would have been nice to have traveled more when I was a child.]

In this form, the matter under discussion always has to be **completed** as the sentence ends in the past tense. However, this does not change the use of the **present** ~ば conditional.

Another way to accomplish this affect is to add ~のに to the end of your sentence. The word **のに** mostly expresses “but” just like **けど** or **が**, but implies a reversal of expectations that makes it well suited to complaints, critiques, and expressions of shock and/or surprise. In some cases, it best translates like “even though” rather than “but”.

Nouns and な  
adjectives  
connect to  
のに via な

雨なのにかれは外であそんでいる。

[He's playing outside even though it's raining (implied: he shouldn't).]

何かいも言ったのにわすれたの？

[You forgot despite me telling you many, many times?]

きのう買ってあげましたのにもうこわしました。

[I only got it for them yesterday and despite this they've broken it already.]

While often critical,  
のに can be  
complimentary  
when expressing  
extreme surprise

一時間だけ読んだのにもう全部おぼえたんですか。すごいですね。

[You only read for an hour but you've already memorized it all? Amazing.]



When **のに** appears at the end of a ~ば hypothetical, it expresses a similarly critical “if only” meaning. The form generally is associated with casual, rather than formal, language.

かれがはやく帰ってくればよかったのにね。

[It would be nice if he'd go home soon, yeah?]

Unlike ~ばよかった, the  
~ば~のに pair doesn't  
require past tense.

その時、ちゃんと「大好きだ」と言えなかったのに。

[If you had just properly said “I love you” back then, I wouldn't have dumped you.]

Regret that this  
didn't happen is  
strongly implied.



### Grammar Point 6.6: “The more X, the more Y” via ~ば・ほど

By changing a word into its ~ば form and then repeating the word and adding ~ほど, we make a construction that means “the more [word] something is, the more...”. For verbs and い adjectives, the word in front of ほど is always in the polite present plain form:

おすしは高ければ高いほどおいしいです。

[The more expensive the sushi is, the tastier it is.]

がんばればがんばるほどかんたんになるよ。

[The more effort you put in, the easier it gets.]

いそがしければいそがしいほど人生がたのしくなるとおもいます。

[I think the busier you are, the less fun life becomes.]



Nouns and な-adjectives instead repeat the entire noun phrase/adjective with +である in front of ~ほど. For brevity, you can reduce this to ~あるほど, but nowhere in-between.

もりはしずかであればしずかであるほどこわいです。

[Forests are scarier the quieter they are.]

えらい仕事であればあるほど、せきにんがある。

[The more upstanding the work, the more responsibility that comes with it.]

You can also use  
[な adjective]なら  
[same adjective]なほど  
when using な adjectives.



### Grammar Point 6.7: The sentence-final かな and かしら

The ending ~かな can be attached to a sentence to mean “I wonder”. The ~かしら variant works similarly, but is associated more with women’s speech (sometimes specifically older women). Both forms are mostly applied only to the ends of **plain form** sentences.

明日だれが来るかな。

[I wonder who will come tomorrow.]

毎日食べれば好きになれるかな。

[I wonder if I can grow to like if I eat it every day.]

何を言ったかしら。

[What could it be that they said?]





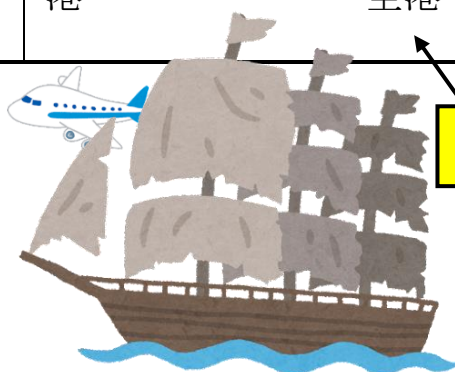
## CHAPTER 6 KANJI • かんじ

This week, we will learn 18 kanji filling in some important gaps in common vocabulary.

|   |                 |                                                                    |                                                    |
|---|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 料 | Meaning         | Material, charge, fee                                              |                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                                                                    |                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | りょう                                                                |                                                    |
|   | Sample uses     | りょうり<br>料理<br>りょうきん<br>料金 (a fare)                                 | ざいりょう<br>材料 (ingredients)<br>きゅうりょう<br>給料 (salary) |
| 理 | Meaning         | Justice, reason, logic                                             |                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ことわり                                                               |                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | り                                                                  |                                                    |
|   | Sample uses     | りょうり<br>料理<br>そうりだいじん<br>総理大臣 (prime minister)                     | りか<br>理科 (science)<br>りゆう<br>理由 (a reason)         |
| 飯 | Meaning         | Food, meal                                                         |                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | めし                                                                 |                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | はん                                                                 |                                                    |
|   | Sample uses     | めし<br>飯<br>あさめしまえ<br>朝飯前 (very easy)<br>すいはんき<br>炊飯器 (rice cooker) | あさはん<br>朝ごはん<br>ひるはん<br>昼ごはん<br>ばんはん<br>晩ごはん       |
| 港 | Meaning         | Port                                                               |                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | みなと                                                                |                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | こう                                                                 |                                                    |
|   | Sample uses     | みなと<br>港                                                           | こうこう<br>空港                                         |

The ご can be written as 御, but こ is preferred

Literally a “sky port”



|   |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 運 | Meaning         | Progress, luck, carry                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | はこ (ぶ)                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | うん                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>はこ</small><br/>運ぶ </div> <div> <small>うん</small><br/>運がいい (lucky) </div> <div> <small>うんてん</small><br/>運転<br/><br/> <small>うんどう</small><br/>運動<br/><br/> <small>こうどう</small><br/>行動 </div> |
| 動 | Meaning         | Movement                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | うご (く) ・ うご (かす)                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | どう                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>うご</small><br/>動く </div> <div> <small>うご</small><br/>動かす </div> <div> <small>うんどう</small><br/>運動<br/><br/> <small>どうぶつ</small><br/>動物 </div>                                               |
| 彼 | Meaning         | He, boyfriend                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | かれ ・ かの                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ひ                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>かれ</small><br/>彼<br/><br/> <small>かれし</small><br/>彼氏 </div> <div> <small>かのじょ</small><br/>彼女<br/><br/> <small>かれ</small><br/>彼ら </div>                                                     |
| 風 | Meaning         | Wind                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | かぜ                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ふう                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>かぜ</small><br/>風<br/><br/> <small>かみかぜ</small><br/>神風 </div> <div> <small>たいふう</small><br/>台風 (typhoon)<br/><br/> <small>かぜ</small><br/>風邪 (illness) </div>                                |
| 牛 | Meaning         | Cow                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | うし                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ぎゅう                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>うし</small><br/>牛 </div> <div> <small>ぎゅうにく</small><br/>牛肉<br/><br/> <small>ぎゅうどん</small><br/>牛丼 </div>                                                                                     |



|   |             |                                                                                                        |
|---|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 当 | Meaning     | Appropriate, hit                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | あ（たる）・あ（てる）・まさ                                                                                         |
|   | On yomi     | とう                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses | ほんとう 本当                      あ まえ 当たり前 (obvious)                                                       |
| 死 | Meaning     | Death                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | し（ぬ）                                                                                                   |
|   | On yomi     | し                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses | し 死ぬ                      し たい 死体 (corpse)                                                             |
| 開 | Meaning     | Open                                                                                                   |
|   | Kun yomi    | あ（ける）・あ（く）・ひら（く）                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | かい                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses | あ 開ける                      ひら 開く<br>あ 開く                      かい し 開始する (to begin)                     |
| 閉 | Meaning     | Close                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | し（める）・し（まる）・と（じる）                                                                                      |
|   | On yomi     | へい                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses | し 閉める                      へい てん 閉店する (close shop)<br>し 閉まる                      じ へい しょう 自閉症 (autism) |
| 全 | Meaning     | All                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    | まった（く）・すべ（て）                                                                                           |
|   | On yomi     | ぜん                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses | ぜん ぶ 全部                      ぜん ぜん 全然<br>あん ぜん 安全                      す べ 全て                          |



|   |             |                                                                              |
|---|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 駅 | Meaning     | First                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                              |
|   | On yomi     | えき                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses | はじ 初めて      さいしょ 最初                                                          |
| 始 | Meaning     | Start                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    | はじ (める) ・ はじ (まる)                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | し                                                                            |
|   | Sample uses | はじ 始める      しゅう し 終 始 (start to end)<br>はじ 始まる      し じゅう 始 終 (continuously) |
| 終 | Meaning     | End                                                                          |
|   | Kun yomi    | お (わる) ・ お (える)                                                              |
|   | On yomi     | じゅう                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses | お 終わる      さいしゅう 最 終<br>お 終える                                                |
| 才 | Meaning     | Aptitude, age                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                              |
|   | On yomi     | さい                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses | じゅうごさい 十五才      さいのう 才能 (talent for)<br>てんさい 天才 (genius)                     |

初 is used for はじめる meaning “(for the) first time”, 始 is used for “to begin”

The “correct” kanji for “years old” is 歳, but 才 is often used instead.



## CHAPTER 6 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 6

### Exercise 6.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

## 1. 料

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 料            | 料 | 料 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 勹 | ㇏ | 𠂉 | 米 | 米 | 米 | 米 | 料 |

## 2. 理

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 理            | 理 | 理 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 3. 飯

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 飯            | 飯 | 飯 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | 人 | 个 | 今 | 今 | 当 | 食 | 食 | 食 | 飠 | 飠 | 飯 | 飯 |

## 4. 港

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 港            | 港 | 港 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5. 運

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 運            | 運 | 運 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6. 動

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|
| 動            | 動 | 動 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 二 | 三 | 四 | 五 | 六 | 七 | 八 | 九 | 十 | 十一 | 十二 | 十三 | 十四 | 十五 |

## 7. 彼

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 彼            | 彼 | 彼 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | ㄣ | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 彼 | 彼 |  |

## 8. 風

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 風            | 風 | 風 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 乚 | 凡 | 凡 | 凡 | 凡 | 凡 | 風 | 風 | 風 |

## 9. 牛

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 牛            | 牛 | 牛 |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | ㄣ | ㄣ | 牛 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 10. 当

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 当            | 当 | 当 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 丶 | 丶 | 当 | 当 | 当 |  |  |  |  |

## 11. 死

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 死            | 死 | 死 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 丿 | 夕 | 夕 | 夕 | 死 |  |  |  |  |

## 12. 開

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 開            | 開 | 開 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 門 | 門 | 門 | 開 |

### 13. 閉

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 閉            | 閉 | 閉 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 門 | 門 | 門 | 門 | 閉 |

### 14. 全

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 全            | 全 | 全 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 人 | 人 | 人 | 全 | 全 | 全 |  |  |

### 15. 馱

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 馱            | 馱 | 馱 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馱 | 馱 |

### 16. 始

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 始            | 始 | 始 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 乚 | 女 | 女 | 女 | 始 | 始 | 始 | 始 |  |

### 17. 終

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 終            | 終 | 終 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 終 | 終 |

### 18. 才

|              |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 才            | 才 | 才 |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 寸 | 才 |  |  |  |  |  |  |



## Exercise 6.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. りょうりをすればするほどじょうずになるよ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. あさごはんがもっとはやくおわれればよかった。テストがはじまるまえにつくかな。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. カフェがしまっているがもうごぜんろくじだ。あくまでまとうか？かぜもないし。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. わたしはちょっとよわくて、スポーツがへたですが、べんぎょうがじょうずです。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. かれはさんじゅうさいになってからうんどうがだいすきになりました。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. ぎゅうにくをたべながらビールをのむのがほんとうにすばらしいことだ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. しごとがぜんぶおわったら、くうこうにいく。おくれなからあんしんしてね。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 6.3

Match each sentence in each group with the best translation from the options provided.

- |                    |                                        |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. あなただけがいい。       | A. All I need is just you.             |
| 2. あなただけだ。         | B. You're the only good one.           |
| 3. あなただけでいい。       | C. It's just you.                      |
|                    |                                        |
| 1. ひとつしか買えない。      | A. I can only afford one. This is sad. |
| 2. ひとつだけ買える。       | B. Only one can buy.                   |
| 3. ひとつだけ買えない。      | C. I can only buy one. Just a fact.    |
| 4. ひとつだけで買える。      | D. You can buy it with just one.       |
| 5. ひとりだけが買える。      | E. There's only one I can't buy.       |
|                    |                                        |
| 1. 行きながらコーヒーを飲む。   | A. I will drink coffee after I go.     |
| 2. 行くついでにコーヒーを飲む。  | B. I will drink coffee before I go.    |
| 3. 行ってからコーヒーを飲む。   | C. On the way, I'll stop for coffee.   |
| 4. 行く前にコーヒーを飲む。    | D. I'll drink coffee as I go.          |
| 5. 行っている間にコーヒーを飲む。 | E. I'll drink coffee while he's going. |

### Exercise 6.4

Find the error(s) in each sentence, fix and explain it/them, and then translate the sentence.

1. うんてんするついでにビールを飲んではいけません。飲めば家で飲んでください。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

2. 知っている人が一人だけいかなかったので、行かないければよかったかな。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

3. 仕事をはやくおわれられれば、パーティーに行くつもりだ。着きながら電話する。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 6.5

Change the various words in the chart into their ~ば forms.

| Word          | ~ば Form | Word            | ~ば Form |
|---------------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| せんせい          |         | きれい             |         |
| だいがく          |         | とくべつ            |         |
| あつい           |         | かわいい            |         |
| けぶかい          |         | あぶない            |         |
| かたい           |         | こい              |         |
| する            |         | くる              |         |
| たべる           |         | あたためる           |         |
| あきる           |         | なでる             |         |
| すう            |         | たつ              |         |
| 帰る            |         | しまる             |         |
| あそぶ           |         | のむ              |         |
| しぬ            |         | いく              |         |
| きく            |         | およぐ             |         |
| はなす           |         | わかる             |         |
| いる<br>(to be) |         | いる<br>(to need) |         |
| いい            |         | ない              |         |

### Exercise 6.6

Match each first half of a sentence in each group with the most logical second half.

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. おいしければ...         | A. 私が買うよ。             |
| 2. 熱れば...            | B. 全部食べてもいいよ。         |
| 3. 高ければ...           | C. すぐ飲まなくてもいいよ。       |
|                      |                       |
| 1. おいしければおいしいほど      | A. おいしいと思う。           |
| 2. 温めれば温めるほど         | B. たいてい人気がある。         |
| 3. とおければとおいほど        | C. 上手になる。             |
| 4. 勉強すればするほど         | D. 食べたくなるね。           |
| 5. きれいであればあるほど       | E. りょうこうするのが高くて大変だ。   |
|                      |                       |
| 1. 明日は早く起きなければならないので | A. きのう、お酒を飲まなければよかった。 |
| 2. やせすぎた！            | B. ちゃんと勉強すればよかった。     |
| 3. 何もおぼえていない。        | C. 夜までゲームしなければよかった。   |
| 4. え？八時までつづくの？       | D. 始まる前にトイレに行けばよかった。  |
| 5. 頭がとてもいたい。         | E. もっと食べればよかった。       |

### Exercise 6.7

Using the ~れば form, create a sentence which begins with each prompt but continues it on to make a logical sentence. Be sure to review the rules across pages 107-111.

1. "If I was pretty..."

私が\_\_\_\_\_

2. "If the coffee is too hot..."

コーヒーが\_\_\_\_\_

3. "If you don't tell the teacher..."

先生に\_\_\_\_\_

4. "If you can't eat meat..."

肉が\_\_\_\_\_



## 7. 彼

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 彼            | 彼 | 彼 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | ㇏ | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 亻 | 彼 | 彼 |  |

## 8. 風

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 風            | 風 | 風 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 乚 | 凡 | 凡 | 凡 | 凡 | 凡 | 風 | 風 | 風 |

## 9. 牛

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 牛            | 牛 | 牛 |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | ㇏ | ㇏ | 牛 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 10. 当

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 当            | 当 | 当 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 丶 | 丶 | 当 | 当 | 当 |  |  |  |  |

## 11. 死

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 死            | 死 | 死 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | ㇏ | 夕 | 夕 | 夕 | 死 | 死 |  |  |  |

## 12. 開

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 開            | 開 | 開 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 門 | 門 | 門 | 門 |

### 13. 閉

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 閉            | 閉 | 閉 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 門 | 門 | 門 | 門 |

### 14. 全

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 全            | 全 | 全 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 人 | 人 | 人 | 人 | 人 | 全 | 全 | 全 | 全 |

### 15. 駅

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 駅            | 駅 | 駅 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 |

### 16. 始

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 始            | 始 | 始 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 女 | 女 | 女 | 女 | 女 | 始 | 始 | 始 | 始 |

### 17. 終

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 終            | 終 | 終 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 纟 | 終 | 終 |

### 18. 才

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 才            | 才 | 才 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 才 | 才 | 才 | 才 | 才 | 才 | 才 | 才 |

## Exercise 6.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. りょうりをすればするほどじょうずになるよ。

Rewrite: 料理をすればするほど上手になるよ。

Translate: The more you cook the better you'll get at it.

2. あさごはんがもっとはやくおわれればよかった。テストがはじまるまえにつくかな。

Rewrite: 朝ご飯がもっと早く終わればよかった。テストが始まる前に着くかな。

Translate: It would have been good if breakfast finished earlier. I wonder if I'll arrive before the test starts.

3. カフェがしまっているがもうごぜんろくじだ。あくまでまとうか？かぜもないし。

Rewrite: カフェが閉まっているけどもう午前六時だ。開くまで待とうか？風もないし。

Translate: The cafe's shut but it's already 6AM. Shall we wait until it opens? There's no wind or anything.

4. わたしはちょっとよわくて、スポーツがへたですが、べんぎょうがじょうずです。

Rewrite: 私はちょっと弱くて、スポーツが下手ですが、勉強が上手です。

Translate: I'm a little weak and bad at sports, but good at studying.

5. かれはさんじゅうさいになってからうんどうがだいすきになりました。

Rewrite: 彼は三十才になってから運動が大好きになりました。

Translate: After he became 30, he fell in love with exercising.

6. ぎゅうにくをたべながらビールをのむのがほんとうにすばらしいことだ。

Rewrite: 牛肉を食べながらビールを飲むのが本当にすばらしいことだ。

Translate: Drinking beer while eating beef is a truly wonderful thing.

7. しごとがぜんぶおわったら、くうこうにいく。おくれなからあんしんしてね。

Rewrite: 仕事が全部終わったら空港に行く。おくれなから安心してね。

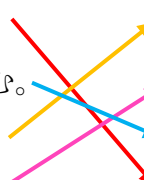
Translate: I'll go to the airport after work is all done.

I won't be late, so relax/don't worry.



### Exercise 6.3

Match each sentence in each group with the best translation from the options provided.

- |              |                                                                                   |                              |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. あなただけがいい。 |  | A. All I need is just you.   |
| 2. あなただけだ。   |  | B. You're the only good one. |
| 3. あなただけでいい。 |  | C. It's just you.            |
- 
- |               |                                                                                   |                                        |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. ひとつしか買えない。 |  | A. I can only afford one. This is sad. |
| 2. ひとつだけ買える。  |  | B. Only one can buy.                   |
| 3. ひとつだけ買えない。 |  | C. I can only buy one. Just a fact.    |
| 4. ひとつだけで買える。 |  | D. You can buy it with just one.       |
| 5. ひとりだけが買える。 |  | E. There's only one I can't buy.       |
- 
- |                    |                                                                                     |                                        |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. 行きながらコーヒーを飲む。   |   | A. I will drink coffee after I go.     |
| 2. 行くついでにコーヒーを飲む。  |    | B. I will drink coffee before I go.    |
| 3. 行ってからコーヒーを飲む。   |    | C. On the way, I'll stop for coffee.   |
| 4. 行く前にコーヒーを飲む。    |   | D. I'll drink coffee as I go.          |
| 5. 行っている間にコーヒーを飲む。 |  | E. I'll drink coffee while he's going. |

### Exercise 6.4

Find the error(s) in each sentence, fix and explain it/them, and then translate the sentence.

1. うんてん~~する~~<sup>しながら</sup>ついでにビールを飲んではいけません。飲めば家で飲んでください。

Error(s): ついでに should be **しながら**

Translation: **You shouldn't drink and drive. If you drink, do it at home.**

2. 知っている人が一人~~だけ~~<sup>しか</sup>いかなかったので、行かないければよかったかな。

Error(s): **だけ should be **しか**. As it stands, it means "only one person I know wasn't there".**

Translation: **I only knew one person there. I wonder if it would be better to have not gone.**

3. 仕事を早く~~おえられれば~~<sup>おえられれば</sup>、パーティーに行くつもりだ。着~~き~~<sup>くま</sup>えに電話する。  
 をおわる + potential (~られ) doesn't work. It should be transitive おえる + られ (おえられれば),

Error(s): **or go full intransitive, as in 仕事は早くおわれれば. 着きながら should be 着く前に or 行きながら, etc.**

Translation: **If I can finish work early, I plan to go to the party.  
I'll call you before I arrive.**

## Exercise 6.5

Change the various words in the chart into their ~ば forms.

| Word          | ~ば Form  | Word            | ~ば Form  |
|---------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| せんせい          | せんせんであれば | きれい             | きれいであれば  |
| だいがく          | だいがくであれば | とくべつ            | とくべつであれば |
| あつい           | あつければ    | かわいい            | かわいければ   |
| けぶかい          | けぶかければ   | あぶない            | あぶなければ   |
| かたい           | かたければ    | こい              | こければ     |
| する            | すれば      | くる              | くれば      |
| たべる           | たべれば     | あたためる           | あたためれば   |
| あきる           | あきれば     | なでる             | なでれば     |
| すう            | すえば      | たつ              | たてば      |
| 帰る            | かえれば     | しまる             | しまれば     |
| あそぶ           | あそべば     | のむ              | のめば      |
| しぬ            | しねば      | いく              | いけば      |
| きく            | きけば      | およぐ             | およげば     |
| はなす           | はなせば     | わかる             | わかれば     |
| いる<br>(to be) | いれば      | いる<br>(to need) | いれば      |
| いい            | よければ     | ない              | なければ     |

### Exercise 6.6

Match each first half of a sentence in each group with the most logical second half.

- |              |                                                                                   |                 |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. おいしければ... |  | A. 私が買うよ。       |
| 2. 熱ければ...   |  | B. 全部食べてもいいよ。   |
| 3. 高ければ...   |  | C. すぐ飲まなくてもいいよ。 |

- |                 |                                                                                   |                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. おいしければおいしいほど |  | A. おいしいと思う。         |
| 2. 温めれば温めるほど    |  | B. たいてい人気がある。       |
| 3. とおければとおいほど   |  | C. 上手になる。           |
| 4. 勉強すればするほど    |  | D. 食べなくなるね。         |
| 5. きれいであればあるほど  |  | E. りょうこうするのが高くて大変だ。 |

- |                      |                                                                                     |                       |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. 明日は早く起きなければならないので |    | A. きょう、お酒を飲まなければよかった。 |
| 2. やせすぎた！            |    | B. ちゃんと勉強すればよかった。     |
| 3. 何もおぼえていない。        |    | C. 夜までゲームしなければよかった。   |
| 4. え？八時までつづくの？       |   | D. 始まる前にトイレに行けばよかった。  |
| 5. 頭がとてもしたい。         |  | E. もっと食べればよかった。       |

### Exercise 6.7

Using the ~れば form, create a sentence which begins with each prompt but continues it on to make a logical sentence. Be sure to review the rules across pages 107-111.

1. "If I was pretty..."

私が **きれいであればつきあってくれる？**

These are just examples, be sure to check your own for grammar errors etc.

2. "If the coffee is too hot..."

コーヒーが **熱すぎればれいぞうこに少し入れられるよ。**

3. "If you don't tell the teacher..."

先生に **言わなければ、いじめがつづくと思う。**

4. "If you can't eat meat..."

肉が **食べられなければ自分の食べ物をじゅんびしておいたほうがいいかもしれません。**

## CHAPTER SEVEN・第七章

### VOCABULARY・ごい

#### Nouns

|                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| いと<br>糸            | thread                   |
| い と<br>意图          | will, intent             |
| か のうせい<br>可能性      | possibility              |
| きゅうりょう<br>きゅうりょう   | salary                   |
| きょ か<br>許可         | permission               |
| こうじ<br>工事          | construction             |
| こうじょう<br>工場        | factory                  |
| げんだい<br>現代         | these days, modern       |
| じしん<br>自信          | confidence               |
| じしん<br>地震          | earthquake               |
| じしん<br>自身          | the self, oneself        |
| すいせんじょう<br>すいせんじょう | letter of recommendation |
| ち ず<br>地図          | map                      |
| でんとう<br>でんとう       | tradition                |
| ぶんしょう<br>ぶんしょう     | sentence (writing)       |
| ほうほう<br>方法         | method                   |
| ね ぶそく<br>寝不足       | not enough sleep         |
| もくてき<br>目的         | goal, aim                |
| もんく<br>文句          | complaint                |
| ようじ<br>用事          | errand, task             |
| りょう<br>りょう         | dormitory                |

#### Adverbs

|              |        |
|--------------|--------|
| まもなく<br>まもなく | soon   |
| おも<br>主に     | mainly |

#### う Verbs

|             |                                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------|
| そそ<br>注ぐ    | to pour                                  |
| そる          | to shave                                 |
| たのむ         | to request, ask for                      |
| とかす         | to comb                                  |
| ねむる         | to sleep                                 |
| ま あ<br>間に合う | to be on time, meet a deadline, not miss |
| もち<br>用いる   | to use                                   |

#### る Verbs

|            |                                        |
|------------|----------------------------------------|
| にげる        | to run away                            |
| [~に]のりおくれる | to miss getting on a form of transport |
| もち<br>用いる  | to use, make use of                    |

#### な Adjectives

|              |                     |
|--------------|---------------------|
| い とてき<br>意図的 | intentional         |
| けち           | stingy, cheap       |
| じょうひん<br>上品  | elegant             |
| ふしぎ          | mysterious, strange |
| ふてきせつ        | inappropriate       |
| てきせつ         | appropriate         |

#### Compound Verbs

|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| ねぼうする   | to oversleep   |
| しょうしんする | to be promoted |
| りこんする   | to divorce     |

## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 7.1: Expressing “even if” via ~ても

In Chapter 1, we learned how to say “is it okay to [verb]” via attaching ~もいい to a word’s て form. In this chapter, we’ll do something similar: by changing a word to its ~ても form and then adding something *other than* いい, you express “even if [someone] [is/does] X...”:

まもなく閉まるので、今すぐ行**っても**間にあわないと思う。

[It shuts soon, so **even if** you go right away, I don’t think you’ll make it.]

雨がふ**っても**えいがを見に行こうよ。

[**Even if** it rains, let’s go see a movie.]

~てもいい is therefore  
literally “even if  
[verb], is it okay?”

こんかい、かれにたのま**なくとも**できるかな。

[This time, I wonder if we can do it **even if** we **don’t** ask him for help.]

毎日勉強すれうばあなた**でも**日本が上手になれるよ。

[If you study daily, **even** you can become good at Japanese.]

[noun]であつても  
is also common.

カレーがとてからく**ても**私はおなかがいたくなりません！

[**Even if** the curry is super spicy, my stomach won’t hurt!]



If you put a question word before a ~ても verb and then end the sentence in the negative, you can express “no matter if [verb]”. This is often used with [何 + counter] combinations:



何かいあやま**っても**ゆるさないよ。

[**No matter** **how many times** you apologize, I won’t forgive you.]

ピザを**何まい**食べて**ても**あきません。

**No matter** **how many** pizzas I eat, I don’t get tired of them.

**何**をや**っても**むりだ。

[**No matter** **what** you do it’s futile.]

**どこ**へ行こうとして**ても**、人が多かった。

[**No matter** **where** we tried to go to, there were a lot of people.]



## Grammar Point 7.2: Conveying difficulty via なかなか~ない

In a positive sentence, **なかなか** emphasizes the adjective or verb that comes after.

Sometimes **なかなか** conveys slight surprise here, so careful using it as a pure compliment.

あなたは**なかなか**いい物を作ったね。

[You made something **really** good, eh!]

**なかなか**おいしかったです。

[It was **quite** tasty.]

かのじょは**なかなか**できました。

[She did **quite** the good job.]

**なかなか**むずかしかったよね。

[**Pretty** hard, wasn't it?]



The word **なかなか** can also connect to nouns and noun phrases via の. In this case, rather than emphasizing the noun **なかなか** creates the meaning of “(pretty) good [noun]”.

それは**なかなか**のかんがえだ。

[That's **one heck of** an idea!]

**なかなか**の腕がありますね。

[You are **quite** skilled.]

In Japanese, 腕 (arm) is often used as a synonym for “skill” or “ability”.



In contrast, when placed before a **negative** verb, **なかなか** stresses that the verb is difficult or taking a long time, often despite the speaker's effort.

このドアが**なかなか**開かない。

[This door **just** won't open/I am **having trouble** opening this door]

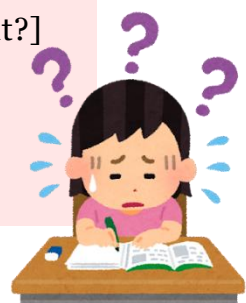
もう何分待った？ バスが**なかなか**来ないね。

[How long have we waited already? The bus **just** isn't coming, is it?]

何回勉強しても**なかなか**分かりません。

[No matter how many times I study it, I'm **just** not getting it.]

Remember: Japanese often uses intransitive verbs where English would prefer transitive ones or potential (“can”) verbs.



Importantly though, in the **negative past** tense なかなか can mean that something was very difficult, annoying, or frustrating *but* nevertheless still accomplished to some extent.



きのうはなかなかねむれませんでした。

[Yesterday, I wasn't able to sleep **very much (but I did finally sleep.)**]

さとうさんがずっと話したので、かいぎがなかなかおわらなかった。

[Because Satou spoke continuously, the meeting **took forever to end (but it did).**]

なかなか帰ってくれなかった。午前一時までいたよ。

[He **just** would not go home **(but he did eventually)**! He was there until 1 AM!]

### Grammar Point 7.3: Emphasis via こんなに・そんなに・あんなに・どんなに

The phrases こんなに, そんなに, and あんなに are used to show that something [is adjective] or [does verb] to a given extent. The “extent” is set through context, and the context is pointed at via the same こ・そ・あ difference in words like これ・それ・あれ.

Let's look at these forms in action by starting with adjectives. When こ・そ・あんなに are placed in front of an adjective, they indicate “as [adjective] as [this/that near you/that over there]”. For instance, when talking about the extent of [adjective] of something near you, you would use こんなに:

コーヒーがこんなにあつくなると、だれも飲めない。

[If coffee gets as hot as **this (coffee near me's temperature)**, no one can drink it.]

こんなにいそがしくなることは今まであまりなかった。

[Becoming **this busy (this being a state of being which is metaphorically near me)** is something I haven't experienced much before today.]



The そんなに version is then used to refer to a state of something near the person being spoken to, or the quality of actions that are done by them.



そんなにきたないふくを着るつもりですか。

[You're going to wear clothing as dirty **as those (near you/that you have on)?**]

いいえ、いいえ、私はそんなに上手じゃないよ。

[No, no, I'm not **that (which is as good as you said)** good.]

While the *speaker* is skilled, the comment comes from the other person, so it is “located” with them.



Finally, あんに points to a context that is not near either person in the conversation.

あんに おそく 出かけたら 間にあわないと思う。

[If they left **that late**, I don't think they'll make it in time.]

We know that the person who left late is not involved in the conversation due to あんな

かれは あんに しつれいなことを本当にかのじょに言ったんですか。

[Did he really say things as rude **as that** to her?]

When used with verbs, these three forms indicate that something [verbs] to a given extent.

今日まで **こんなに** 走ったことがなかった。

[I've never run **this (amount of running, located in my behavior)** much before.]

**そんなに** がんばったら仕事がまもなくおわるよ。

[If you're working **like that (a behavior located with you)**, you'll be done very soon.]

かのじょが **あんに** 寝ているのにいつも「ねむい、ねむい」と言っています。

[Despite sleeping **that much**, she's always saying "I'm sleepy, I'm sleepy".]



The あんに version can also be used in reference to your own experiences in the past, in which case it has a reflexive or nostalgic implication, as that past is “over there”.

大学で漢字を **あんに** れんしゅうしたのに、今なかなかおぼえられない。

[Despite **all the** kanji practice I did in uni, I can't really remember them at all now.]

**あんに** 大変でしたね。わすれました。

[I suppose it was **that** hard. I'd forgotten.]



The question form **どんなに** is then often used with the **～ても** form we learned in the prior section to indicate “no matter how much”. This pattern can be used with any word type.

**どんなに** 寒い天気であ**っても**、私はアイスを食べたいです。

[**No matter how** cold the weather is, I want to eat ice cream.]

All **～んに** forms can be used with nouns, when the nouns are modified by an adjective and followed by **である**.

**どんなに** がんば**っても** かてないよ。

[**No matter how** hard you try, you can't win/beat me.]





### Grammar Point 7.4: Blame and credit with せいで and おかげで

The terms せいで and おかげで are respectively used to show blame and give credit. While opposing in meaning, both terms operate under the same grammatical patterns.

When discussing a noun or な adjective in the **positive present** tense, せいで and おかげで attach via ~の and ~な.

かれのせいでおくれました。

[It's his fault I was late.]

あなたのおかげで最後までできました。

[Because of you(r help), I was able to do everything all the way to the end.]

しごとがたいへんなせいでだれもはたらきたくない。

[Because the job is awful, no one wants to work.]

さき  
先飲んだコーヒーのおかげでエネルギーがいっぱいある。

[I owe all this energy to the coffee I just drank.]



The words attach to directly to any other words in any other tenses.

天気が暑かったせいで外でなかなかうんどうできなかった。

[Due to the heat, I couldn't really exercise outside.]

シャワーをあまりあびないせいでいつもくさいです。

[Because they don't shower much, they're always stinky.]

あなたがいっしょだったおかげでとても楽しいたびだった。

[Thanks to you being with me, it was a super fun trip.]

私に行き方を教えてくれたおかげですぐ見つけられました。

[As a result of you showing me how to go, I was able to find it immediately.]

かれに手つだってもらったおかげで、一日で終わられた。

[All due to receiving his help, I was able to finish in a day.]



In a neutral situation, you can use **せいで** but not **おかげで**. In other words, **せいで** works with anything from a “bad” cause to an “okay” cause, whereas **おかげで** is always positive. However, don’t forget that **～から** and **～ので** are “safer”, having no extra implications.



食べすぎた**せいで**、ちょっとねむくなりました。

[**Because** I ate too much, I’m a little sleepy now.]

きのう朝から夜まであそんだ**せいで**午後二時まで寝た。

[**Because** I played from morning to evening yesterday, I slept till 2 PM.]

Being sleepy or sleeping till 2 PM aren’t *positive* things, but they aren’t exactly horrible either (assuming you didn’t oversleep I suppose!)

You can also use [noun]を[person]の**せい**にする to mean “call [X] [person’s] fault”.

あなたのミス**を私のせい**にしないでください。

[Don’t **blame** your mistakes **on me**.]

田中さんはクラスにおくれたこと**を山田さんのせい**にしようとした。

[Tanaka attempted to **place the blame** for being late to class **on Yamada**.]



### Grammar Point 7.5: Saying “without [verbing]” via **～ないで** and **～ずに**

In the last textbook, we covered the **～ないで** form used to mean “please don’t”. Using the same plain negative **～ないで** ending followed by another verb phrase, we can also create forms meaning “without [verb]ing”, as in these examples:

テストのために朝まで一時間も**休まないで**勉強した。

[For the test, (someone) studied until morning **without relaxing** for even an hour.]

ばんごはんを**食べないで**寝るのがあまりけんこうなことではない。

[Going to bed **without eating dinner** isn’t a very healthy thing to do.]

**うごかないで**待ってください。

[Please wait **without moving**.]

一かいも**すわらないで**はたらいていたせいでつかれた。

[I’m tired because I worked **without** even **sitting** once.]



In more formal contexts, the **～ずに** ending can replace **～ないで**. The literal meaning is the same, as the **～ず** ending of a verb is just an older negative ending which is mostly obsolete (it was replaced by **～ない**) but remains fossilized in a few grammar forms and phrases. But as **～ずに** is associated with formalish writing, it is uncommon in speech. The way we create the **～ず** ending depends on the verb we use. As always, irregular verbs follow no pattern, and must be memorized.



| Plain | Plain Neg. | ～ず Neg. |
|-------|------------|---------|
| する    | しない        | せず      |
| くる    | くる         | こず      |

こ  
来ずに is  
rarely seen.

今アパートを**そうじせず**にられない。

[I can't exist now **without cleaning** the apartment/I **must clean** the apartment now.]

べんきょう**せず**にこうかくした。

[I passed **without studying**.]

This **～ずに**にられない form is a common set pattern that shows that you can't *not* [verb].

For **る** verbs, just replace the final **～る** with **～ずに** instead of **～ないで**.

**食べず**に待ってくれたのですか。

[You waited for me **without eating/without starting to eat**?]

ねぼうしたが、バスに**のりおくれず**にアルバイトまで行けた。

[I overslept, but I made it to work **without missing** the bus.]

All of the sentences on this page could (or maybe should) use the **～ないで** form instead. A few rare uses of **～ずに** are fine in speech, but if you use it all the time you will sound quite odd or old-fashioned.

For **う** verbs, replace the final **～ない** in their plain negative form with **～ずに**.

何も**言わず**に帰った。

[They went home **without saying** anything.]

子どもを**起こさず**にしずかにオフィスでゲームをした。

[**Without waking** my kids, I played games in my office quietly.]

**わらわず**にいらなかった。

[I couldn't **stop myself from laughing**/Literally: I couldn't exist **without laughing**.]



Finally, you can attach ~すむ to the ~ないで or ~ずに forms of verbs to show that someone is able to (or manages to) get by without [verb]ing. This form has a sense of finality that isn't present in ~ないで on its own, as it indicates that something will *end* (or *did end*) without [verb] being done. This form is generally used in a positive sense.

友だちがかしてくれるなら、**買わないですむ**。

[If a friend lends me it, I'll **get out of buying it**.]

家にある物でばんごはんを作れたからざいりょうを**買いに行かないですんだ**。

[I was able to cook with stuff in the house, so I **avoided going to buy ingredients**.]

今日のクラスにきょうかしょがいらなかった。もっとはやく知ったらりょうまで**取りに帰らずにすんだ**のに。。。

[Today, we didn't need the textbook in class. If I had known that earlier, I **would have been able to avoid going** all the way **home** to my dorm **to get it**.]

あなたのおかげで最後まで**きんしょうしないですんだ**。

[Thanks to you, I was able to make it to the end **without getting nervous**.]



## Grammar Point 7.6: The suffix ~的

The kanji 的, read as てき, is used to change nouns into な adjectives. In English we use multiple suffixes for this purpose, so what 的 translates as will depend on where you use it, but the suffixes -ism, -ical, and -ic are similar. This week's vocab list contains a few words that always use 的, but let's look at some common words (some we haven't formally introduced) with and without 的 to see how it works.

|                  |                       |                                                                                     |
|------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| げんだい<br>現代       | げんだいてき<br>現代的         | 現代には、インターネットがひつようです。<br>[In <b>our modern age</b> , the internet is a requirement.] |
| modern<br>(noun) | modern<br>(adjective) | これはとても <b>現代的な</b> ほうほうです。<br>[This is a very <b>modern</b> method.]                |

|                    |                          |                                                                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| せいじ<br>政治          | せいじてき<br>政治的             | 政治にきょうみがありません。<br>[I have little interest in <b>politics</b> .]                    |
| politics<br>(noun) | political<br>(adjective) | それは <b>政治的な</b> かんがえ方ですね。<br>[That's a <b>political</b> way of thinking for sure.] |



|                   |                           |                                                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| きせき<br>奇跡         | きせきてき<br>奇跡的              | 奇跡じゃないかもしれませんが...<br>[It may not be a <b>miracle</b> ...]             |
| miracle<br>(noun) | miraculous<br>(adjective) | ...奇跡的なことだと思います。<br>[...but I think it is a <b>miraculous</b> thing.] |

|                                 |                         |                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| けいざい<br>経済                      | けいざいてき<br>経済的           | 日本の <b>経済</b> は最近ちょっと弱くなった。<br>[Japan's <b>economy</b> has become a bit weak lately.] |
| economy/<br>economics<br>(noun) | economic<br>(adjective) | そのせいで <b>経済的な</b> ダメージをうけた。<br>[We took <b>economic</b> damage because of that.]      |

|                      |                           |                                                                                                    |
|----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| こじん<br>個人            | こじんてき<br>個人的              | 社会は <b>個人</b> でできています。<br>[Society is made up of <b>individuals</b> .]                             |
| individual<br>(noun) | individual<br>(adjective) | <b>個人的な</b> 話なのでどこかへ行ってくれない。<br>[This is a <b>personal</b> chat so won't you please go elsewhere?] |

Since 的 creates な adjectives, you can attach に after 的 to turn nouns into adverbs.

**個人的に**問だいがない。でも、ちょっと**げき的に**やっていると思う。  
[**Personally**, I have no problem. But I think you're doing things a bit **dramatically**.]

意図が大事ですよ。意図です。**意図的に**がんばってください。  
[Intent is what it important. Intent. Move forward **intently/with intent**.]

ばんごはんをもっと**けんこう的に**作りましょう。  
[Let's make dinner **in a more healthy way**.]

自動ドアだよ。だから**自動的に**あくんだ。  
[It's an automatic door, dude. That's why it opens **automatically**.]

でんとうは大事だ。はい。でも、**でんとう的に**かんがえてはいけない時もある。  
[Tradition is important. Yes. But there are times when we can't think **traditionally**.]



Don't attach 的 to everything! It only works with some words. But hopefully now you get a sense of how to figure out what it means when you see it on a word you already know.

## Grammar Point 7.7: A fistful of counters

In the last textbook, we introduced common counters used in Japanese. To review, there are two key grammar patterns used to count in Japanese. The first is:



| [Noun phrase]                                               | [Particle] | # | Counter | Verb |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------|---|---------|------|
| にほんじん                                                       | が          | 三 | にん      | います  |
| There are <b>three</b> (humans of) <b>Japanese people</b> . |            |   |         |      |

Note how the number and counter don't take the particle. If you drop the thing you're counting (what comes before を・が), **don't** move the particle to after the counter. Drop it too.

This pattern creates a complete sentence, but only allows the particles を and が. So while you can use it to say something like “there are three people” or “I drank two coffees”, you can't use it for sentences like “I went to two stores” or “I drank at five cafes”. To make sentences like this, we have to create a noun phrase using the second pattern:

| #                                            | Counter | の | [Noun phrase] | Rest of the sentence |
|----------------------------------------------|---------|---|---------------|----------------------|
| 二                                            | つ       | の | きっさてん         | に行きました               |
| <b>Two</b> (generic objects of) <b>cafes</b> |         |   |               | went to              |



This chapter, we will learn four new counters. Our first is used for machines (including vehicles, especially cars), legged furniture, and appliances (including phones!). The second is used for counting buildings. Note a few irregular readings for the building counter.

| #  | Counter for Machines<br>(だい・台) | Reading |
|----|--------------------------------|---------|
| 1  | 一台                             | いちだい    |
| 2  | 二台                             | にだい     |
| 3  | 三台                             | さんだい    |
| 4  | 四台                             | よんだい    |
| 5  | 五台                             | ごだい     |
| 6  | 六台                             | ろくだい    |
| 7  | 七台                             | ななだい    |
| 8  | 八台                             | はちだい    |
| 9  | 九台                             | きゅうだい   |
| 10 | 十台                             | じゅうだい   |
| ?  | 何台                             | なんだい    |

| Counter for Buildings<br>(けん・軒) | Reading |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| 一軒                              | いっけん    |
| 二軒                              | にけん     |
| 三軒                              | さんけん    |
| 四軒                              | よんけん    |
| 五軒                              | ごけん     |
| 六軒                              | ろっけん    |
| 七軒                              | ななけん    |
| 八軒                              | はっけん    |
| 九軒                              | きゅうけん   |
| 十軒                              | じゅっけん   |
| 何軒                              | なんけん    |



スマホを一台買う？  
二台買う？

三軒 and 何軒 are sometimes respectively pronounced as さんげん and なんげん.



新しい車を一台買いました。

[I bought one (machine of) new car.]

三軒目のたてものに入ってください。

[Please go into the third building.]

四軒の家を見に行ったが、キッチンにれいぞうこが二台あるのもあった。

[We went to look at four houses, and one that had two fridges in the kitchen!]



Remember,  
we can  
attach 目 to  
a counter to  
get "the Xth  
[noun]"

Our next two counters are used to count large animals. In the last textbook, we learned the counter ~匹 (ひき) for counting small animals. The counter とう, written using the kanji for "head" (頭), is used for larger animals – there's no exact "size" line, but とう is preferred over ひき when an animal is too big to carry and/or large enough to ride. The counter わ, written using the kanji for "wing" (羽), is then for birds... but can also be used for rabbits. Rabbits can, of course, still be counted with ひき.

| #  | Counter for Big Animals<br>(とう・頭) | Reading |
|----|-----------------------------------|---------|
| 1  | 一頭                                | いっとう    |
| 2  | 二頭                                | にとう     |
| 3  | 三頭                                | さんとう    |
| 4  | 四頭                                | よんとう    |
| 5  | 五頭                                | ごとう     |
| 6  | 六頭                                | ろくとう    |
| 7  | 七頭                                | ななとう    |
| 8  | 八頭                                | はちとう    |
| 9  | 九頭                                | きゅうとう   |
| 10 | 十頭                                | じゅうとう   |
| ?  | 何頭                                | なんとう    |

| #  | Counter for Birds<br>(わ・羽) | Reading |
|----|----------------------------|---------|
| 1  | 一羽                         | いちわ     |
| 2  | 二羽                         | にわ      |
| 3  | 三羽                         | さんわ     |
| 4  | 四羽                         | よんわ     |
| 5  | 五羽                         | ごわ      |
| 6  | 六羽                         | ろくわ     |
| 7  | 七羽                         | ななわ     |
| 8  | 八羽                         | はちわ     |
| 9  | 九羽                         | きゅうわ    |
| 10 | 十羽                         | じゅうわ    |
| ?  | 何羽                         | なんわ     |



あの三頭のうしの上にとりが六羽いる。

[There are six (wings of) birds on top of those three (heads of) cows over there.]

私たちは二頭のうまにのって、もりへ行った。鳥を三十羽ぐらい見た。

[We got on two horses, and went into the forest. We saw about 30 birds.]

## CHAPTER 7 KANJI • かんじ

This week, we will learn 18 simple, common kanji to balance out the tricky grammar!

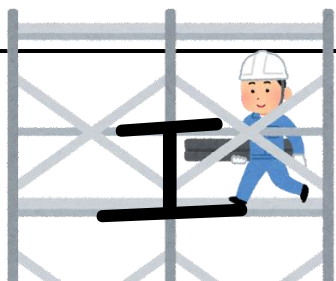
|   |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                       |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 的 | Meaning         | Target                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | See <b>Grammar Point 7.6!</b>                                         |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | まと                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | てき                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | まと<br>的                      もくてき<br>目的                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                       |
| 不 | Meaning         | Not, Un-                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ふ・ぶ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | ふ てきせつ                      ふ か のう<br>不適切                      不可能<br>ね ぶ そく                      ふ し ぎ<br>寝不足                      不思議                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                       |
| 可 | Meaning         | Can, Possible, Shouldn't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | かわいい and かわいそう<br>are both most commonly<br>written in hiragana only. |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | べき                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | か                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | か のうせい                      か わいそう<br>可能性                      可哀想<br>きょ か                      か わい<br>許可                      可愛い                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                       |
| 文 | Meaning         | Sentence, style, literature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ふみ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ぶん・もの                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | ぶんしょう                      ちゅうもん<br>文章                      注文<br>さくぶん                      もん く<br>作文                      文句<br>ぶんがく                      てんもんがく<br>文学                      天文学 (astronomy)<br>ぶん か                      もん ぶ しょう<br>文化                      文部省 (MEXT) |                                                                       |



MEXT is Japan's Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology



|   |             |                                  |                                                               |
|---|-------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 法 | Meaning     | Method, law                      |                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                  |                                                               |
|   | On yomi     | ほう                               |                                                               |
|   | Sample uses | ほうほう<br>方法<br>ほうりつ<br>法律 (law)   | ぶんほう<br>文法<br>ほうこう<br>方向 (direction)                          |
| 品 | Meaning     | Product, goods                   |                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    | しな                               |                                                               |
|   | On yomi     | ひん                               |                                                               |
|   | Sample uses | しなもの<br>品物<br>さくひん<br>作品         | しんぴん<br>新品 (new item)<br>じょうひん<br>上品                          |
| 海 | Meaning     | Ocean, sea                       |                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    | うみ                               |                                                               |
|   | On yomi     | かい                               |                                                               |
|   | Sample uses | うみ<br>海<br>かいがい<br>海外 (overseas) | ほっかいどう<br>北海道<br>かいすい<br>海水 (seawater)                        |
| 重 | Meaning     | Heavy                            |                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    | おも (い)                           |                                                               |
|   | On yomi     | じゅう                              |                                                               |
|   | Sample uses | おも<br>重い                         | たいじゅう<br>体重                                                   |
| 工 | Meaning     | Construction, craft              |                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                  |                                                               |
|   | On yomi     | こう・く                             |                                                               |
|   | Sample uses | こうじ<br>工事<br>こうじょう<br>工場         | じんこう<br>人工 (man-made, artificial)<br>こうがく<br>工学 (engineering) |



|   |             |                                                                                                                                    |
|---|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 地 | Meaning     | Ground, land                                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                                                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | ち・じ                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | <div>ち ず<br/>地図</div> <div>ちきゅう<br/>地球 (the planet earth)</div> <div>と ち<br/>土地</div> <div>じ しん<br/>地震</div>                       |
| 図 | Meaning     | Map                                                                                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    | はか (る)                                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | ず・と                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | <div>ち ず<br/>地図</div> <div>い と て き<br/>意図的</div> <div>と し ょ か ん<br/>図書館</div>                                                      |
| 用 | Meaning     | Errand, Use                                                                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    | もち (いる)                                                                                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | よう                                                                                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | <div>もち<br/>用いる</div> <div>よう と<br/>用途 (a use)</div> <div>よう じ<br/>用事</div>                                                        |
| 主 | Meaning     | Main, master                                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | ぬし・おも                                                                                                                              |
|   | On yomi     | す・しゅう・しゅ                                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses | <div>おも<br/>主に</div> <div>しゅ じん さ ま<br/>ご主人様</div> <div>せん ぎ ょ う し しゅ ふ<br/>専業主婦 (housewife)</div> <div>し しゅ ぎ<br/>主義 (-ism)</div> |
| 注 | Meaning     | Pour, concentrate                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | そそ (ぐ) ・つ (ぐ)                                                                                                                      |
|   | On yomi     | ちゅう                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | <div>そそ<br/>注ぐ</div> <div>ちゅう しゃ<br/>注射 (a medical shot)</div> <div>ちゅう も ん<br/>注文</div> <div>ちゅう い<br/>注意 (caution)</div>         |



|   |             |                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 代 | Meaning     | Age, fee, generation                                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    | か (わる) ・ か (える) ・ しろ                                                                                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | たい ・ だい                                                                                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | <div>じ だい<br/>時代</div> <div>げん だい    て き<br/>現代 (的)</div> <div>せ だい<br/>世代 (generation)</div> <div>げん だい    て き<br/>現代 (的)</div>        |
| 世 | Meaning     | Society, generation, world                                                                                                              |
|   | Kun yomi    | よ                                                                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | せ ・ せい                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses | <div>せ かい<br/>世界</div> <div>せい き<br/>世紀</div> <div>せ だい<br/>世代</div> <div>せ わ<br/>お世話</div>                                             |
| 台 | Meaning     | A stand, vehicle, machine                                                                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    | われ ・ うてな ・ つかさ                                                                                                                          |
|   | On yomi     | たい ・ だい                                                                                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | <div>たい ふう<br/>台風</div> <div>ぶ たい<br/>舞台 (stage)</div> <div>だい どころ<br/>台所</div> <div>だ い<br/>アイロン台 (ironing board)</div>                |
| 公 | Meaning     | Public                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | おおやけ                                                                                                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | こう                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses | <div>こう えん<br/>公園</div> <div>こう かい<br/>公開 (release publically)</div> <div>こう しき<br/>公式</div> <div>こう が い<br/>公害 (public nuisance)</div> |



In contrast with 公, 私 is often used to mean “private”, as in 私立学校 (しりつがっこう) vs 公立学校 (こうりつがっこう) for “private/public school”

## CHAPTER 7 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 7

### Exercise 7.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

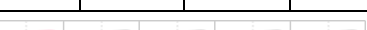
## 1. 的

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|---|--|
| 的            | 的 | 的 |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | ' | 丿 | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏' | 白的 | 的 |  |

## 2. 不

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 不            | 不 | 不 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 3. 可

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 可            | 可 | 可 |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 4. 文

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 文            | 文 | 文 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5. 法

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 法            | 法 | 法 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6. 品

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 品            | 品 | 品 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 7 | 口 | 口 | 口 | 口 | 口 | 口 |





## Exercise 7.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. どのちずをよんでも、こうえんがなかなかみつからない。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. らくなほうほうがなくても、ふかのうであつても、やってみたいとおもう。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. こんなにおもいぶんしょうをかいたことがいままでない。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. かれはじょうひんなくるまをなんだいもデザインしたよ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. うみにおそくついたせいで、ビーチのちかくにあるレストランがぜんぶしまつていてなにもちゅうもんすることができませんでした。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. このじだいにはいえをいっけんもかえないひとがおおくなっている。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. おもにカジュアルなイベントなのでスーツをきないですんだ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 7.3

Fill in each blank with the ~ても form from the word bank which makes the **most** sense.

じゃなくても のりおくれても のっても 行っても あっても  
勉強しても なくても 飲んでも おえなくても 書いても

1. 雨のせいで、時間が\_\_\_\_\_行けない。
2. どんなに\_\_\_\_\_英語がなかなか覚えられない。
3. コーヒーのおかげでエネルギーが\_\_\_\_\_仕事ができる。
4. わあ、くすりを\_\_\_\_\_かぜがなおりません。
5. 上手\_\_\_\_\_うたってもいいよ。カラオケだから。
6. このしよるいをはやく\_\_\_\_\_一時間かかると思う。
7. 今日中きょうじゅう\_\_\_\_\_少なくとも半分ぐらいやってください。
8. どこに\_\_\_\_\_マナーが大事ですよ。
9. タクシーに\_\_\_\_\_間にあいません。
10. 電車に\_\_\_\_\_タクシーが使えるからしんぱいしないで。

### Exercise 7.4

Place **せいで** or **おかげで** in each blank, as appropriate.

1. あなたの\_\_\_\_\_このプロジェクトがダメになった。
2. くらくなった\_\_\_\_\_, 何も見せません。
3. お金をかしてくれた\_\_\_\_\_, ひどいところからにげられた。
4. 友だちと十時間あそんだ\_\_\_\_\_, 朝になかなか起きられなかった。
5. いろいろな仕事をやってみた\_\_\_\_\_, 今の仕事が一番好きだと分かる。
6. お酒の\_\_\_\_\_きのうはたのしかった。でも、お酒の\_\_\_\_\_今日は大変だ。



### Exercise 7.5

Match each first half of a sentence with the second half that makes the *most* sense.

|      |                   |
|------|-------------------|
| こんなに | すてきなものをどこでかいましたか。 |
| そんなに | むずかしくなっても日本語が好きだ。 |
| あんなに | 古いふくを着るつもりはないよ。   |
| どんなに | おいところまで行きたくないです。  |

|                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| このなつとうが好きだ！なつとうが | こんなにおいしいと思わなかった！ |
| え？まりさんが大学をやめたの？  | そんなに高かったのですか。    |
| なつとうがきらいだ。       | あんなにがんばったのに。     |
| あなたが買ったジャケットは    | どんなに食べても好きにならない。 |

|      |                     |
|------|---------------------|
| こんなに | 食べたらおなかがいたくなりますよ。   |
| そんなに | あやまってもゆるしてあげません。    |
| あんなに | 飲んだのによっていない。かれはすごい。 |
| どんなに | おいしい物を今まで食べたことがない。  |

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| 手をあらわないで   | 海外りょこうをするのがあぶない。 |
| かれは何も言わないで | 六時まではたらいた。       |
| 一回もすわらないで  | 食べるのがダメです。       |
| 何もしらべないで   | 帰った。             |

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| 時間がなかったから  | 走らずにやせた。         |
| よく休んだので、   | ばんごはんを食べずに帰った。   |
| ダイエットのおかげで | 日本語で話さずにいられない。   |
| 日本に行ったら    | くすりを飲まずにかぜがなおった。 |

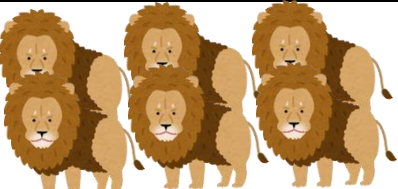
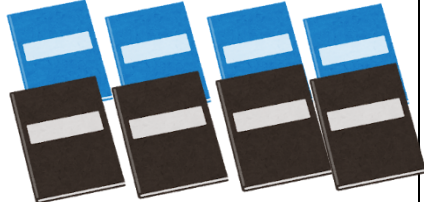
### Exercise 7.6

Change each verb into it's ~ずに form, or vice-versa.

|       |      |     |       |     |      |
|-------|------|-----|-------|-----|------|
| そうじする |      | うたう |       |     | しめずに |
|       | 行かずに |     | とかさずに | なおる |      |

### Exercise 7.7

Using hiragana, write the correct number+counter for the items you see.

|                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    |    |    |
|    |   |    |
|   |    |    |
|  |  |  |

### Exercise 7.8

Using a dictionary, look up 5 new words that use 的. In the blanks, try to use both the original word and the 的 form in one sentence or sentence pair (see **GP7.6** for examples).

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 7.1

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |                                                              |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 的            | 的 | 的 |  |  |  |  |  |  | general size balance across e<br>of the 10 free-hand attempt |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |                                                              |

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 不            | 不 | 不 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 可            | 可 | 可 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 文            | 文 | 文 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 法            | 法 | 法 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 品            | 品 | 品 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 7 | 口 | 口 | 口 | 口 | 口 | 口 | 口 |





## Exercise 7.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. どのちずをよんでも、こうえんがなかなかみつからない。

Rewrite: どの地図を読んでも、公園なかなか見つからない。

Translate: No matter what map I read, I can't find the park.

2. らくなほうほうがなくとも、ふかのうであって、やってみたいとおもう。

Rewrite: 楽な方法がなうても、不可能<sup>ふかのう</sup>であって、やってみたいと思う。

Translate: Even if there's no easy way, even if it's impossible, I want to try.

3. こんなにおもいぶんしょうをかいたことがいままでない。

Rewrite: こんなに重い文章を書いたことが今までない。

Translate: I have never, until now, written a sentence as heavy as this.

4. かれはじょうひんなくるまをなんだいもデザインしたよ。

Rewrite: 彼は上品な車を何台もデザインしたよ。

Translate: He has designed a large number of elegant cars.

5. うみにおそくついたせいで、ビーチのちかくにあるレストランがぜんぶしまっ  
てなにもちゅうもんすることができませんでした。

Rewrite: 海におそく着いたせいで、ビーチの近くにあるレストランが全部閉まっ  
て何も注文することができませんでした。

Translate: Because we arrived at the ocean late, the restaurants near the beach  
were all shut and we couldn't order anything.

6. このじだいにはいえをいっけんもかえないひとがおおくなっている。

Rewrite: この時代には家を一けんも買えない人が多くなっている。

Translate: In the current era, more and more people can't even buy one house.

7. おもにカジュアルなイベントなのでスーツをきないですんだ。

Rewrite: 主にカジュアルなイベントなのでスーツを着ないですんだ。

Translate: It's mostly a casual event, so I got by without wearing a suit.

### Exercise 7.3

Fill in each blank with the ~ても form from the word bank which makes the **most** sense.

じゃなくても のりおくれても のっても 行っても あっても  
勉強しても なくとも 飲んでも おえなくとも 書いても

1. 雨のせいで、時間が **あっても** 行けない。  
Because of the rain, even if I have time I can't go.
2. どんなに **勉強しても** 英語がなかなか覚えられない。  
No matter how much I study, I just can't memorize English.
3. コーヒーのおかげでエネルギーが **なくとも** 仕事ができる。  
Thanks to coffee, even if I have no energy I can do my job.
4. わあ、くすりを **飲んでも** かぜがなおりません。  
Ugh, even though I take medicine my cold doesn't get better.
5. 上手 **じゃなくても** うたってもいいよ。カラオケだから。  
Even if you're not good it's okay to sing. It's karaoke, after all.
6. このしよるいをはやく **書いても** 一時間かかると思う。  
Even if you write these documents quickly, it will take an hour I think.
7. 今日 <sup>じゅう</sup>中 **おえなくとも** 少なくとも半分ぐらいやってください。  
Even if you don't finish today, at least do around half please.
8. どこに **行っても** マナーが大事ですよ。  
No matter where you go, manners are important.
9. タクシーに **のっても** 間にあいません。  
Even if we take a taxi, we won't make it in time.
10. 電車に **のりおくれても** タクシーが使えるからしんぱいしないで。  
Even if we miss the train, we can use a taxi so don't worry.

### Exercise 7.4

Place **せいで** or **おかげで** in each blank, as appropriate.

1. あなたの **せいで** このプロジェクトがダメになった。  
It's your fault this project went belly up.
2. くらくなった **せいで**、何も見せません。  
Because it's dark, I can't see a thing.
3. お金をかしてくれた **おかげで**、ひどいところからにげられた。  
Thanks to you lending me some cash, I was able to escape a horrible place.
4. 友だちと十時間あそんだ **せいで**、朝になかなか起きられなかった。  
Because I played with my friends for 10 hours, I had trouble getting up this morning.
5. いろいろな仕事をやってみた **おかげで**、今の仕事が一番好きだと分かる。  
Because I've tried a lot of jobs, I know my current job is the one I like the most.
6. お酒の **おかげで** きのうはたのしかった。でも、お酒の **せいで** 今日は大変だ。  
Thanks to booze, yesterday was fun. And it's booze's fault that today is rough.

I suppose this could be **おかげ** if the darkness prevented you from seeing something gross.

I think the combinations below make the most sense across all four choices. Some prompts may match multiple answers, but would block other options if you do so. If you found another combination that works, sorry that I didn't sense.

## Exercise 7.5

Match each first

|      |                   |
|------|-------------------|
| こんなに | すてきなものをどこでかいましたか。 |
| そんなに | むずかしくなっても日本語が好きだ。 |
| あんなに | 古いふくを着るつもりはないよ。   |
| どんなに | とおいところまで行きたくないです。 |

You will be wearing the clothes, so they are near you, but you are asking about the "nice thing" so they are near the person you're speaking to. The place is then far away, while only "how hard it gets" works with "to any extent".

|                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| このなっとうが好きだ！なっとうが | こんなにおいしいと思わなかった！ |
| え？まりさんが大学をやめたの？  | そんなに高かったのですか。    |
| なっとうがきらいだ。       | あんなにがんばったのに。     |
| あなたが買ったジャケットは    | どんなに食べても好きにならない。 |

You are enjoying the natto, so it's near you, but Mari isn't you or the listener, so her thing is far away. In contrast, the listener bought the jacket (and probably said the price), so *sonna*, while "no matter how much I eat I don't like it" matches "I hate natto" only.

The first sentence makes sense if you're eating the food now, so *konna*, but the second you are cautioning someone, so the act of eating is "near" them. The third talks about a drunk third party, so away from both, and then the last has the "no matter how much" meaning so we use *donna*.

|      |                     |
|------|---------------------|
| こんなに | 食べたらおなかがいたくなりますよ。   |
| そんなに | あやまってもゆるしてあげません。    |
| あんなに | 飲んだのによっていない。かれはすごい。 |
| どんなに | おいしい物を今まで食べたことがない。  |

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| 手をあらわないで   | 海外りょこうをするのがあぶない。 |
| かれは何も言わないで | 六時まではたらいた。       |
| 一回もすわらないで  | 食べるのがダメです。       |
| 何もしらべないで   | 帰った。             |

Don't eat without washing your hands. He went home without saying anything. I worked until 6 without sitting, and it's dangerous to travel abroad without looking anything up.

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| 時間がなかったから  | 走らずにやせた。         |
| よく休んだので、   | ばんごはんを食べずに帰った。   |
| ダイエットのおかげで | 日本語で話さずにいられない。   |
| 日本に行ったら    | くすりを飲まずにかぜがなおった。 |

I had no time, so I went home without eating dinner. I rested a lot so I got better without medicine. I dieted so I lost weight without running. And if you go to Japan, you must speak some Japanese.

## Exercise 7.6

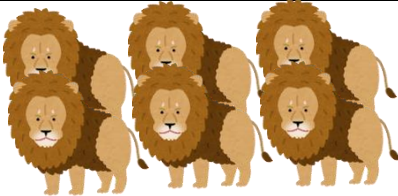
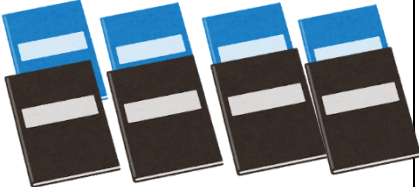
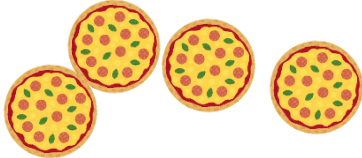
Change each verb into its ~ずに form, or vice-versa.

|       |        |     |       |     |       |
|-------|--------|-----|-------|-----|-------|
| そうじする | そうじせずに | うたう | うたわずに | しめる | しめずに  |
| 行く    | 行かずに   | とかす | とかさずに | なおる | なおらずに |



## Exercise 7.7

Using hiragana, write the correct number+counter for the items you see.

|                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    |    |    |
| よんだい                                                                                | さんけん                                                                                | ごわ                                                                                    |
|    |    |    |
| さんびき                                                                                | ろくとう                                                                                | にほん                                                                                   |
|    |    |    |
| はっさつ                                                                                | よんまい                                                                                | いっとう                                                                                  |
|  |  |  |
| いっぴき or いちわ                                                                         | にだい                                                                                 | じゅっぱい                                                                                 |

## Exercise 7.8

Using a dictionary, look up 5 new words that use 的. In the box write the original word and the 的 form in one sentence or sentence pattern.

These are just models, your answers should differ. Don't copy them, but do use them as inspiration though if you're struggling with the basic concept. I recommend keeping the basic sentences simple, but don't be shy using a dictionary to get the verbs/nouns that you need.

- しょうらしい的な話をしょうらいになってからやろう。  
Let's talk about future things once it becomes the future.
- すべての社会には社会的な問題がある。  
Every society has it's own social problems.
- けんこうになりたいのでけんこう的な生かつをはじめようとしている。  
I want to get healthy so I'm starting a healthy life(style).
- 一時から四時までこの一時的なたいさくをやってみよう。  
Let's try this temporary measure from 1 until 4.
- げきの的なげきだった。  
It was a dramatic play.

## CHAPTER EIGHT・第八章

### VOCABULARY・ごい

#### Nouns

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| あたりまえ       | obvious, commonsense           |
| うけつけ        | reception                      |
| おれい         | expression of thanks           |
| おん社         | your company (polite)          |
| かいぎ         | work meeting                   |
| かんばん        | (a store's) sign, billboard    |
| しっぱい        | failure                        |
| しゃちょう<br>社長 | company president, director    |
| しゅっちょう      | business trip                  |
| しょくば        | workplace                      |
| しよるい        | documents                      |
| じむしつ        | office                         |
| しりょう        | materials, documents           |
| せいこう        | success                        |
| ふつう         | normal, ordinary               |
| ぶか<br>部下    | one's subordinates             |
| ぶちょう<br>部長  | section head, section director |
| へい社         | our company (humble)           |
| りゅう学生       | study abroad student           |

#### Compound verbs

|         |                                        |
|---------|----------------------------------------|
| えんりよする  | to refrain from doing                  |
| かいこする   | to fire (from job)                     |
| しじする    | to order, instruct                     |
| してきする   | to point out                           |
| しっぱいする  | to fail                                |
| しょうたいする | to invite                              |
| せいこうする  | to succeed                             |
| だいひょうする | to represent (e.g., a nation or group) |

#### Phrases

|       |                    |
|-------|--------------------|
| くびにする | to fire (from job) |
|-------|--------------------|

#### う Verbs

|       |                        |
|-------|------------------------|
| おこる   | to occur, to happen    |
| おもいだす | to remember, recall    |
| こまる   | to be troubled [intra] |
| すすむ   | to advance [intrans]   |
| なくす   | to lose (an item)      |
| まねく   | to invite              |

#### る Verbs

|      |                    |
|------|--------------------|
| すすめる | to advance [trans] |
| よける  | to dodge           |

#### Adverbs

|               |                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------|
| ぐたいてき<br>具体的に | concretely, tangibly, in specific detail |
| ぜったいに         | absolutely                               |
| たしかに          | certainly                                |
| なんとなく         | somehow                                  |

#### な adjectives

|         |                      |
|---------|----------------------|
| いほう     | illegal              |
| こうへい    | fair                 |
| せいじつ    | honest, sincere      |
| だいひょうてき | representative       |
| びんぼう    | poor (financially)   |
| ふこうへい   | unfair               |
| むこう     | invalid (pass, etc.) |
| ゆうこう    | valid (pass, etc.)   |

**Grammar Point 8.0: A note about politeness**

In this chapter, we are going to introduce the speech styles known as 尊敬語 (そんけいご) and 謙讓語 (けんじょうご). These two words are often respectively translated as “honorific” and “humble” language. There is some truth to these labels. However, it is important to remember that the labels we give styles of speech are not absolute. Consider vulgarity in English. Do some people use vulgarity to be vulgar? Certainly. Is the use of vulgarity considered vulgar? Often, yes. But does “a desire to be vulgar” or “inherent vulgarness” explain the totality of reasons why people swear? Of course not.

So yes, “honorific” language is often used to honor, and “humble” language is often used to express one’s lower status. But “honorific” language can also convey distance, coldness, threats, or insincere flattery. And there’s always a chance that what one person sees as “honorific” another sees as pretention designed to make the *speaker*, not the person they are speaking to, look honorable. Sarcastic use of honorifics is also well studied and recognized in basically every language that has them. “Humble” language can then also be used sarcastically, perfunctorily, or to show off one’s mastery of the style (and therefore with little actual humility). Too much “humble” language can also be viewed as servile or passive aggressive, even if not the intent. And finally, a lot of people just use these terms unthinkingly as part of their job, with no actual polite or humble intention, and understandings of what “honorific”/“humble” language look like change rapidly over time.

Throughout this chapter, I will use the terms like “honorific”, “respect” and “humble” as though they were not problematic for convenience’s sake. But please do not forget that these labels are just labels. Knowing 尊敬語 and 謙讓語 using them properly is important, and can really smooth relationships when used well. Even a little bit, especially as a non-native speaker, goes a long way. But over-use can feel just as awkward or inappropriate as excess casualness. In other words, an email with the *right* amount of 尊敬語 and 謙讓語 use feels impressive, official, and formal; an email with too much feels terrifying, impersonal, and cold. A conversation with your friends at a bar filled with 尊敬語 and 謙讓語 then just feels bizarre, and no one will leave thinking you were incredibly polite or humble. Likewise, if you see a character in your favorite anime or manga who always uses 尊敬語, remember that there is no such thing as a speech style with one universal meaning. The author may be intending to showcase the character as polite... but they could also want them to appear cold and haughty, or even contemptuous, bitingly sarcastic, or cruel.

In closing, I’d like to note that I have seen discourse online saying that 尊敬語 and 謙讓語 are “not necessary” or “a waste of time”. To this, I would heartily disagree. Proper use of both styles in the right contexts never fails to impress, and you *must* learn these if you ever wish to work at a Japanese company. I’m sure most people who learn Japanese do so to talk with friends and engage with media, and therefore are most keen on the casual forms. But every Japanese speech style opens more doors. You can’t whip out a メッチャやばいぞ and get along in every situation, unfortunately; limiting yourself to casual forms will limit the interactions you can do.

## Grammar Point 8.1: The “honorific” register そんけいご 尊敬語

While all forms of *keigo* are often described as difficult, the fundamental concept is quite simple: use one word/pattern instead of another. Our first grammar point is an overview of how to use 尊敬語, or the “honorific” register, which replaces words to show respect.

尊敬語 are honorifics used to refer to actions made by people who are “above” you in social status, and/or who you wish to show respect to. However, just like the words for family members, you must always use 尊敬語 *outwards*. So while it’s fine to use 尊敬語 to talk to your boss about their actions, or when talking about your boss’s actions respectfully to someone in your company, you should not use 尊敬語 to talk about your boss’s actions to an employee of a *different* company. In this case, your boss would be your in-group, and you should be using 尊敬語 to refer to the actions of people in the *other* company instead.

In many cases, using 尊敬語 just involves changing the verb you use into another verb. For instance, when speaking politely, the verbs いる (to be), 行く, and 来る all become いらっしゃる. This verb conjugates into polite form irregularly as いらっしゃいます.



| Plain Form | 尊敬語 (Plain) | 尊敬語 (Polite) |
|------------|-------------|--------------|
| いる         | いらっしゃる      | いらっしゃいます     |
| 行く         |             |              |
| 来る         |             |              |

When speaking in honorifics, you should always end your sentences in polite form. However, the plain form of 尊敬語 can appear *within* polite sentences, as plain form is simply necessary for some grammar points (see example 3 below).

Let’s look at some sentences showing this verb in action. Note how the translations show that in many cases, without any surrounding context, the meaning can be ambiguous.

部長はいらっしゃいましたか。

[Has the head of department arrived/left? • Was the head of department there?]

私は五時に行くのですが、何時にいらっしゃいますか。

[I’m planning on going at 5, but when will you go • you come • you be there?]

社長はおくれていらっしゃるそうです。

[It seems as though the president of our company will come/be late.]

先生しかいらっしゃいませんでした。

[Only the teacher was there • Only the teacher went/came.]

Note how the ~いる in the ~ている form conjugates into ~いらっしゃる.

This sentence would be said to co-workers, NOT customers or people from a different company.



The verbs in this table are similarly replaced by other words in the same way:

| Plain Form | Sonkeigo (Plain) | Sonkeigo (Polite) |
|------------|------------------|-------------------|
| する         | なさる              | なさいます             |
| 食べる        | めしあがる            | めしあがります           |
| 飲む         |                  |                   |
| 見る         | ごらんになる           | ごらんになります          |
| 言う         | おっしゃる            | いっしゃいます           |
| くれる        | くださる             | くださります            |
| 寝る         | お休みになる           | おやすみになります         |
| いる         | いらっしゃる           | いらっしゃいます          |
| しぬ         | おなくなる            | おなくなります           |
| 着る         | おめしになる           | おめしになります          |
| すわる        | おかけになる           | おかけになります          |
| 知っている      | ごぞんじだ            | ごぞんじです            |

なさる also replaces する for all compound verbs.

These three verbs are う verbs, but conjugate into the polite form irregularly. This does not effect their other conjugations, like the plain past or ~て forms.

This is the only form which utilizes です.



To illustrate these differences, let's contrast "normal" verbs against their honorific forms.

To explicitly illustrate honorifics as a grammar point, I have over-literally translated the 尊敬語 throughout this chapter. **Do not do this if you become a translator.**

今日は何をなさいますか。私は多分日本語を勉強します。

[What will you honorably do? I'll probably do Japanese study.]

昨日めしあがったお寿司はおいしかったですか。私もいつか食べてみたいです。

[Was the sushi you honorably ate yesterday good? I want to try it too sometime.]

ごぞんじですか。先生がそうおっしゃいましたとケビンさんは言いました。

[Do you honorably know? Kevin said that you (= the teacher) honorably said that.]

すいせんじょうを書いてくださって、本当にありがとうございました。

[Thank you for honorably doing me the favor of writing a recommendation letter.]

昨日はよくお休みになりましたか。私は雨のせいでなかなか寝られませんでした。

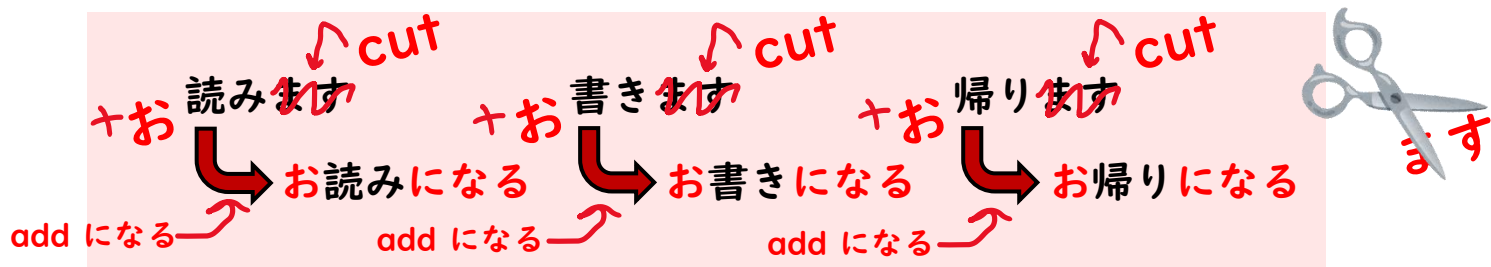
[Did you honorably sleep well yesterday? I couldn't really sleep due to the rain.]

あ、私は知りません。先生はごぞんじですか。

[Oh, I don't know. Do you honorably know, sensei?]



For most verbs that are not listed on the prior tables, a simple conjugation pattern applies: reduce the verb down to it's stem, and then add お~ in front and ~になる after. Further conjugation is added to ~になる.



Let's compare some “normal” verbs vs. their 尊敬語 forms created with this pattern:

This pattern can be used for words on the prior page (食べになる, for instance), but is not recommend. Some, such as しぬ, would sound very odd. People may think you made an error.

私は本を書きました。

[I wrote a book.]

これは私が書いた本です。

[This is the book I wrote.]

これをいつ使いますか。

[When will you use this?]

先生は本をお書きになりました。

[The teacher honorably wrote a book.]

これは先生がお書きになった本です。

[This is the book the teacher honorably wrote.]

これをいつお使いになりますか。

[When will you honorably use this?]



For these kinds of verbs that don't have a different 尊敬語 word, their honorific ~ている form can be made through using the “normal” verb in its ~ている ending but conjugating the final ~いる as ~いらっしゃる, changing the ~お[verb stem]になる form to ~になっている, or a combination of both.

Out of these three options, the ~になっている version is considered a little more formal and/or polite than the ~ていらっしゃる form, and the combined ~ていらっしゃる form is significantly more polite than the rest (but can therefore often be “too much”).

まだ使っていらっしゃいますのでちょっと待ってください。

[They (who are above us in status) are still honorably using it so please wait a bit.]

先生は本をお書きになっているのですか。

[Teacher, are you honorably writing a book?]

社長が今レポートをお読みになっていらっしゃいます。

[The company president is currently honorably read-(honorably)-ing the report.]

The combined form is actually believed to be wrong by many people (it's not) because it looks like “double keigo (see later in this section)”. I therefore often recommend not using it, as not only is it often “too” formal, people might think you're making a mistake.





In contrast, for verbs that have their own 尊敬語 form, that special 尊敬語 form is preferred over the ~ていらっしゃる form for “honorably [verb]ing”. However, both forms are possible, and can be combined (with the same potential to be “too much” as before).

先生は何を勉強 **なさっていますか**。

[Teacher, what are you **studying**?]

先生は何を勉強して **いらっしゃいますか**。

[Same sentence but *slightly* less preferred.]

先生は何を勉強 **なさっていらっしゃいますか**。

[Same sentence as above but potentially *too* polite, appearing like an error.]



**めしあがっている**ので待ってください。

[Someone (above both of us in status) is currently **honorably eating**, so please wait.]

**めしあがっていらっしゃる**ので待ってください。

[Same sentence as above but potentially too polite, appearing like an error.]

**ごぞんじですか**。あ、しつれいしました。 **ごぞんじでいらっしゃいますか**。

[Do you **know (polite)**? Ah, sorry that was rude. Do you **know (polite polite)**?]



I'm being a bit silly here to stress the difference. Pretend the speaker is talking to someone who gets really mad if they aren't shown the absolute upmost linguistic respect. **ごぞんじです** itself is not rude at all, and far more normal/common than **ごぞんじでいらっしゃる**.

Another form of honorifics then involves distinct conjugations of any “normal” verb. Let's call this the 尊敬語 Pattern 2 for simplicity's sake. As always, the conjugation depends on verb types, and our two irregular verbs have patterns which have to be memorized:

| Plain | 尊敬語 Special Word | 尊敬語 Pattern 2 |
|-------|------------------|---------------|
| する    | なさる              | される           |
| くる    | いらっしゃる           | こられる          |

For all る verbs, just take the final ~る and replace it with ~られる. This looks the exact same as the potential (“able to”) form we learned in **Grammar Point 3.1**.

尊敬語 1

**めしあがる**

**お見つけになる**

**おしめになる**

**おめしになる**

尊敬語 2

食べる  
↓  
食べられる

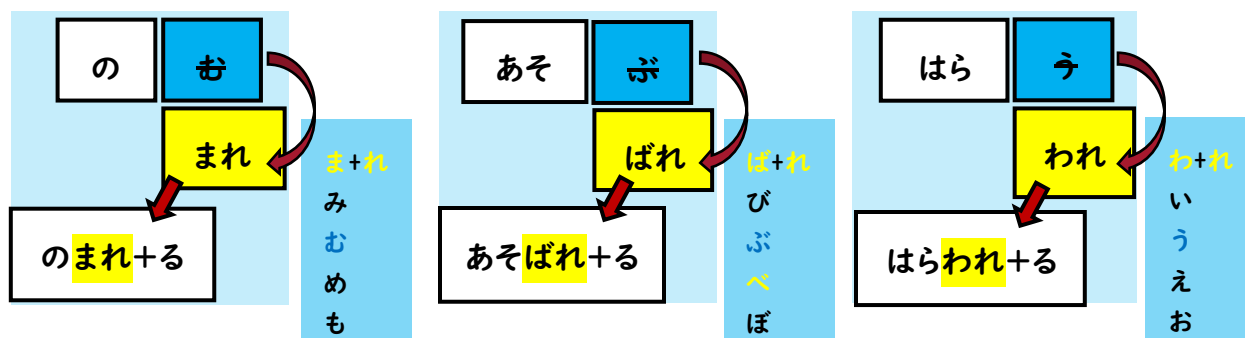
見つける  
↓  
見つけられる

しめる  
↓  
しめられる

着る  
↓  
着られる

This *also* looks just like the passive, see GP9.1.

Finally, for う verbs, change their final sound to the ~あ sound with the same starting consonant (just like you are about to negate them, including the ~あ to ~わ change), and then add ~れる.



The 尊敬語 Pattern 2 turns all verbs into る verbs for further conjugation. The 尊敬語 Pattern 2 can be conjugated into the ~ている form, but should not be combined with 尊敬語 Pattern 1, as in 食べられていらっしゃる (食べられている is correct; see the first example below). The 尊敬語 Pattern 2 is also sometimes less preferred as (1) it is slightly less polite than 尊敬語 Pattern 1, and (2) it can sometimes be confused with the Potential Form (for る Verbs, see **GP3.1**) or the Passive Form (for all verbs, see **GP9.1**).

おもしろそうなほんですね。何を**読ま**れて**い**るのですか。

[That's a interesting looking book. What are you **honorably** **reading**?]

あれは田中部長が**買**われ**た**新しいカバンじゃないですか。

[Isn't that the bag that Department Head Tanaka **honorably** **bought**?]

明日は何を**さ**れ**ま**すか。

[What will you **honorably** **do** tomorrow?]



You also must not use both 尊敬語 patterns within one verb. This is known as 二重敬語 or “double keigo” and is a common but very incorrect error both Japanese learners and natives make.

今は何をお読みに**な**られ**ま**すか。

[What are you honorably reading?

**By the way, I'm not good at keigo.**]

The verb お読みに**なる** is already polite, as it uses 尊敬語 Pattern 1. Going further and changing the **なる** into a “polite” form via 尊敬語 Pattern 2 is wrong. Do one keigo pattern once, and then move on.

This is why the 読まれています form created by Pattern 2 should never be followed by Pattern 1 to create 読まれていらっしゃいます。

The only exception here is おなくなる, as this is actually a euphemistic replacement for しぬ rather than 尊敬語, strictly speaking. So you can use おなくなりになる or おなくなれました to speak more politely, as odd as they may sound, but not both (as in おなくなりになれる, as that *does* combine the two patterns).





Finally, 尊敬語 Pattern 2 does not allow you to attach verbs other than ~ている to the end. So do not use 尊敬語 Pattern 2 with verbs like ~くれる・くださる・ください. It would be extremely inappropriate to say 買われてくれました for “bought for me” or 買われてください for “please buy”. To show thanks for an action, use [normal verb in て form] くださる.

See GP8.3!

### Grammar Point 8.1.1: “Honorific” requests

Our final trick for using 尊敬語 is how to make super-polite requests. The ~てください form you’ve learned earlier is, of course, far from impolite. And you can absolutely use it with the 尊敬語 “replacement” verbs you learned earlier to make requests politer.



どうぞ、めし上がってください。

[Please, go ahead and honorably eat.]

お疲れになっていますか。ぜひ、ここでお休みになってください。

[Are you tired? By all means, please honorably rest here.]

ごらんください is also used.

このしよるいをじゅんびしましたが、時間がある時にごらんになってください。

[I’ve prepared these documents, so please honorably look when you have time.]

For verbs which don’t have their own special 尊敬語 version, we create polite requests with a simple pattern that works for all verbs besides compound verbs (verbs like 勉強する which are made via adding +する to a noun). The pattern mirrors 尊敬語 Pattern 1: reduce the verb down to it’s stem, and then add お in front and ください after.

+お 読みます cut  
→ お読みください  
add ください

+お 書きます cut  
→ お書きください  
add ください

Let’s look at a few examples of this request form:

お気をつけてお帰りください。

[Please take care on your honorable way home!]

今日はお帰りになる前に小林さんとお話しください。

[Before you go home today, please honorably speak with Kobayashi.]

It is best not to use the ~お[verb stem]になる from Pattern 1 with ~ください. Forms like お休みになってください are correct, but this is because their ~になる comes from a special 尊敬語 form, not through 尊敬語 Pattern 1.

Pattern 2 should NEVER be used with ください. これを書かれてください is 100% out.



For compound verbs created via attaching +する to a noun, there are two 尊敬語 request forms. In the first, you attach お~ to the front of the verb, change する to なさる, and then conjugate into the ~てください form. This pattern is mostly used for native Japanese nouns, but also is applied to some *kango* loans like そうじ as you can see here:

どうぞ、ゆっくりお買い物なさってください。

[By all means, please honorably do shopping at your own pace.]

じゃ、楽しくおそうじなさってください。

[Well then, do enjoy honorably doing your cleaning!]



In contrast, for most *kango* you instead must (you can't choose) add ご in front and ください after. We do not use なさる here. There are a small number of nouns which use this pattern with お though, with お電話ください being the most common by far.

いつか、ここまでいらっしゃったらごれんらくください。

[If you ever honorably make it to here, please honorably contact me.]

何かがあったらお電話ください。

[If anything comes up, please honorably call me.]

たいせつなしよるいをわたしましたのでごかくにんください。

[I've attached some important documents so please honorably confirm.]



Note that these forms are different from ~くださる, the 尊敬語 of the verb ~くれる. This verb shows respect to the person giving you something or doing something for you. You may attach ~くださる to a normal verb in the ~て form or via the [お+verb stem+ください] pattern, but adding it to something that's already *keigo* is generally seen as too much.

教えてくださってありがとうございました。

[Thank you for honorably doing me the favor of teaching me.]

お教えくださってありがとうございました。

[Same as above, perhaps a bit more formal/stuffy.]

お教えになったださってありがとうございました。[Way too much *keigo*.]



As always, our rules in Japanese are consistent, but we can't mix them up. Something like お教えてくださって is wrong, as it doesn't match either pattern. Instead, it attempts to jam them together.

## Grammar Point 8.2: The “humble” register けんじょうご 謙譲語

A key point about the “honorific” 尊敬語 forms we just learned is that you must use them to refer to the actions of other people. One common error many learners of Japanese – and indeed many Japanese people – make is using 尊敬語 to talk about themselves or their in-group. Compare the two sentences below. The first is great! The second is... not.

今日は何をお教えになりましたか。

[What did you **honorably teach** today?]

今日、私は日本語をお教えになりました。

[Today, I **honorably taught** Japanese. **I'm amazing, and honoring myself.**]



In contrast, when using honorifics to speak politely about your own actions or the actions of your in-group, you need to switch to what are called the “humble” 謙譲語 forms. Just like how you use 父 or つま to refer to your own family members but not someone else's, 謙譲語 should not be used to people above you in status.

Just like 尊敬語, some verbs change into new verbs when you are speaking humbly. Let's start with いただく. This verb, like いらっしゃる, stands in for many “normal” verbs.

| Plain Form | 謙譲語 (Plain) | 謙譲語 (Polite) |
|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 食べる        | いただく        | いただきます       |
| 飲む         |             |              |
| もらう        |             |              |

As with 尊敬語, you should generally end your sentences in polite form when speaking humbly. However, the plain form of 謙譲語 verbs can appear *within* polite sentences, as plain form is simply necessary for some grammar points.

There is one other key point about 謙譲語 which we should discuss before looking at some examples. While you can almost always show respect to someone *else's* actions, you should only use humble speech when the act you do benefits, relates to, or was enabled by the person you're speaking to. Compare the two sentences below. The first is great, as the coffee will be **given to you**. The second is not, as the act of you eating a sandwich has no relationship to your boss, nor are you showing respect and thanks to an outside group.

社長がいつもめし上がっているコーヒーはとてもおいしそうです。  
いつか少しいただけますか。

[President, the coffee you are always **honorably drinking** looks really delicious.  
**Could I humbly drink/receive** some sometime?]

The け is not a typo, it's the potential (“can”) form.

部長は今日何をめし上がりますか。私はサンドイッチをいただきます。

[What will you **honorably eat** today director? I'll **humbly eat** a sandwich **and** use *kenjougo* at a time when it is not necessary to.]

食べます is correct here.



Here's a list of other verbs which have a unique 謙譲語 form.

Using ~さしあげる with て form verbs to mean "humbly do for you" is actually often seen as impolite as it sounds arrogant or self-praising. Just saying "I will (humbly) verb" is preferred instead.

私は「NAME」ともうします is a common polite introduction.

You can change the する attached to these forms to いたす without creating "double keigo". It can be seen as "too polite" though.

しつれいする also works for "I'm leaving"

| Plain Form | 謙譲語 (Plain)   | 謙譲語 (Polite)     |
|------------|---------------|------------------|
| する         | いたす           | いたします            |
| 行く         | まいる           | まいります            |
| 来る         |               |                  |
| いる         | おる            | おります             |
| 言う         | もうす<br>もうし上げる | もうします<br>もうし上げます |
| 会う         | お目にかかる        | お目にかかります         |
| 見る         | はいけんする        | はいけんします          |
| 借りる        | はいしゃくする       | はいしゃくする          |
| 分かる        | しょうちする        | しょうちします          |
| あげる        | さしあげる         | さしあげます           |
| 聞く         | うかがう          | うかがいます           |
| たずねる       |               |                  |
| 知っている      | ぞんじる          | ぞんじます            |
| 読む         | はいどくする        | はいどくします          |
| 帰る         | おいとまする        | おいとまします          |
| 思う         | ぞんじる          | ぞんじる             |

Again, I need to stress that these verbs should only be used to describe your actions or the actions of your in-group (which changes based on context). Compare the sentences below:

私これからはおん社へまいりますので少しお待ちください。

[I will humbly go soon to your honorable business, so please honorably wait.]

田中部長がこれからはおん社へまいりますので少しお待ちください。

[Tanaka, who is my boss but my in-group right now since I'm talking to someone in another company, will humbly go soon to your honorable business, so please honorably wait.]

田中部長、いつあの会社へまいりますか。

[Director Tanaka, when will you humbly go to that company? Also, I'm fired, right?]

いらっしゃいますか or 行かれますか is correct here (even if the outside party was present, as you aren't talking to them). Even 行きますか is better.



To change other verbs into their 謙譲語 forms, we have another simple pattern. Add お~ to the front of the verb, cut off ~ます to create the stem, and then add +する.

+お さがし~~ます~~  
 ↓  
 おさがし~~する~~  
 add する

+お 書き~~ます~~  
 ↓  
 お書き~~する~~  
 add する

Like before, する can become いたす for extra politeness, but it's not mandatory.

I'm a broken record now, but only use 謙譲語 for actions directed *at* someone above you in status or done *for* them. So out of this pair of sentences, only the first one is correct.



先生がなくしたさいふをおさがしします。

[I will **humbly look for** the wallet **you** lost, sensei.]

私のさいふが見つかりません。ちょっとおさがしします。

[I can't find my wallet. I'll **humbly look** for a bit, **and I should review my keigo too.**]

Don't forget that Japanese often uses intransitive verbs where English would use "can" verbs. を見つけられません is okay here, but が見つかりません is common.

Let's look at some 謙譲語 examples, taken from both the chart and the conjugation pattern.



私はけいごの使い方がぜんぜん **sonjite**おりません。 **gozonji**ですか。

[I **humbly don't know** how to use keigo at all. Do you **honorably know**?

きのう、かんとくが **director** お作りになった映画を **haiken**しました。

[Yesterday, I **humbly watched** the movie you **honorably made**, director.

すみません。今日は会社におりませんが明日 **mai**ります。

[My apologies. I'm **not humbly at** the company today but I'll **humbly go** tomorrow.]

きのう **hai**しゃくした本をあした **okaeshi**するつもりですがだいじょうぶですか。

[I'll **humbly return** the book I **humbly borrowed** from you tomorrow, is that okay?]

六日に **uka**がってもいいですか。 **otashi**したいことがいくつありますので。

[May I **humbly visit** you o the 6<sup>th</sup>? There are a few things I want to **humbly discuss**.]

今じゅんびして **ori**ますのですぐ **ookuri**します。

[I'm **humbly** preparing them now so I'll **humbly send** them soon.]



Okay, sure, technically "existing" is not done *for* or *at* someone but don't worry about it. You humbly exist.

~ている becomes ~ておる. If the verb is already in 謙譲語 this is not required, but something like いただいておる isn't wrong either.



You can also make compound verbs into 謙譲語 by attaching either ご or お to the front, depending on the noun, and then adding ~する or ~いたす. It would be impossible to list all compound nouns here, so the best strategy to know if you need ご or お is to keep your ear open. Generally, *kango* take ご, and *wago* take お but there are exceptions, such as お電話する. These often occur when the noun in the compound verb is very commonplace.

はい、しょうちしました。明日までごかくにんいたします。

[Yes, I **humbly understand**. I will **humbly confirm** by tomorrow.]

まもなくお電話しますので、ちょっとお待ちください。

[(Someone lower than you) will **humbly call** soon, so **please honorably wait**.]

来週の前にごれんらくいたします。その時ごせつめいいたします。

[I will **humbly contact** you before next week. At that time I'll **humbly explain**.]



### Grammar Point 8.3: Avoiding common mistakes with honorifics

Now that we have covered 尊敬語 and 謙譲語, it's time to go over a few mistakes that both beginner learners and Japanese people often make. This list is not exhaustive, but it will hopefully help you avoid the most common pitfalls.

The first issue was already mentioned: “double keigo”. To review, we have three distinct forms for making a 尊敬語 honorific, divided between two major strategies:

- Change a “normal” word into it’s special “honorific” version. Such as:
  - 食べます ➡ めしあがります
  - 言います ➡ おっしゃいます
  - 思います ➡ ごぞんじです
- When there is no “honorific” version, use one of two patterns instead:
  1. Add お to the verb’s stem, and then add になる, as in:
    - 話す ➡ お話になる
    - 書く ➡ お書きになる
  2. Change the verb’s final sound via the [~areru] pattern
    - 話す ➡ 話される
    - 書く ➡ 書かれる



These patterns are all ways of using language politely, with the first two being somewhat more polite than the third. But none of them should be mixed together within a single verb. Doing so creates “double keigo” which is incorrect and therefore potentially impolite.

The following are examples of double-keigo mistakes:

ポイント  
2倍

Adding Pattern 1 or 2 to a “special word”:

- 何を**お**めしあがり**に**なり**ま**したか。 [Wrong. Applies Pattern 1 to an honorific]  
何をめしあがり**ま**したか。 [Correct. Uses the special 尊敬語 for 食べる]
- いつおっしや**ら**れ**ま**したか。 [Wrong. Applies Pattern 2 to a 尊敬語 word]  
いつおっしや**い**ましたか。 [Correct. Uses the special 尊敬語 for 言う]

Adding Pattern 2 to the ~なる at the end of Pattern 1, or vice versa:

- 先生がお書きにな**ら**れた本です。 [Wrong. Applies Pattern 2 to Pattern 1]  
先生が**お**書かれ**に**な**っ**た本です。 [Wrong. Applies Pattern 1 to Pattern 2]  
先生がお書きにな**っ**た本です。 [Correct. Uses Pattern 1 only for 書く]  
先生が書かれた本です。 [Correct. Uses Pattern 2 only for 書く]

Also, don't use Pattern 1 instead of a special word when one is available. Some guides might stress that it isn't formally “wrong”, but it almost always sounds quite odd. In contrast, using Pattern 2 over a special word sounds okay but is less polite.

- どこに**い**らっしゃ**い**ますか。 [Best form of “where are you honorably going?”]  
どこに**行**かれ**ま**すか。 [Less polite but still polite form, not horrible]  
どこに**お**行き**に**なり**ま**すか。 [Not *technically* wrong but super rare and bad vibes]

Another source of errors is people using 謙譲語 with 尊敬語 Pattern 1 or Pattern 2 to try to make “humble” terms “honorific”. This is wrong, and worse than just using polite form.

- あした**い**らっしゃ**い**ますか。 [Correct honorific for “will you go tomorrow?”]  
あした**ま**いります。 [Correct humble form for “I will go tomorrow.”]  
あした行きますか。 [If you forgot your *keigo*, just use this]  
あした**ま**い**り**ますか。 [Impolite, don't ask “will you humbly go?”]  
あした**お**ま**い**り**に**なり**ま**すか。 [Adding 尊敬語 to 謙譲語 doesn't make it 尊敬語]  
あした**ま**い**ら**れ**ま**すか。 [Neither does adding 尊敬語 Pattern 2]  
今は**い**らっしゃ**っ**て**お**り**ま**すか。 [Adding 謙譲語 to 尊敬語 is very bad too]

The same issues are present with 謙譲語. Do not combine special words with the pattern for other words. Additionally, unlike 尊敬語, using the 謙譲語 pattern for special words is generally considered absolutely wrong rather than just very weird and uncomfortable.

私はそうもうしあげました。 [Correct humble form for “I said so.”]

私はそうおもうしあげしました。 [Incorrect “double humble” form]

私はそうお言いしました。 [Use the special word, not the pattern]



There are a few small exceptions. The verb 会う is often seen as お会いする despite having the 謙譲語 special form お目にかかる. The お会いする version can sound softer, but is not wrong. The same is true for the verbs 借りる, 聞く, たずねる, and 読む.



お目にかかるのを楽しみにしています。 [I’m excited to humbly meet you]

お会いできるのを楽しみにしています。 [I’m excited I can humbly meet you]

います could be おります here. This isn’t double keigo because you are adding keigo to ~いる, not the other verb. It may be “too polite” though.

You may see/hear the verb うかがう is mixed with the お～する pattern to create forms like おうかがいします or even おうかがいいたします. This is formally incorrect, and I don’t recommend it as it is clearly double keigo, but it may become normalized one day.

Don’t do this!  
But don’t be shocked if you see/hear it.

はい、うかがいます。 [Yes, I’ll humbly ask. I also won’t over-use 謙譲語.]

はい、おうかがいします。 [Yes, I’ll ask and misuse 謙譲語... just like many others.]



Also, be sure to avoid using 謙譲語 when your action doesn’t benefit the person you’re speaking to, or isn’t done to them or something of theirs. For instance, the first sentence here isn’t correct unless you are doing the act of reading as a favor or obligation (e.g., a book reading) to a *third party* also above you in status (e.g., the teacher’s kid?), or unless the teacher wrote the book they gave you. In other contexts, just use 読む. Telling your teacher you “humbly read” an email they “honorably sent” you, however, would be fine.

先生がくださった本を拝読いたしました。

[I humbly read the book the teacher honorably gave me (to others as a favor).]

先生がくださった本を読みました。

[I read the book the teacher honorably gave me (to myself only)]



Finally, one reason people struggle with *keigo* is they try to apply it to every verb in a sentence. Yes, めしあげていらっしゃる is impressive, but めしあがっている is arguably better often. Don’t stress if you just altered one verb. Often, that’s all you needed to do.



### Grammar Point 8.4: Using ~てくれる・あげる・もらう with *keigo*

As you saw, the Japanese verbs for “give” and “receive” we introduced in Chapter 4 have their own *keigo* versions. The “outwards giving” verb あげる has the 謙譲語 form さしあげる, the “inwards giving” verb くれる has the 尊敬語 form くださる, and the “receiving” verb もらう has the 謙譲語 form いただく.

私は社長にプレゼントをさしあげました。

[I humbly gave a present to the head of the company.]

社長が私にプレゼントをくださりました。

[The head of the company honorably gave me a present.]

私は社長からプレゼントをいただきました。

[I humbly received a present from the head of the company.]

Re-read Chapter 4 to refresh your memory on how to use the three giving/receiving verbs in Japanese.

These verbs can also be used in the ~て form to indicate that an action is done humbly/respectfully to someone else. The same in-group out-group rules apply as for the regular verbs, so don't use ~てさしあげる to show giving that happens “inwards”.

However, while ~てさしあげる is theoretically polite, it is often seen as presumptuous or arrogant, as a common viewpoint is that there is no humble way to state that you did an action for someone else's benefit. As a result, I recommended you avoid it. It is much safer to rephrase the sentence to avoid the “humble giving” verb, as you can see here:

部長、このしゅるいを部長のプレゼンのためにいんさつしてさしあげました。

[Chief! I humbly did the favor of printing these documents for your presentation.]

部長、プレゼンのしゅるいをいんさついたしました。プレゼンでお使いください。

[Chief! I humbly printed the presentation documents. Please honorably use them.]

The ~てくださる and ~ていただく forms are instead both common, and each indicates that you (or your in group) benefited from an action. As with ~てくれる, ~てくださる focuses on the person “giving” the action *inwards* (~「人」に). While you can use ~てくださる with 尊敬語 verbs, it is far more normal to attach it to “normal” verbs.

きのう、ばんごはんを作ってくださって、ありがとうございました。

[Thanks for honorably doing me the favor of making dinner.]

田中さんが私にサインを書いてくださりました。

[Tanaka honorably did me the favor of writing their autograph.]

You wouldn't actually say this to Tanaka. But it could be something said out of joy to oneself (and love/respect/admiration to Tanaka) in front of Tanaka.



The ~てくださる form is sometimes used with the adverb わざわざ, which means “to go out of one’s way”. The adverb doesn’t require ~てくれる・くださる, but works well with it.



わざわざここまで持って来てくださって、本当にすみませんね！

[You’ve done so much to bring it all the way here, truly sorry for the trouble!]

せつめいするためにわざわざ時間を作ってください、ありがとうございます。

[Thank you for going out of your way to do me the favor of making time to explain.]

なんでわざわざあぶないことをやろうとしているの？

[Why are you always going out of your way try to do dangerous things?]



In contrast, the ~ていただく form focuses on the receiver (you/your in-group) as the topic. Like when you receive an item, mark the person you receive an action from with に or から.

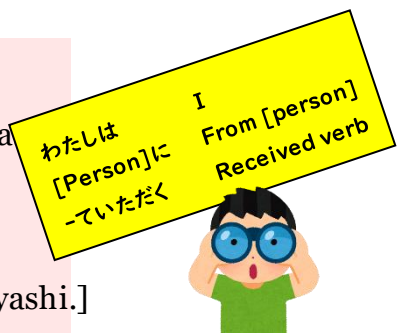


私は田中さんにサインを書いていただきました。

[I humbly received the favor of writing an autograph from Tanaka.]

林先生に漢字の読み方を教えていただきました。

[I humbly received being taught how to read kanji from Prof. Hayashi.]



These forms can all also be used in requests, just like with their non-keigo forms (see GP4.2). For ~てくださる, just change it to the ~ませんか form.



今日先生にこれをわたしに行ってくださいませんか。

[Today, won’t you honorably do me the favor of going to pass this to the teacher?]

For ~いただく, there are multiple versions which gradually increase in politeness or assumption the person won’t do the favor, all using the potential (“can”) form ofいただく.

Formal

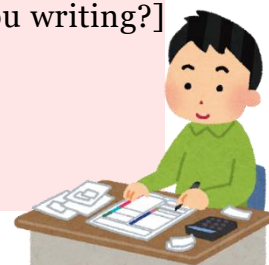
書いていただけますか。 [Can I humbly receive the favor of you writing?]

書いていただけませんか。 [Can’t I humbly receive the favor of you writing?]

書いていただけないでしょうか。

[Can’t I humbly receive the favor of you writing I wonder?]

More formal



These forms can also replace ください in the お+[verb stem]ください pattern to create super-polite requests. This is considered better than お+[verb stem]+になっていただく.

六時までここでお待ちいただけますか。

[Can't I humbly receive you honorably waiting here until six?]

この紙にひつようなじょうほうをお書きいただけないでしょうか。

[Can't I humbly receive you honorably writing the necessary info on this paper?]

These are great when there's a potential chance of rejection (e.g., someone is angry!), but can be too formal for "normal" polite requests.

See **Grammar Point 9.1.2** for more on how to use these verbs in polite request

Lighter versions, like もらってもいいですか, also exist.

### Grammar Point 8.5: Polite language

Beyond 尊敬語 and 謙譲語, there are a number of little things you can do in Japanese to increase the politeness of your speech. These shouldn't be used in otherwise casual speech, or sometimes even "normal polite" です・ます speech, but work well with *keigo*.

The first technique is actually 尊敬語, but I'm going to introduce it here to contrast with another form that isn't quite 尊敬語 or 謙譲語. For this 尊敬語, you replace the です・だ ending with でいらっしゃる, but **only** when referring to an outgroup person or describing them via an adjective. So these first three sentences are great, but the fourth is wrong.

あなたは小川さんでいらっしゃいますか。

[Honorably are you Kogawa?]

「おくさまはお元気でいらっしゃいますか。」 「はい、つまはげんきです。」

["Honorably is your honorable wife well?" "Yes, she's well."]

旦那さまはいつもおしゃれでいらっしゃいます。

[Your husband always honorably is pulled together.]

部長のスーツはきれいでいらっしゃいますね。

[Chief, your suit honorably is pretty, unlike my keigo, which is wrong.]

Remember, いらっしゃる also replaces いる, and conjugates into いらっしゃいます!



In contrast, the ending ~でございます can replace だ・です or ある・あります to reference anything *other than* an out-group person. It isn't quite 尊敬語 or 謙譲語 as you can use it in reference to yourself *and* other people's things! But you can't use it for out-group people or adjectives that describe them, as in the fourth example on the next page.

私はサムでございます。イギリス人でございます。

[I politely am Sam. I politely am British.]

すみません！これはおきやくさまのチケットでございますか。

[Excuse me, politely is this your (= the honorable customer's) ticket?]

時間がございましたらぜひいらっしゃってください。

[If you politely have time by all means please honorably come.]

Should be でいらっしゃいますか！

田中さんでございますか。[Politely are you Tanaka? I hope not; I've insulted you.]

There are also a number of polite variants for common words. You've already seen the technique of replacing ~さん with ~さま when talking about other people and/or their family members, but there are a number of special vocabulary as well. Just like with ~でいらっしゃる, you should only use these when speaking *outwards*.

|           | Son  | Daughter                            | Parents | Children |
|-----------|------|-------------------------------------|---------|----------|
| Regular   | むすこ  | むすめ                                 | りょうしん   | 子ども      |
| Honorific | ごしそく | おじょうさん<br>おじょうさま<br>ごそくじょ<br>ごれいしょう | ごりょうしん  | お子さま     |

ごしそくは何さいですか・ごしそくは何さいでいらっしゃいますか。

[How old is your honorable son? ・ How honorably old is your honorable son?]

ごりょうしんはお元気でいらっしゃいますか。

[Honorably are your honorable parents honorably well?]

Another thing you can do to be more polite is alter the ~たら “if” form, replacing the final ~す of a ~ます verb with ~したら rather than conjugating into ~たら via plain form.

いらっしゃいましたら、お知らせください。

[Politely if you/they honorably come, please honorably inform me.]

Additionally, all of the こ・そ・あ・ど phrases can be replaced by こちら・そちら・あちら・どちら. These terms can refer to people, and are polite when aimed both in and out.

あちらでございます。

[Politely it's politely that/over there.]

はい、明日こちらからお電話をおかけします。

[Okay, politely I (=from "this/here") will humbly call you tomorrow.]

どちらからいらっしゃいましたか。

[Politely where did you honorably come from?]

そちらのジャケットはおしゃれですね。

[That jacket politely near you/that you're wearing is very nice.]

こ・そ・  
あの  
become  
こ・そ・  
あちらの



There are also a number of general terms you can use which increase the politeness of your speech. This list is incomplete, but contains many common and useful variants:



As in "is it okay?"  
not "is it good?"

| Normal | Polite       |
|--------|--------------|
| ですか    | でしょうか        |
| どれ・だれ  | どちら・どちらさま    |
| どうですか  | いかがですか       |
| ごめんなさい | もうしわけありません   |
| トイレ    | お手あらい        |
| いいですか  | よろしいですか      |
| 少し     | しょうしょう<br>少々 |
| 人      | かた<br>方      |

Attaching to other polite sentences is fine to increase politeness. As in  
いかがでしょうか。

ありません can still become  
ごさいません

This is especially used in the pattern  
少々お待ちください

こちらはあちらの方からのワインでございます。

[This is wine from that person over there; I'm being polite, but not using 尊敬語.]

もうしわけございませんが、来週でもよろしいでしょうか。

[My very polite apologies, but would next week be politely alright?]





Finally, you can also attach お~ or ご~ to certain words to make them more polite. Generally speaking, お~ is attached to words of Japanese origin, and words of Chinese origin that are extremely common. Here's a very non-exhaustive list of everyday examples:

Most adjectives work just like this, but you can't apply お to all adjectives, so be careful.

For instance, おあつい is okay if the person you're talking to looks hot, but おあたたかい is not used. A good technique is to look out for Japanese people using specific forms, and then use those ones.

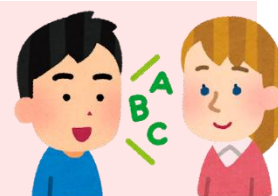
| English  | Japanese | Polite  |
|----------|----------|---------|
| Reply    | へんじ      | おへんじ    |
| Nearby   | 近く       | お近く (に) |
| Cooking  | 料理       | お料理     |
| Skilled  | 上手       | お上手     |
| Car      | 車        | お車      |
| A meal   | しょくじ     | おしょくじ   |
| Cleaning | そうじ      | おそうじ    |
| Phone    | 電話       | お電話     |
| Makeup   | けしょう     | おけしょう   |
| A talk   | 話        | お話      |



As with most polite phrases, these variants should be used to refer to (the actions of) a person in your outgroup, or to actions you do *for* people in your outgroup. For instance, 「お電話します」 is fine for a polite version of "I'll call you", but you never say 「これは私のお電話です。」, because your phone existing isn't a favor or benefit to someone else. Likewise, do not use おいそがしい to refer to your own schedule, and don't use any of these in the negative form (for instance, お上手じゃないです sounds mocking, not polite).

おいそがしい時にすみませんね。

[Sorry for doing this when you're busy (+ politeness)].



英語がお上手ですね。何年間べんきょうされましたか。

[You're very good (+ politeness) at English. How long did you honorably study?]

お手紙をおおくりします。

[I will humbly send a letter (+ politeness).]

お手紙 is okay here because it's written for a benefit. Your car does not exist for the teacher's benefit.

あちらは先生のお車ですか。こちらは私のお... すみません、私の車です。

[Is that your car (+ politeness) teacher? This is my o-... sorry, no, just my car.]



The ご~ prefix is then instead mostly attached to words of Chinese origin, but there are again exceptions. Here's another table of some common uses you'll likely see:

Generally speaking, neither お nor ご should be attached to words borrowed from non-Chinese languages (and therefore written in katakana). Some people make exceptions for some words, but not everyone agrees on which ones, so the safest thing is to just not do it at all.

| English       | Japanese | Polite |
|---------------|----------|--------|
| Opinion       | いけん      | ごいけん   |
| Contact       | れんらく     | ごれんらく  |
| Slowly        | ゆっくり     | ごゆっくり  |
| Family        | かぞく      | ごかぞく   |
| Understanding | りかい      | ごりかい   |
| Hard efforts  | くろう      | ごくろう   |



Because the explanation is *done* outwards to assist, ご説明 can be used to refer to your own action too. In contrast, you can never talk about your own ごいけん, because it's for you only.

ごいけんをうかがってもよろしいですか。

[Is it **politely** okay if I **humbly** inquire to your opinion **(+polite)**?]

おんしゃからのご説明をいただきましたが、

これからへいしゃの考え方をご説明したいとも思っております。

[We have **humbly received** the explanation **(+polite)** from **your honorable company**, but from here I **humbly** want to explain **(+polite)** our **humble company's** thinking.]

ごりかいをいたたければたすかります。

[It would be a great help **if we could humbly receive** your understanding **(+polite)**.]

ごくろうさま！

[**Polite** thanks for your hard work, person below me in status!]

While odd that it is used “downwards”, this set phrase includes the ~ご prefix.

Both お~ and ご~ are also sometimes used as what's called a “beautification prefix”. This is sometimes almost mandatory, as in words like お茶 or お風呂, which sound rude without お. Even words like おいしい have an origin in this practice! But you might see terms like お花 or お水 used when there's no clear “outwards” direction. For instance, a お花のコース might be used as a name for a flower-related class to make it sound a bit more elegant. There are also some very rare polite forms used only in particular contexts: the term おひや is a common example, being used almost only by waitstaff to refer to water when talking to customers. Finally, お~ is sometimes attached to words in speech towards children or other cute things without “polite” intention. A parent might say 「おうちに帰りましょう」 to their child, and a pet owner might ask their dog for it's お手. These are cute, but not polite; do not ask your boss to see their お手.



## CHAPTER 8 KANJI ・ かんじ

This week, we will learn 18 kanji usable for words you already know quite well!

|   |                 |                                                                           |
|---|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 歌 | Meaning         | Song                                                                      |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | うた (う) ・ うた                                                               |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | か                                                                         |
|   | Sample uses     | うた<br>歌<br>うた<br>歌 う<br>かしゅ<br>歌手                                         |
| 借 | Meaning         | Borrow                                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | か (りる)                                                                    |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しゃく                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses     | か<br>借りる<br>しゃっきん<br>借金                                                   |
| 貸 | Meaning         | Lend, loan                                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | か (す)                                                                     |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | たい                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses     | 貸す<br>かしや<br>貸家 (home for let)<br>たいしゃく<br>貸借 (lend and borrow)           |
| 返 | Meaning         | Return, repay                                                             |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | かえ (す) ・ かえ (る)                                                           |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | へん                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses     | かえ<br>返す<br>く かえ<br>繰り返す (repeat)<br>へんじ<br>返事<br>うらがえ<br>裏返す (flip over) |





|   |             |                                                                                                                         |
|---|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 質 | Meaning     | Quality, question                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | たち                                                                                                                      |
|   | On yomi     | しつ・しち・ち                                                                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | <div>しつ<br/>質がいい</div> <div>ひんしつ<br/>品質 (product quality)</div> <div>しつもん<br/>質問</div> <div>ひとじち<br/>人質 (hostage)</div> |
| 答 | Meaning     | Answer                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | こた (え) ・こた (える)                                                                                                         |
|   | On yomi     | へん                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses | <div>こた<br/>答える</div> <div>へんとう<br/>返答 (a reply)</div> <div>こた<br/>答え</div>                                             |
| 問 | Meaning     | Ask, problem                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | と (う) ・と (い)                                                                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | もん                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses | <div>と<br/>問う</div> <div>もんだい<br/>問題</div> <div>しつもん<br/>質問</div>                                                       |
| 題 | Meaning     | Topic, subject                                                                                                          |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                                                                         |
|   | On yomi     | だい                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses | <div>もんだい<br/>問題</div> <div>しゅくだい<br/>宿題</div> <div>わだい<br/>話題</div> <div>だいめい<br/>題名 (title)</div>                     |
| 宿 | Meaning     | Inn, lodging                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | やど・やど (る)                                                                                                               |
|   | On yomi     | しゆく                                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses | <div>やど<br/>宿</div> <div>みんしゆく<br/>民宿 (private lodging)</div> <div>やど<br/>宿る</div> <div>しゅくだい<br/>宿題</div>              |



|   |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 服 | Meaning     | Clothing                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | On yomi     | ふく                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>ふく</small><br/>服         </div> <div> <small>せいふく</small><br/>制服         </div> <div> <small>わ ふく</small><br/>和服         </div> <div> <small>ようふく</small><br/>洋服         </div>                              |
| 旅 | Meaning     | Travel                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    | たび                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | On yomi     | りよ                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>たび</small><br/>旅         </div> <div> <small>りよこう</small><br/>旅行         </div> <div> <small>た び だ</small><br/>旅立つ         </div> <div> <small>りよかん</small><br/>旅館         </div>                            |
| 館 | Meaning     | Building, mansion                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|   | Kun yomi    | やかた・たて                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | かん                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>としよかん</small><br/>図書館         </div> <div> <small>はくぶつかん</small><br/>博物館 (museum)         </div> <div> <small>りよかん</small><br/>旅館         </div> <div> <small>えいがかん</small><br/>映画館         </div>           |
| 銀 | Meaning     | Silver                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    | しろがね                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | On yomi     | ぎん                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>ぎん</small><br/>銀         </div> <div> <small>ぎんこう</small><br/>銀行         </div> <div> <small>ぎん め だ る</small><br/>銀メダル         </div>                                                                        |
| 考 | Meaning     | Thinking                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | かんが（え）・かんが（える）                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | こう                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>かんが</small><br/>考え         </div> <div> <small>し こう</small><br/>思考 (thought)         </div> <div> <small>かんが</small><br/>考える         </div> <div> <small>こう こ がく</small><br/>考古学 (archeology)         </div> |



|   |                 |                                                                                                                     |
|---|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 味 | Meaning         | Taste, flavor                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | あじ・あじ (わう)                                                                                                          |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | み                                                                                                                   |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>い み<br/>意味</div> <div>ぎん<br/>銀</div> <div>ぎんめ だる<br/>銀メダル</div> <div>きょう み<br/>興味</div> <div>しゅ み<br/>趣味</div> |
| 室 | Meaning         | Room, chamber                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | むろ                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しつ                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>きょうしつ<br/>教室</div> <div>けんきゅうしつ<br/>研究室</div>                                                                  |
| 研 | Meaning         | Sharpen                                                                                                             |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | と (ぐ)                                                                                                               |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | けん                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>と<br/>研ぐ</div> <div>けんきゅう<br/>研究</div>                                                                         |
| 究 | Meaning         | Study, investigate                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | きわ (める)                                                                                                             |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | きゅう                                                                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>けんきゅう<br/>研究</div> <div>けんきゅうしゃ<br/>研究者</div>                                                                  |



## CHAPTER 8 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 8

### Exercise 8.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

## 1. 歌

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 歌            | 歌 | 歌 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 可 | 可 | 可 | 可 | 哥 | 哥 | 歌 | 歌 | 歌 |

## 2. 借

|              |   |   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 借            | 借 | 借 |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 3. 貸

|              |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 貸            | 貸 | 貸 |   |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | / |  | 一 | 代 | 代 | 代 | 代 | 貸 | 貸 | 貸 | 貸 | 貸 | 貸 |  |  |

## 4. 返

[illegible]

## 5. 質

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 質            | 質 | 質 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

6. 答

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 答            | 答 | 答 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 7. 問

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 問            | 問 | 問 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 |

## 8. 題

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 題            | 題 | 題 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 日 | 旦 | 早 | 早 | 早 | 是 | 是 |

## 9. 宿

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 宿            | 宿 | 宿 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 宿 | 宿 |

## 10. 服

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 服            | 服 | 服 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 服 | 服 |

## 11. 旅

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 旅            | 旅 | 旅 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 一 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 旅 | 旅 |

## 12. 館

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 館            | 館 | 館 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 人 | 人 | 今 | 今 | 今 | 今 | 今 | 今 | 館 |

### 13. 銀

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 銀            | 銀 | 銀 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | ノ | ノ | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 金 | 金 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 銀 | 銀 | 銀 |

### 14. 考

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 考            | 考 | 考 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 考 | 考 |  |  |  |  |

### 15. 味

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 味            | 味 | 味 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 口 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 味 | 味 |  |  |  |

### 16. 室

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 室            | 室 | 室 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 丶 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 室 | 室 |  |  |

### 17. 研

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 研            | 研 | 研 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 丿 | 丿 | 石 | 石 | 石 | 石 | 研 | 研 |  |  |

### 18. 究

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 究            | 究 | 究 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 丶 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 究 | 究 |  |  |  |

## Exercise 8.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. せんせいのけんきゅうについてごしつもんさせていただけないでしょうか。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. りょかんへいくまえにぎんこうからおかねをすこしかりしました。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. クラスにこなかったがくせいにしゅくだいをかえしてあげられなかった。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. あしたのたびのためにほしいんだから、かしたふくをきょうかえしてください。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. 「どんなあじがいい？」 「わからない。ちょっとかんがえてからこたえる。」

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. このうたがしゃかいもんだいだとおもうひとがすくなくないようです。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. たんじょうびにしつのよいふくをちちにかってあげた。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 8.3

Find the error(s) in each sentence, fix and explain it/them, and then translate the sentence.

1. 先生、これからどちらへまいりますか。お車で送ってさしあげますよ。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

2. お茶を入れられましたが、お飲みしますか。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

3. 私からのお手紙をごらんになられましたか。昨日の五時ごろお送りされました。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

4. あ、部長！昨日部長からくださった本を父にさしあげました。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

5. おきゃくさまがここで少しお待ちしてくださいませんか。  
田中さんがまもなくいらっしゃいますので。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

6. おれんらくを<sup>t h a n k s</sup>いただいて、かんしゃをおっしゃいます。  
きのうお借りしたお本をあした返しになりましたら問題はいらっしゃいません。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_



7. 田中さん、私にいただいたチョコレートはとてもおいしかったです。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

8. 社長、きのう社長の夫と話されました。とてもおしゃれでございますね。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

9. 先生！先週日本にまいりました。友だちにおみやげもたくさんお買いしました。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

10. まきさんが私にプレゼントをさしあげたので、あしたこれをくださると思う。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

11. おんしゃの社長がいついらっしゃうといつしゃいましたか。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

12. 六時ごろにお目にかかれてもよろしいでしょうか。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

13. 先生がいらっしゃらないので私がまいる。着いたらすぐごれんらくいたす。

Error(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Translation: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 8.4

Translate each sentence pair using 尊敬語 and 謙讓語 appropriately, showing respect outwards and humbling inwards (where appropriate!).

1. Your son said so last week.

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

My son said so last week.

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Would you please go there at five?

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

May I go at five?

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Is that the dinner you made for your family? It's very healthy.

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

I made dinner for my family. It's very healthy.

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

4. Please send the documents to our company today.

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

I will send the documents to your company today.

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

5. You gave me the present your husband bought.

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

I gave the teacher the present my husband bought.

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

6. Please read this to me.

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

Shall I read this to you?

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

7. Your son is very handsome.

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

My son is a university student.

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

8. Is that car over there yours? May I look at it?

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

This is my car. Please get in.

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

9. If you have time, please read the documents.

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

When I have time, I will read the documents.

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

10. If you have questions, please ask.

尊敬語: \_\_\_\_\_

I have a few questions, may I ask them?

謙讓語: \_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise 8.5

Handa is talking to their boss, Shimizu. Make the conversation as polite as possible by choosing the correct option from each set.

|                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                     | <p>あ、しみずさん、今は（いそがしい・おいそがしい）ですか。<br/>あしたのミーティングについて（話します・話したい・お話ししたい・お話になりたい）んですが...</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                      | <p>（いい・おいしい）（ですよ・でございますよ・でいらっしゃいますよ）。<br/>今はあまり（いそがしくない・おいそがしくない）です。</p>                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                     | <p>えっと、しみずさんがもう色々なしよるいを<br/>（おじゅんぴしました・じゅんぴになりました・じゅんぴなさいました・<br/>じゅんぴいたしました）と<br/>（聞きました・うかがいました・お聞きになりました・聞かれました）が、<br/>（これ・こちら・この）もミーティングで<br/>（出して・お出しして・お出しになって）も（いい・よろしい）ですか。</p>                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                      | <p>どんなしよるいですか。</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                   | <p>きのうかぞくと東京に（行きました・まいりました・いらっしゃいました）<br/>が、そこで友だちからこのざっしを<br/>（もらいました・あげました・いただきました・くださいました）。<br/>ざっしによると来年からかんこうきゃくが日本にたくさん<br/>（来る・まいる・いらっしゃる）そうです。<br/>だから、（わたしたち・おんしゃ・へいしゃ）はツアーを<br/>（アップデート・おアップデート）（した・なさった・いたした）方が<br/>いいと（ごぞんじで・ぞんじて・お思いして・お思いになって）<br/>このプランを（作りしました・お作りしました・お作りになりました）。<br/>いつか（ごらん・はいけん・ごらんして・はいけんして）ください。</p> |
| <p>分かりました。とてもいいプランだと思いますよ。これから読んで、あした<br/>までフィードバックを（あげます・さしあげます・おあげします）。<br/>ところで、話がかわりますが、東京はどう<br/>（でしたか・ございましたか・でいらっしゃいました）。</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                   | <p>あ、（聞いて・うかがって・聞かれて・お聞きになって）くださって、<br/>ありがとうございます。とても良かったです。<br/>あ、（わすれました・おわすれしました）！<br/>（これ・こちら・この）はしみずさんのためのおみやげ<br/>（です・でございます・でいらっしゃいます）。</p>                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                                                                                                                      | <p>わあ、ありがとうございます！<br/>これからおいしく（食べます・めしあがります・いただきます）ね。</p>                                                                                                                                                                                             |

## CHAPTER 8 WORKBOOK ANSWER KEY • 解答集 8

**Exercise 8.1**  
Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

## 1. 歌

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                                                            |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 歌            | 歌 | 歌 |   |   |   |   |   |   | general size balance across<br>of the 10 free-hand attempt |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | ㇏ | 冂 | 𠃍 | 可 | 𠄎 | 𠄎                                                          | 𠄎 | 𠄎 | 哥 | 哥 | 哥 | 歌 | 歌 |

## 2. 借

[illegible]

### 3. 貸

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 貸            | 貸 | 貸 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | / | 丿 | 一 | 代 | 代 | 代 | 代 | 貸 | 貸 | 貸 | 貸 |

## 4. 返

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 返            | 返 | 返 |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5. 質

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 質            | 質 | 質 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6. 答

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 答            | 答 | 答 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 7. 問

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 問            | 問 | 問 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 |

## 8. 題

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 題            | 題 | 題 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 日 | 旦 | 早 | 早 | 早 | 是 | 是 |

## 9. 宿

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 宿            | 宿 | 宿 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 丨 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 冂 | 宿 | 宿 |

## 10. 服

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 服            | 服 | 服 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 服 | 服 |

## 11. 旅

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 旅            | 旅 | 旅 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 一 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 旅 | 旅 |

## 12. 館

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 館            | 館 | 館 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | 人 | 人 | 今 | 今 | 今 | 食 | 食 | 食 | 館 |

### 13. 銀

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 銀            | 銀 | 銀 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | 金 | 金 | 金 | 銀 | 銀 |

### 14. 考

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| 考            | 考 | 考 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 𠂇 | 耂 | 考 |  |  |  |  |  |

### 15. 味

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 味            | 味 | 味 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 冂 | 口 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 味 | 味 |  |  |  |

### 16. 室

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 室            | 室 | 室 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 丶 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 室 | 室 |  |  |

### 17. 研

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 研            | 研 | 研 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 丿 | 丿 | 石 | 石 | 石 | 石 | 研 | 研 |  |  |

### 18. 究

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 究            | 究 | 究 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 丶 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 宀 | 究 | 究 |  |  |  |

## Exercise 8.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. せんせいのけんきゅうについてごしつもんさせていただけませんか。

Rewrite: 先生の研究についての質問をさせていただけませんか。

Translate: Teacher, may I (be allowed to) ask you a question about your research?

2. りょかんへいくまえにぎんこうからおかねをすこしました。

Rewrite: 旅館へ行く前に銀行からお金を少し借りました。

Translate: Before I went to the ryokan, I borrowed some money from the bank.

3. クラスにこなかったがくせいにしゅくだいをかえしてあげられなかった。

Rewrite: クラスに来なかった学生に宿題を返してあげられなかった。

Translate: I couldn't give the homework back to the student who didn't come to class.

4. あしたのたびのためにほしいんだから、かしたふくをきょうかえしてください。

Rewrite: あしたの旅のためにほしいんだから、貸した服を今日返してください。

Translate: I want it for tomorrow's trip, so today please return the clothes I lent you.

5. 「どんなあじがいい？」 「わからない。ちょっとかんがえてからこたえる。」

Rewrite: 「どんな味がいい?」「分からない。ちょっと考えてから答える。」

Translate: "What flavor do you want?" "I don't know. I'll answer after thinking a bit."

6. このうたがしゃかい もんだいだとおもうひとがすくなくないようです。

Rewrite: この歌がしゃかい問題だと思ふ人が少なくないようです。

Translate: It seems more than a few people think this song is a social problem.

7. たんじょうびにしつのよいふくをちちにかってあげた。

Rewrite: たんじょう日に質のよい服を父に買ってあげた。

Translate: I bought my dad some quality clothes for his birthday.



### Exercise 8.3

Find the error(s) in each sentence, fix and explain it/them, and then translate the sentence.

1. 先生、これからどちらへ~~まいりますか~~。お車で送~~って~~さしあ~~げ~~ますよ。  
いらっやいますか。 送りましょうか。・お送りしましょうか。

Error(s): まいる is used to refer to your own actions, and you shouldn't use ~てあげる to offer actions.

Translation: Teacher, where are you going? Shall I take you there by car?

2. お茶を~~入れ~~られましたが、~~めしあ~~がりますか。  
お入れしましたが、 めしあがりますか。

Error(s): The first verb uses sonkeigo pattern 2 to refer to your actions, and the second uses kenjogo to refer to someone else's.

Translation: I've made some tea, do you want any?

3. 私からの~~め~~手紙をごらんにな~~ら~~れましたか。OR 見られましたか。 お送り~~し~~ました。  
ごらんになりましたか。 OR 見られましたか。 お送りしました

Error(s): YOUR tegami doesn't need "o", the first verb uses 2 sonkeigo patterns together, and the 3rd shouldn't use a sonkeigo pattern to refer to you.

Translation: Have you seen/read my letter? I sent it yesterday around 5.

4. あ、部長！昨日部長から~~く~~ださ~~った~~本を父に~~さ~~しあ~~げ~~ました。  
いただいた あげました OR わたしました。

Error(s): Since you got the book, it should be いただく (receive) rather than give, and you shouldn't show respect to your dad (in group) in this context.

Translation: Ah, chief! I gave the book I received from you to my dad yesterday.

5. おきやくさまが~~こ~~で~~し~~お待~~ち~~して~~く~~ださ~~い~~ませんか。  
田中さんがまもなく~~い~~らっやいますので。 ~~ま~~いりますので。  
こちら 少々 お待ちください・お待ちいただけないでしょうか etc.

Error(s): ここ could be こちら and 少し could be 少々. More importantly, the request includes a humble form which is wrong. Finally, the person coming is likely a member of the speaker's company, so should get a humble verb.

Translation: Can you please wait here a bit? Tanaka will arrive shortly.

6. ~~お~~れんらくを~~い~~ただ<sup>t h a n k s</sup>いて、かんしゃを~~お~~っしやいます。  
きのうお借~~り~~したお本をあした返しになりましたら問題は~~い~~らっやい~~ま~~せん。  
お借りになった お返しになりましたら ございません。

Error(s): おれんらく is correct, and the sentence needs to be "thanks for giving me advice" not receiving. In the second sentence, the first verb ends incorrectly, and the second is missing お. The third should be ございます because it's not describing the other person.

Translation: Thanks for contacting us. As long as you return the book you borrowed yesterday to us tomorrow, there is no problem.

7. 田中さん、私に<sup>くださった</sup>~~いただいた~~チョコレートはとてもおいしかったです。

Since Tanaka gave it to the speaker, they should use **くださった**. Note that **私がいただいた** would be grammatically okay,

Error(s): but sounds like you got the chocolate from a third party.

Translation: **Tanaka, the chocolate you gave me was very delicious.**

8. 社長、きのう社長の<sup>だんなさまとお話しました。</sup>~~夫と~~話<sup>いらっしゃいますね。</sup>~~されました~~。とてもおしゃれで~~ございます~~ね。

Error(s): **夫** is humble, not polite, and **話される** should also be made politer (it sounds like the passive). **ございます** isn't okay here either as you are describing an out-group person's trait, so we need **いらっしゃる**.

Translation: **Boss, I spoke with your husband yesterday. They were very pulled together.**

9. 先生！先週日本に<sup>行きました。</sup>~~まいりました~~。友だちにおみやげもたくさん<sup>買いました。</sup>~~お買いしました~~。

Error(s): Nothing the speaker did was for or benefited the teacher, so they shouldn't be using honorifics at all.

Translation: **Teacher, I went to Japan last week. I bought lots of souvenirs for my friends.**

10. まきさんが私にプレゼントを<sup>くれた</sup>~~さしあげ~~たので、あしたこれを<sup>あげる</sup>~~くださ~~ると思う。

Error(s): Give/receive are mixed up. Also you probably don't need honorifics, as you are not talking to Maki. If Maki is in the person you're speaking too's in-group, **くださりました・さしあげる** could work, but you need to make **思う** polite too then.

Translation: **Maki gave me this present so tomorrow I think I'll give her this.**

11. おんしゃの社長がいつ<sup>る</sup>~~え~~らっしや<sup>お</sup>~~い~~ましたか。

Error(s): While **いらっしゃる** becomes **いらっしゃいます**, its plain form is not **いらっしやう**. **おっしやる** is also misspelled.

Translation: **When did the head of your company say they would come?**

12. 六時ごろにお目にかか<sup>っても</sup>~~られて~~もよろしいでしょうか。

Error(s): Don't add respectful patterns onto humble phrases.

Translation: **May I visit you around 6?**

13. 先生がいらっしやらないので私が<sup>ります</sup>~~まい~~る。着いたらすぐごれんらくいた<sup>します</sup>~~ス~~。

Error(s): When speaking in keigo, you shouldn't end your sentences in plain form. If **先生** is in your in group, also change **いらっしやらない** to **おらない**. When I wrote this example though, I imagined the person was talking to the teacher.

Translation: **Teacher, since you aren't going I will go. When I arrive, I will contact you.**

### Exercise 8.4

Translate each sentence pair using 尊敬語 and 謙讓語 appropriately, showing respect outwards and humbling inwards (where appropriate!).

11. Your son said so last week.

尊敬語: 先週ごしそくがそうおっしゃいました。

My son said so last week.

謙讓語: 先週むすこがそう言いました (or もうしあげました in some contexts)。

12. Would you please go there at five?

尊敬語: 五時にいらっしゃってくださいませんか。

May I go at five?

謙讓語: 五時にまいってもよろしいでしょうか。・行かせていただけますか。

13. Is that the dinner you made for your family? It's very healthy.

尊敬語: そちらはごかぞくのためにお作りになったばんごはんですか。とてもけんこう的でございます。

I made dinner for my family. It's very healthy.

謙讓語: かぞくのためにばんごはんを作りました。とてもけんこう的です。

As this doesn't benefit or relate to the person you're talking to, you don't use kenjougo here.

14. Please send the documents to our company today.

尊敬語: 今日しよるいをへい社にお送りください。

I will send the documents to your company today.

謙讓語: 今日しよるいをおん社にお送りします。

15. You gave me the present your husband bought.

尊敬語: (Name さまは) だんなさまがお買いになったプレゼントをくださいました。

I gave the teacher the present my husband bought.

謙讓語: おとが買ったプレゼントを先生にあげました。

As this doesn't benefit or relate to the person you're talking to, you don't use kenjougo here.

16. Please read this to me.

尊敬語: これを私にお読みください。

Shall I read this to you?

謙譲語: これをはいどくしましょうか・はいどくいたしましょうか。

Remember:  
読んでさし上げます  
often comes off as pushy  
and self-praising.

17. Your son is very handsome.

尊敬語: ごしそくはとてもハンサムでいらっしゃいます。

My son is a university student.

謙譲語: おすこは大学生でございます。

18. Is that car over there yours? May I look at it?

尊敬語: あちらの車はあなたのお車ですか。はいけんしてもよろしいでしょうか。

This is my car. Please get in.

謙譲語: これは私の車でございます。どうぞ、お入りください。

19. If you have time, please read the documents.

尊敬語: お時間がございましたら、しよるいをお読みください。

お読みになってください  
is fine too.

When I have time, I will read the documents.

謙譲語: 時間がございましたら、しよるいを拝読いたします。

20. If you have questions, please ask.

尊敬語: ご質問がございましたら、お聞き下さい・お聞きになってください。

I have a few questions, may I ask them?

謙譲語: 質問がいくつかございますが、うかがってもよろしいでしょうか。

## Exercise 8.5

Handa is talking to their boss, Shimizu. Make the conversation as polite as possible by choosing the correct option from each set.

|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | あ、しみずさん、今は（いそがしい・ <b>おいそがしい</b> ）ですか。<br>あしたのミーティングについて（話します・話したい・ <b>お話ししたい</b> ・お話<br>になりたい）んですが...                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                     | <b>(いい・おいしい) (ですよ・でございますよ)</b><br>今はあまり <b>(いそがしくない・おいそがしい)</b> ですか。                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | As honorifics in part designate differences in social position, the person who uses honorifics should not expect honorifics in response. |
|    | えっと、しみずさんがもう色々なしよるいを<br>（おじゅんぴしました・じゅんぴになりました・ <b>じゅんぴなさいました</b> ・<br>じゅんぴいたしました）と<br>（聞きました・ <b>うかがいました</b> ・お聞きになりました・聞かれました）が、<br>（これ・ <b>こちら</b> ・この）もミーティングで<br>（出して・ <b>お出しして</b> ・お出しになって）も（いい・ <b>よろしい</b> ）ですか。                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                     | 出してもよろしいですか is fairly polite, and would also be okay here.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                      |
|                                                                                     | きのうかぞくと東京に <b>(行きました・まいりました)</b><br>が、そこで友だちからこのざ<br><b>(もらいました・あげました・いただきました)</b><br>ざっしによると来年からかんこうきやく<br><b>(来る・まいる・いらっしゃる)</b><br>だから、（わたしたち・おんしゃ・ <b>へいしゃ</b> ）は<br><b>(アップデート・おアップデート)</b> <b>(した・なさった・</b><br>いいと（ごぞんじで・ <b>ぞんじて</b> ・お思いして・お思<br>このプランを（作りました・ <b>お作りしました</b> ・お作りは<br>いつか <b>(ごらん・はいけん・ごらんして・はいけんして)</b> ください。 | Don't use keigo for things that have no relevance to your boss, or honor your friend (in group). You may honor the かんこうきやく or not.       |
|  | Loan words don't get お, usually.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | The update is framed as done by the company not the speaker so don't use a humble "to do".                                               |
|                                                                                     | 分かりました。とてもいいプランだと思いますよ。これから読んで、あした<br>までフィードバックを <b>(あげます・さしあげます・おあげ)</b><br>ところで、話が変わりますが、東京はどう<br><b>(でしたか・ございましたか・でいらっしゃいましたか)</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                     |
|                                                                                     | あ、 <b>(聞いて・うかがって・聞かれて・お聞きになって)</b> くださって、<br>ありがとうございます。とても良かったです。<br>あ、 <b>(おすれました・おわすれました)</b> !<br>（これ・ <b>こちら</b> ・この）はしみずさんのためのおみやげ<br>（です・ <b>でございます</b> ・でいらっしゃいます）。                                                                                                                                                             | お聞きになってくださって is okay but probably too polite.                                                                                            |
|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Forgetting is not done for anyone, it shouldn't be humble.                                                                               |
|                                                                                     | わあ、ありがとうございます！<br>これからおいしく（食べます・めしあがります・ <b>いただきます</b> ）ね。                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                     |
|                                                                                     | 食べます is okay here, but the boss would likely use humble honorifics here to show politeness/gratitude in this case, as they are receiving a gift.                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                          |

## CHAPTER NINE ・ 第九章

### VOCABULARY ・ ごい

#### Nouns

|               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| あいさつ          | greetings        |
| いしき           | consciousness    |
| い と<br>意図     | will, intent     |
| かんしゃ          | gratitude        |
| しんじつ<br>真実    | truth            |
| しょうこ          | proof, evidence  |
| たいし<br>大使     | ambassador       |
| たいしかん<br>大使館  | embassy          |
| ていあん          | a proposal, plan |
| どりよく<br>努力    | effort           |
| はくぶつかん<br>博物館 | museum           |
| べつ<br>別の[X]   | a different [X]  |
| ないよう          | contents         |
| にんげん<br>人間    | human            |
| むりよう<br>無料    | free             |

#### な Adjectives

|           |                      |
|-----------|----------------------|
| きんきゅう     | urgent               |
| ぶ じ<br>無事 | unharmed, ends up ok |
| ゆたか       | abundant, plentiful  |
| むだ        | useless              |

#### Adverbs

|               |                          |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| いとてき<br>意図的に  | willfully, intentionally |
| けっきよくに        | in the end, all in all   |
| とく<br>特に...ない | not especially           |
| べつべつ<br>別々に   | separately               |

#### Compound Verbs

|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| かいけつする         | to solve              |
| しゅうちゅう<br>集中する | to concentrate        |
| しゅっぱつ<br>出発する  | to depart             |
| ちゅうい<br>注意する   | to warn, to admonish  |
| てんそうする         | to forward (an email) |
| てんぷする          | to attach (a file)    |
| へんぴん<br>返品する   | to return an item     |
| むしする           | to ignore             |

This is 無視, not 虫.  
If you ignore a bug, that is  
虫を無視する though, yes.

#### う Verbs

|           |                      |
|-----------|----------------------|
| あつ<br>集まる | to gather [intrans]  |
| あらわす      | to express           |
| かわす       | to exchange (words)  |
| ける        | to kick              |
| ころす       | to kill              |
| さわる       | to touch             |
| ため<br>試す  | to try, to attempt   |
| ふる        | to dump, break up w/ |
| なぐる       | to punch, to hit     |

#### る Verbs

|              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| あつ<br>集める    | to collect [trans]    |
| あらわれる        | to appear [intrans]   |
| みとめる         | to recognize (as)     |
| もとめる         | to request, to demand |
| なでる          | to pet, to caress     |
| わか<br>(と)別れる | to break up with      |

## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 9.1.1: The passive form (受け身・受動態)

The passive form refers to verbs conjugated to express that an action was done *to* the subject/topic of a sentence rather than *by* it/them. In English, the passive form is usually made by adding ~ed just like the past tense, but there are many exceptions.

|         |                                 |         |                               |
|---------|---------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| Present | I play soccer on the field.     |         |                               |
| Past    | I played soccer on the field.   |         |                               |
| Passive | Soccer was played on the field. |         |                               |
| Present | I eat food.                     | Present | He drinks wine.               |
| Past    | I ate food.                     | Past    | He drank wine.                |
| Passive | Food was eaten by me.           | Passive | Wine was drunk.               |
| Present | She hit the ball.               | Present | We sing a song.               |
| Past    | She hit the ball.               | Past    | We sang a song.               |
| Passive | The balls were hit.             | Passive | Songs are sung every holiday. |



In Japanese, the passive form of verbs is consistent, but changes across the three verb types. As always, irregular verbs do not follow a pattern, and must be memorized as-is.



| Polite positive form | Plain positive form | Plain passive form |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| します                  | する                  | される                |
| きます                  | くる                  | こられる               |

You will rarely see or use 来られる

For ~る verbs, simply delete the final ~る and replace it with ~られる.

食べられた!  
(It was eaten!)

|         |     |   |
|---------|-----|---|
| Plain   | 食べ  | る |
| Passive | られる |   |

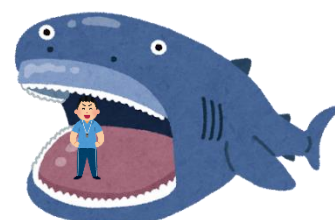
開けられた!  
(It was opened!)

Plain present positive to plain passive positive

As a result, the passive form of ~る verbs looks exactly like their potential form and one of their 尊敬語 patterns. Context will usually help, but be sure not to mix them up.

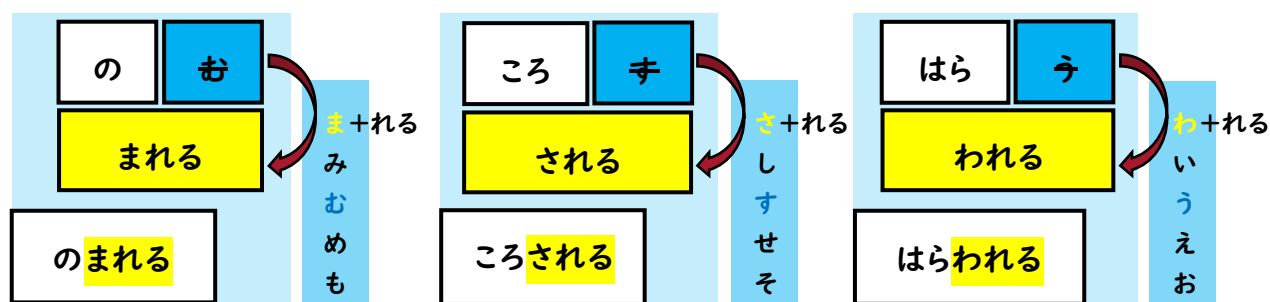
[先生が食べられた。]

- Teacher was able to eat it.
- Teacher honorably ate it.
- Teacher was eaten.





Finally, for all ~う verbs change the final sound to ~[x]a as though you are making the plain negative form, but then add ~れる after instead of ~ない.



Regardless of the verb type, just like with the potential form, once a verb is in passive form any further conjugation occurs as a ~る verb.

|  |           |                               |
|--|-----------|-------------------------------|
|  | コーヒーが飲まれる | [Coffee is drunk (plain).]    |
|  | 飲めます      | [Coffee is drunk (polite).]   |
|  | 飲まれた      | [Coffee was drunk.]           |
|  | 飲めない      | [Coffee is not drunk.]        |
|  | 飲めなかった    | [Coffee was not drunk.]       |
|  | 飲まれている    | [Coffee is being drunk.]      |
|  | 飲まれていた    | [Coffee was being drunk.]     |
|  | 飲まれていなかった | [Coffee was not being drunk.] |



In Japanese sentences that use passive verbs, the particle は or が marks who/what the verb is done to. In contrast, the particle に marks who/what the verb is done by.

私のケーキが猫になめられた。

[My cake was **licked** **by a cat**.]

毎日カラオケでこの歌がたくさんの人に歌われている。

[This song is **(being) sung** at karaoke every day **by many people**.]

「だれが食べた!?!」 「え、何の話? 何が食べられた?」

["Who ate it!?!"] "Huh, what are you talking about? What **was eaten**?"

だれにも見られていないので少し安心していいよ。

[You're **not being watched** **by anyone**, so you can relax a bit.]

またおくれたら部長に注意されるよ。

[If you are late again you'll **be cautioned** **by the boss**.]





## Grammar Point 9.1.2: The causative form (使役動詞)

In Japanese, the causative form is a verb conjugation pattern that has two uses. The first is to indicate that someone forces someone to do something. The second is to indicate that someone allows someone to do something. While in English we usually express these meanings via respectively putting “made” or “let” before the verb, in Japanese the verb itself conjugates to express both potential meanings.

Before looking at how to differentiate meanings, let’s begin with the conjugation pattern itself. Once again, irregular verbs must be memorized as-is, as they follow no pattern.

| Polite positive form | Plain positive form | Plain passive form | Plain causative form |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| します                  | する                  | される                | させる                  |
| きます                  | くる                  | こられる               | こさせる                 |

For ~る verbs, just remove the final る and replace it with ~させる.



勉強させないで!!!  
(Don't make me study!!!)

|           |     |   |
|-----------|-----|---|
| Plain     | 食べ  | る |
|           |     |   |
| Causative | させる |   |

|           |     |   |
|-----------|-----|---|
| Plain     | 開け  | る |
|           |     |   |
| Causative | させる |   |

Plain present positive to plain causative positive



ドアを開けさせないで!!!  
(Don't make me open the door!!!)

Finally, for ~う verbs, just like with passive verbs, start by changing the final sound to ~[x]a as though you were making the plain negative form. Afterwards, just add ~せる.

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| の   | む |
|     |   |
| ませる |   |

ま+せる  
み  
む  
め  
も

のませる

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| ころ  | す |
|     |   |
| させる |   |

さ+せる  
し  
す  
せ  
そ

ころさせる

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| はら  | う |
|     |   |
| わせる |   |

わ+せる  
い  
う  
え  
お

はらわせる

As with passive verbs, once a verb becomes a causative verb it conjugates further as a ~る verb. So while 飲ませる is “to make/let drink”, 飲ませた is “made/let drink”, 飲ませている is “making/letting drink”, 飲ませなかった is “didn’t make/let drink”, etc.

When using a causative verb in a sentence, the person who makes/lets someone or something [verb] is the topic or subject. The person who will make/allow the topic/subject to do the verb is instead marked by に in most cases.

先生が私に日本語を勉強させた。

[The teacher made/allowed me to study Japanese.]

私はボールをけらせました。

[I forced/let someone, established via context but not in the sentence, kick the ball.]

私にボールをけらせました。

[Someone established via context but not in the sentence made/let me kick the ball.]

親が私にパートナーと<sup>わか</sup>別れさせようとしている。

[My parents are trying to make me break up with my partner]



The one exception is when someone forces/allows someone to go somewhere. In that case, the destination is marked by に, and the person being forced/let go is marked by を.

ボスが私たちをととてもつまらないはくぶつかんに行かせた。

[Our boss made us go to a really boring museum.]

親が子どもを<sup>petting zoo</sup>ふれあい動物園に動物をさわりに行かせた。

[The parents let their child go to the petting zoo to touch animals.]



As you can see from the examples above, some uses of the causative form are clearly “make” or “allow” based on context. In other cases though, the meaning can be ambiguous. One way to make the “forced” meaning clear is through attaching adverbs which mean “by force”, such as きょうせいの to or むりやり.

かれは私にケーキを五つ<sup>illegal</sup>むりやり食べさせた。

[He forced me against my will to eat five cakes.]

人をきょうせいのにはたらかせるのはいほうです。

[Making people work by force is against the law.]



Here 人を is used because “people” are the direct object, with the causative form changing an intransitive verb into a transitive one. People are now what is being forced to work. If you marked someone with に, they would be doing the forcing.

This doesn't work with transitive verbs like 食べる, because they already have an established direct object. If you write 人を食べさせる that means making something/someone eat people... which hopefully isn't a sentence you'll ever need.

In contrast, connecting ~させる to a giving or receiving verb via the ~て form makes it clear that the verb means letting/allowing. When you use ~てあげる or the politer ~てさせあげる, it indicates that you (or someone in your in group) allows someone else to do something. Remember though: stating ~てさしあげる to the person you are doing something for often sounds pretentious rather than polite, so another way of saying things (such as ~てもいいです) is usually best.

かれは子どもにケーキを五つ食べさせてあげた！

[He gave the children the favor of allowing them to eat five cakes!]

犬に外であそばせてあげるね。

[I'll let the dog play outside a bit, okay?]



As with other verbs, ~させてくれる・くださる indicate that **the sentence topic allows** the verb to be **done by you** (or someone in your in group), while ~させてもらう・いただく indicate that the **sentence topic/subject receives permission** to do the verb. Let's compare some examples, paying attention to the use of は (or が), に, and the verb.

タニヤ先生が私にクラスでおかしを食べさせてくれた。

[Ms. Tanya did me the favor of letting me eat snacks in class.]

私はタニヤ先生にクラスでおかしを食べさせてもらった。

[I received the favor of being allowed to eat snacks in class from Ms. Tanya.]

父のボスが父に一週間休ませてくださったので家族で旅しました。

[My dad's boss honorably did him the favor of letting him take a week off, so we went on a trip as a family.]

父はボスに一週間休ませていただいたので家族で旅しました。

[My dad humbly received the favor of being allowed to take a week off, from his boss so we went on a trip as a family.]



With normal causative sentences, the **topic** is the forcer/allower. However, in the ~させてもらう construction, the topic **receives permission**, and the **allower** is marked by に.



In real life though, the “giver” and/or “receiver” are often dropped as they are clear from context. This is especially true when talking to the person who gave you permission.

今日行かせてくれてありがとうございます！

[Thank you for doing me the favor of allowing me to go!]

今日行かせてもらって is also fine for showing appreciation, but you wouldn't follow with “thanks” as YOU are the topic. Something like “I'm very thankful” would be fine to follow with instead as it keeps you as the topic here.

By attaching the ~ませんか patterns we discussed in **GP8.4**, you can also use either version of ~させて[verb] to request permission. Just be sure that if you include a topic, subject, or target of action, etc., you use the right particles.

使わせてくれませんか。

[Won't you let me use it?]

使わせてくださいませんか。

[Won't you let me use it, but I'm more polite?]

私に使わせてくださいませんか。

[Same as above, but specifying let ME?]

使わせてもらえませんか。

[Can I receive the favor of using it?]

あなたに使わせてもらえませんか。

[Same as above, but specifying from YOU?]

使わせていただけますか。

[Same as above, but more polite?]

使わせていただけないでしょうか。

[Same as above, but even politer?]

Actually adding "you" in a sentence like this would sound quite odd.

Be sure not to mix these up with their "normal" uses for non-causative verbs.

かれを待ってくれませんか。

[Won't you do me the favor of waiting for him please?]

かれを待たせてくれませんか。

[Could you do me the favor of making him wait?]

この映画を見ていただけないでしょうか。

[Can I humbly receive the favor of you watching this movie?]

この映画を見させていただけないでしょうか。

[Can I humbly receive the favor of being allowed to watch this movie?]

One final issue to discuss: the causative form turns intransitive verbs into transitive ones. For instance, none of the verbs below are transitive normally, but they are in the examples.

親が子どもをいすにすわらせた。

[The parent made the child sit in the chair.]

かれはいつも私をこまらせている。

[He's always making trouble for me (lit: causing me to be troubled)]

どうして私をこんなになかせているの？

[Why are you making me cry like this?]

When this occurs, the thing made or allowed to verb is marked by を instead of に



However, when a verb has a transitive/intransitive pair (like 閉める・閉まる), you generally don't use the causative form of the intransitive version. For instance, it is difficult to think of a context where 閉まらせる ("to make something shut itself") works. So even when using the causative form of an intransitive version of a pair is possible, you need to remember that the intransitive version keeps the "by itself" meaning inherent to the verb.

Intransitive

田中さんが起きました。まりこさんも起きました。  
[Tanaka woke up. Mariko woke up too.]

Transitive

田中さんがまりこさんを起こしました。  
[Tanaka woke up Mariko.]

Intransitive  
causative

田中さんはまりこさんを自分で起きさせている。  
[Tanaka lets/makes Mariko wake up by herself.]

Transitive  
causative

田中さんはまりこさんに子どもを起こさせた。  
[Tanaka made/let Mariko wake up the/their child/children.]



A simple thing to keep in mind to prevent mis-use of the causative form is that many transitive verbs already imply "make". For instance, 寝かす is "put to bed", so if you "force" someone to sleep, you may still just use 寝かす. You might use 寝させる for emphasis, but the transitive causative 寝かさせる would rarely be used (it means "let/make put to sleep"). For another example, the verb せつとくする means "to convince", so if you "make someone believe you" you just say せつとくする. The せつとくさせる from would be forcing someone to convince *someone else*, which is a bit odd. To wrap this all up, don't use the causative form just because the English equivalent used "forced" or "made"; sometimes that meaning is just already in the Japanese verb.

田中さんは寝た。まりこさんも寝た。  
[Tanaka went to sleep. Mariko slept too.]

田中さんはまりこさんを寝かした。  
[Tanaka put Mariko to bed.]

田中さんはまりこさんをむりやり寝かした。  
[Tanaka put Mariko to bed even though she didn't want to.]

Intransitive  
causative

もうおそかったが、田中さんはまりこさんを寝させてあげた。  
[It was already late, but Tanaka let Mariko sleep.]

Transitive  
causative

田中さんはまりこさんに子どもを寝かさせた。  
[Tanaka made/let Mariko put the/their kid to sleep.]



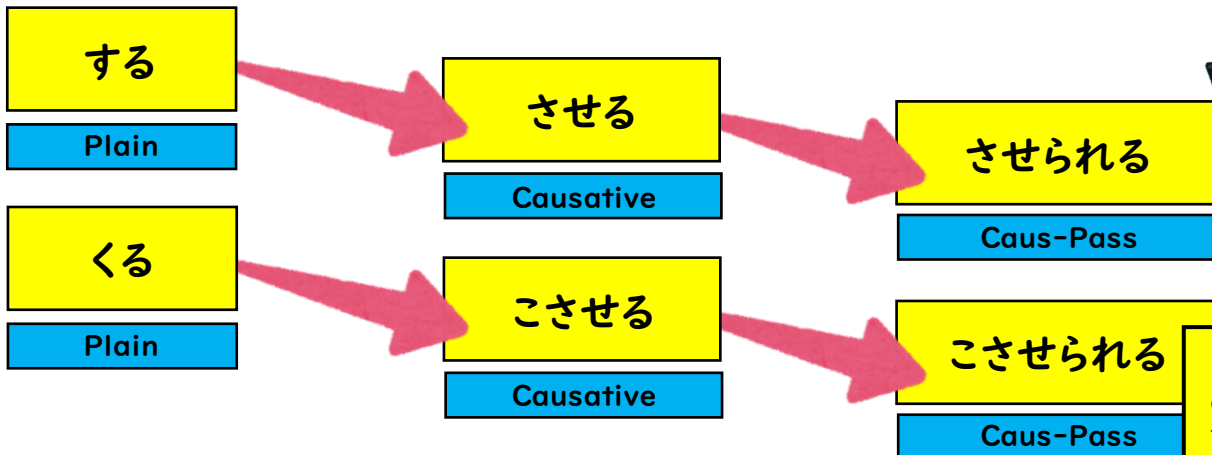


### Grammar Point 9.1.3: The causative-passive form (使役受動態)

The causative-passive form is a conjunction pattern that indicates that the topic/subject of a sentence **was forced to** do something **by someone else**.

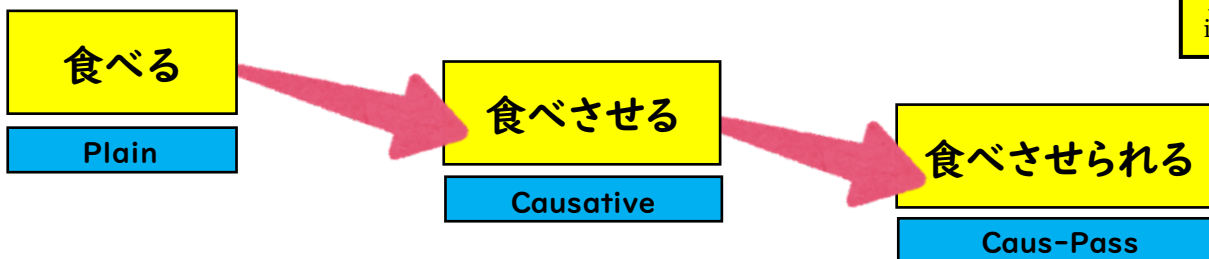
To create the causative-passive form of any verb, change it into its causative form and then add the passive  $\sim$ られる. Hence, the name causative-passive.

#### Irregular Verbs

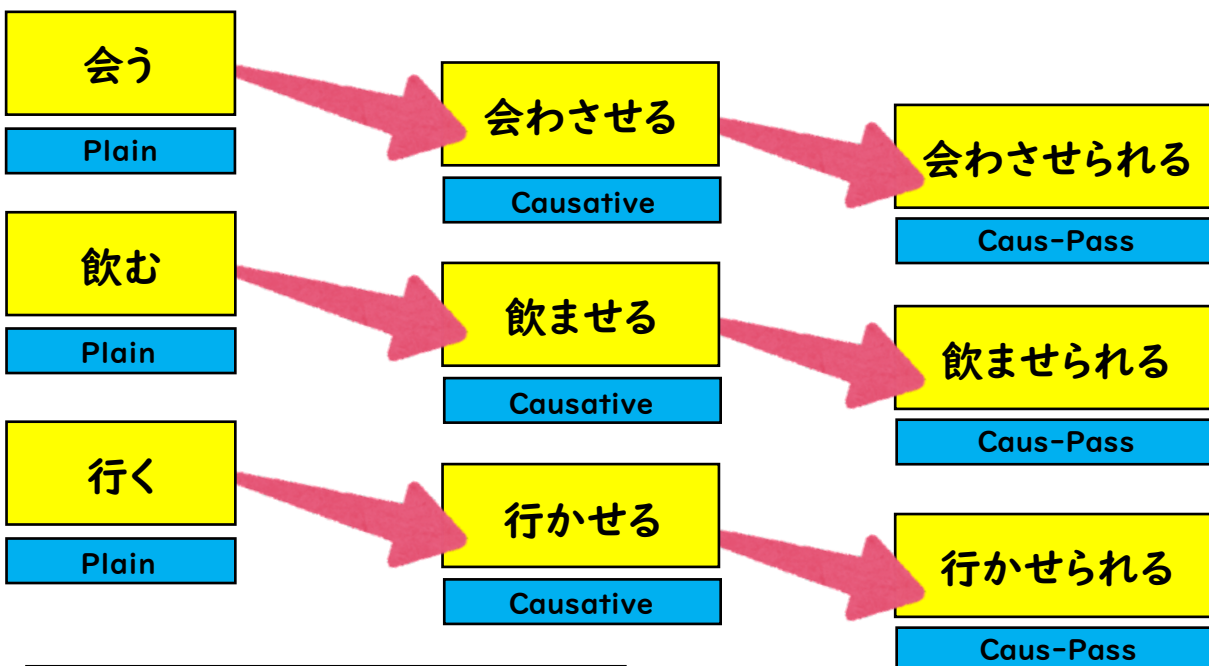


来る is rarely conjugated into the causative or the causative passive, but this is how you do it.

#### る Verbs



#### う Verbs



Super fun practice tip! Think of verbs and conjugate them out loud into each form until your brain breaks!

Longer verbs like はたらく follow the same pattern, obviously, becoming はたらかせられる, etc. I just didn't have space to use them in the image.



In a sentence that uses the causative-passive form, whatever is marked by は・が is the person **subjected to** the verb. Whatever is marked by に instead **forces the action**. Let's compare the causative, passive, and causative-passive of 食べる across simple sentences:

私はケーキを食べた。

[I ate cake.]

私は子どもにケーキを**食べさせた**。

[I **let** the kids **eat** cake.]

ケーキは子どもに**食べられた**。

[The cake **was eaten** by the children.]

子どもは私にケーキを**食べさせられた**。

[The children **were forced to eat** cake **by** me.]



Unlike the causative, the causative-passive almost always implies “forced” rather than “allowed”. Let's look at some more examples:

かのじよのすごさを**みとめさせられた**。

[I **was forced to recognize** her genius.]

仕事のパーティーでお酒をたくさん**飲ませられて**、朝まではきました。

[I **was forced to drink** a bunch of alcohol at a work party and vomited into morning.]

先生にクラスメートの前で**話させられる**のが本当にこわい。

[**Being** made to speak in front of the class by the teacher is truly terrifying.]

私は毎日夜まで仕事を**させられて**いやだ。

[I'm **forced to do** work until evening every day and it's awful.]



Be careful, as the causative-passive form of る verbs looks exactly like their causative with the potential (“can”~られる) form added to it.

**聞かせられない**話ですね。

[It's a story I **can't allow** you to hear (not a story you won't **be forced** to hear).]



When creating the causative-passive form of う-verbs, the ~[x]aせられる form is often shortened to ~[x]aされる. That is, the middle 「~せら~」 becomes 「~さ~」. This is not possible for verbs that end in ~す like 話す, but is often preferred over the “correct” version. For instance, 行かされる is much more common to hear/see than 行かせられる.

飲ませられる。

行かせられる。

歌わせられた。

飲まされる。

行かされる。

歌わされた。

[Am forced to drink.]

[Am forced to go.]

[Was forced to sing.]

The ~[x]aされる versions can sound slightly more casual.

Let's look at some comparative examples of normal, passive, causative, and causative passive verbs. Some sentences will be a bit silly, but this is to help our comparisons. Pay close attention to how the topic of the sentences and use of particles changes.

私はサメを食べた。

[I ate shark.]



私はお酒を飲んだ。

[I drank alcohol.]



私はサメに食べられた。

[I was eaten by a shark.]

お酒が私に飲まれた。

[The booze was drunk by me.]

私はサメに食べさせた。

[I made/let a shark eat something.]

私はお酒を飲ませた。

[I let/made someone drink alcohol.]

かれはサメを食べさせた。

[He made/let someone eat shark.]

私にお酒を飲ませた。

[Someone let/made me drink alcohol.]

私はかれにサメを食べさせられた。

[I was forced to eat a shark by him.]

私はかれにお酒を飲ませられた。

[I was forced to drink alcohol by him.]

サメに食べられたくないの*で*いっしょに泳ぐ前に魚をたくさん食べさせる。

[I don't want to be eaten by the shark, so I make it eat fish before I swim w/ it.]

私に魚を食べさせられたサメがもっと大きいサメに食べられた。

[The shark that was forced by me to eat fish was eaten by a bigger shark.]

お酒を飲ませてもらうこととお酒を飲ませられることは全然ちがう。

[Being allowed to drink alcohol and being forced to drink it are totally different.]





### Grammar Point 9.1.4: Passive/causative/causative-passive particle review

Before moving on, let's double check our particles for these forms. In a **passive sentence**, the **topic/subject** is **affected by the verb**. **What is marked by に does the verb**.

私はライオンに食べられた。

[I was eaten by a lion.]

ライオンは私に食べられた。

[A lion was eaten by me.]



In a **causative sentence**, the **topic/subject lets/allows** whatever is marked by **に** to verb, unless the verb is a movement verb or causative-intransitive verb, in which case you use **を**.

先生は私にピザを食べさせた。

[The teacher let/made me eat pizza.]

先生は私を家に帰らせた。

[The teacher let/made me go home to my house.]

If you translated this as  
[I was made/allowed to eat pizza by the teacher]  
that would be fine! Japanese and English might  
say the same thing different ways. But it would  
not reflect the grammar.



When a **causative verb** is used with a giving/receiving verb, the use of particles matches the normal pattern for that verb. So with **～させてくれる**, **the topic gives permission inward** to **what is marked by に**, and with **～させてあげる** **the topic gives permission outward** to **what is marked by に** (both are the same as the causative pattern above), but with **～させてもらう** **the topic/subject receives permission inward** from **what is marked by に** (inverse to the causative pattern above).

先生は私にあそばせてくれた。

[The teacher did me the inward-favor of letting me play.]

私は父に休ませてあげた。

[I did my dad the outward-favor of letting him rest.]

私は父に休ませてもらった。

[I received the favor of being allowed to rest from my dad.]



For **causative-passive** verbs, **the topic/subject is forced to do some kind of action** by **what is marked by に**.

私はきびしい先生に本を十さつ読ませられた。

[I was forced to read ten books by the strict teacher.]



## Grammar Point 9.2: Requesting actions with ~てほしい・~てもらいたい

In Japanese, attaching ~ほしい or ~もらいたい to a verb's て form expresses a desire for someone (marked by に) to do that verb. This is less direct than simply saying “please”, but more flexible, as it can be used to talk about things you want to receive from third parties. In some contexts these forms can sound demanding, especially if used to people above you in status, but are generally seen as semi-polite to polite in other situations.

When talking to someone, if a target of action (~に) is absent, they are the assumed target.

きょうじゅう

今日中にこの部屋をそうじしてほしいです。

[I want you to clean (want to receive cleaning from you) this room today.]

かれにかれしをはやくふってもらいたい。

[I want him to dump his boyfriend for me quickly.]

明日までファイルをてんそうしてもらいたいです。。。

[I'd like you to forward me the file by tomorrow...]

じゃ、あんたにやってもらうよ。

[Well, I'll have you do it for me then.]

The present tense ~てもらう without ~たい, unlike ~てほしい, almost always sounds like a threat or demand.



The politeness of this phrase can be increased by changing もらう into the potential form and/or いただく, and/or by adding a conditional “if” afterwards.



四月にプロジェクトを始めていただきたいとぞんじますかよろしいでしょうか。

[I'd like to receive you starting this project before April, but is that possible?]

今日ばんごはんを作っていただけたらとてもうれしいです。

[I'd be delighted if I could receive you making dinner tonight.]

This “if” can also just be followed with “I think” to create a request. The ~たら, ~と, and ~れば “ifs” all see use here with minimal difference between them.



もうおそいとしょうちしていますがこれを返品させていただければとぞんじます。

[I humbly know I'm already late, but I was thinking if I could humbly receive being allowed to return this...]

行ってもらえたらと思います。。。。

[It would be great if could have you go for me.]

### Grammar Point 9.3: The ~てしまう ending

The use of ~しまう after a verb's ~て form creates two potential implications. The first is that an act is completed, or done all the way through.

もうにげ**てしまった**。

[They've already run **all the way** away.]

きのうはとてもはやく寝**てしまいました**。

[I went **completely** to sleep quite quickly yesterday **and that action is done**.]



In other cases, the ~てしまう form conveys a sense of regret, especially when the sentence it is used in is referring to a negative outcome.

ふられ**てしまった**。

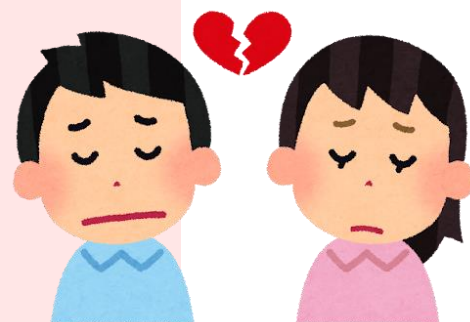
[I was dumped. **It's over and done, and regrettable**.]

話している時にかれの名前をわすれ**てしまいました**。

[I **unfortunately** forgot his name while we are talking.]

あ、ごめん！あなたのカップケーキを食**てしまった**かも。

[Oh, sorry! I might have eaten your cupcake. **Oops, it's gone**.]



Obviously, there are many cases where context is required to tell the difference between these two meanings. The grammar form itself provides no clues, but tone of voice, surrounding commentary, etc., can help you figure out what is meant.

読**てしまった**。

[I **finished** reading it *or* I read it **and regret doing so**.]

ひどい本だと分かっていたのに最後まで読**てしまった**。

[Even though I knew it was a terrible book, I **wasted time** reading it to the end.]

家にある本を全部読**てしまった**ので新しいのを買いに行かないと。

[I've **completely** read all the books in my house, so I need to go buy new ones.]



### Grammar Point 9.4: Words using 以

The kanji list for this chapter includes the kanji 以. This kanji is rarely used on its own, but is combined with a number of other kanji to indicate an extent. For instance:

|           |                |            |                  |           |             |
|-----------|----------------|------------|------------------|-----------|-------------|
| いらい<br>以来 | since          | いこう<br>以降  | after,<br>onward | いぜん<br>以前 | prior<br>to |
| いか<br>以下  | below,<br>less | いじょう<br>以上 | above,<br>more   | いない<br>以内 | within      |

These 以 words can stand on their own, but often attach directly to the noun. When the 以-word connects to a noun like this, they can be followed by の, turning them into a modifier, or by に, making them work like an adverb. Sometimes though, に is dropped.

十六才以下の子どもはこのライドにのってはいけません。

[Children under 16 must not ride this ride.]

三十分以上かかると思うよ。でも、二時間以内にできるはずだ。

[I think it will take more than 30 minutes. But it should be possible within 2 hours.]

以前はだいじょうぶだったが、くらくなったから八時以降出かけてはいかない。

[It was fine earlier, but because it got dark, you can't go out after 8.]

その日以来、会わなかった。

[I didn't meet them since that day.]

以来 rarely combines with に,  
unless its part of a clause.

The 以来 construction can be used like から with ~て form verbs to indicate “after verb”, and the 以下 form can also be used with verbs like 思う to show expectations.

工事が始まって以来、家のまわりがとてもうるさくなった。

[Since the construction began, it's become quite noisy around my house.]

思った以上(に)大変だった。

[It was harder than I thought it would be.]



### Grammar Point 9.5: Requests via ~なさい

The ~なさい form is a version of “please” which can have implications of an authoritative or even demanding request (think of a request that does not expect and/or actually allow for refusal). A prototypical use case would be a parent talking to their child, or on an official form. While not rude by any means, it should not be used to people above you in status, and can function like a demand in angry tones of voice.

The construction of ~なさい forms are simple: just attach ~なさい to the verb's stem. Remember: the verb stem of all verbs is the ~ます form with ~ます deleted.

いちろうくん、朝ごはんをはやく食べなさい。

[Ichiro, (as your parent I'm ordering you to) eat your breakfast quickly.]

名前とじゅうしょをここで書きなさい。

[Please write your name and address here (its part a form, you have no choice).]

私にバカなことを言うのをやめなさい。

[Stop telling me stupid things (I'm quite frustrated with you).]



### Grammar Point 9.6: ままでに as a deadline

In the last textbook, we learned まで as “until”. The phrase ままでに functions the exact same way as まで grammatically, but instead means “by/before”. That is, it sets a hard deadline that something must be accomplished by, rather than indicates how long or far something goes to until.

明日ままでに送らないとこまります。

[If you don't send it by tomorrow it will be a problem.]

かのじょが来るままでに部屋をかたづけなさい。

[Clean up your room before she comes.]

何時ままでにひつようですか。

[What time do you need it until?]

あなたが日本に来るままでに英語をもっと勉強しないといけない。

[I need to study a lot more English before you come to Japan.]



ままでに and 前に can sometimes be interchangeable, but ままでに cannot mean “before” in a sense without a deadline, as in “I'll go before class.”

# CHAPTER 9 KANJI ・ かんじ

Wow! You are just one week away from knowing all the kanji on JLPT N4... plus extras!

|   |             |                                             |                                                                |
|---|-------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 発 | Meaning     | Emit, depart, discharge                     |                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    | はな (つ) ・ おこ (る) ・ た (つ)                     |                                                                |
|   | On yomi     | はつ ・ ほつ                                     |                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | はっぴよう<br>発表<br>はったつ<br>発達<br>はつぱい<br>発売     | かいはつ<br>開発<br>しゅっぱつ<br>出発<br>はっけん<br>発見                        |
| 表 | Meaning     | Representative, model                       |                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    | あらわ (す) ・ あらわ (れる) ・ おもて                    |                                                                |
|   | On yomi     | ひよう                                         |                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | はっぴよう<br>発表<br>ひよう し<br>表紙<br>おもて うら<br>表と裏 | だいひよう<br>代表<br>ひようげん<br>表現<br>ひようじよう<br>表情                     |
| 族 | Meaning     | Family, tribe                               |                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                             |                                                                |
|   | On yomi     | ぞく                                          |                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | かぞく<br>家族                                   | みんぞく<br>民族                                                     |
| 試 | Meaning     | Test, attempt                               |                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    | ため (し) ・ ため (す) ・ ころ (みる)                   |                                                                |
|   | On yomi     | し                                           |                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | ため<br>試し<br>ため<br>試す<br>ころ<br>試みる           | し けん<br>試験<br>し あい<br>試合<br>し こうさく ご<br>試行錯誤 (trial and error) |

Both あらわす and あらわれる can have the first three あらわ written as 表 or 現.

Using 表 implies an expression, as in showing thanks, joy, or something via words. 現 is a more general appearance, as in a literal object showing up.





|   |             |                                                                                                                            |
|---|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 験 | Meaning     | Verification, effect                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | ため (す) ・あかし・しるし                                                                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | けん・げん                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses | <div>し けん<br/>試験</div> <div>たいけん<br/>体験</div> <div>けいけん<br/>経験</div> <div>じっけんしつ<br/>実験室</div>                             |
| 写 | Meaning     | Describe, copy                                                                                                             |
|   | Kun yomi    | うつ (す) ・うつ (る)                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | しゃ                                                                                                                         |
|   | Sample uses | <div>うつ<br/>写す</div> <div>しゃしん<br/>写真</div> <div>うつ<br/>写る</div> <div>びょうしゃ<br/>描写する</div>                                 |
| 真 | Meaning     | Truth                                                                                                                      |
|   | Kun yomi    | まこと・ま                                                                                                                      |
|   | On yomi     | しん                                                                                                                         |
|   | Sample uses | <div>しゃしん<br/>写真</div> <div>しんじつ<br/>真実</div> <div>しんけん<br/>真剣に</div> <div>ま なか<br/>真ん中</div>                              |
| 集 | Meaning     | Collect, gather                                                                                                            |
|   | Kun yomi    | あつ (める) ・あつ (まる)                                                                                                           |
|   | On yomi     | しゅう                                                                                                                        |
|   | Sample uses | <div>あつ<br/>集める</div> <div>しゃしんしゅう<br/>写真集</div> <div>あつ<br/>集まる</div> <div>しゅうちゅう<br/>集中する</div> <div>ぼしゅう<br/>募集する</div> |
| 特 | Meaning     | Special                                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | とく                                                                                                                         |
|   | Sample uses | <div>とく<br/>特に</div> <div>どくとく<br/>独特</div> <div>とくべつ<br/>特別</div> <div>とっきゅうれっしゃ<br/>特急列車</div>                           |



|   |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 別 | Meaning     | Seperate                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | Kun yomi    | わか (れる) ・わ (ける)                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | On yomi     | べつ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses | <div>わ<br/>別ける</div> <div>とくべつ<br/>特別</div> <div>わか<br/>別れる</div> <div>べつべつ<br/>別々</div>                                                                                                                                                     |
| 急 | Meaning     | Hurry                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    | いそ (ぐ)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | きゅう                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses | <div>いそ<br/>急ぐ</div> <div>きゅう<br/>急に</div> <div>きんきゅう<br/>緊急</div> <div>とっきゅうれっしゃ<br/>特急列車</div>                                                                                                                                             |
| 以 | Meaning     | Because, due to                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | Kun yomi    | もって                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | On yomi     | い                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Sample uses | <div>い ぜん<br/>以前</div> <div>い じょう<br/>以上</div> <div>い ご<br/>以後</div> <div>い か<br/>以下</div> <div>い こう<br/>以降</div> <div>い がい<br/>以外</div> <div>い ない<br/>以内</div> <div>い らい<br/>以来</div>                                                       |
| 野 | Meaning     | Field, rustic                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    | の                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | しょ・や                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|   | Sample uses | <div>やきゅう<br/>野球</div> <div>やさい<br/>野菜</div> <div>ぶんや<br/>分野</div> <div>のらいぬ    のらねこ<br/>野良犬・野良猫</div> <div>やせいどうぶつ<br/>野生動物</div> <div>なが の けん<br/>長野県 (Nagano prefecture)</div> <div>やしん<br/>野心</div> <div>やばんじん<br/>野蛮人 (barbarian)</div> |





|   |             |                                      |                                             |
|---|-------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 有 | Meaning     | Have, exists                         |                                             |
|   | Kun yomi    | あ (る)                                |                                             |
|   | On yomi     | ゆう                                   |                                             |
|   | Sample uses | あ<br>有る<br>ゆうめい<br>有名                | ゆうこう<br>有効<br>ゆうりょう<br>有料                   |
| 無 | Meaning     | None, not, no                        |                                             |
|   | Kun yomi    | な (い)                                |                                             |
|   | On yomi     | む、ぶ                                  |                                             |
|   | Sample uses | む だ<br>無駄<br>む り<br>無理               | む りょう<br>無料<br>ぶ じ<br>無事                    |
| 意 | Meaning     | Idea, desire, mind                   |                                             |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                      |                                             |
|   | On yomi     | い                                    |                                             |
|   | Sample uses | い み<br>意味<br>い けん<br>意見<br>い し<br>意思 | い しき<br>意識<br>い と て き<br>意図的<br>ちゅう い<br>注意 |
| 昼 | Meaning     | Afternoon                            |                                             |
|   | Kun yomi    | ひる                                   |                                             |
|   | On yomi     | ちゅう                                  |                                             |
|   | Sample uses | ひる<br>昼<br>ひる はん<br>昼ご飯              | ちゅうしょく<br>昼食<br>ひる ね<br>昼寝                  |
| 夕 | Meaning     | Evening                              |                                             |
|   | Kun yomi    | ゆう                                   |                                             |
|   | On yomi     | せき                                   |                                             |
|   | Sample uses | ゆうしょく<br>夕食<br>ゆうがた<br>夕方            | たなばた<br>七夕<br>ゆうだち<br>夕立                    |



## CHAPTER 9 WORKBOOK・ワークブック 9

### Exercise 9.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

#### 1. 発

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 発            | 発 | 発 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | フ | フ | フ | フ | フ | フ | フ | フ | 発 |  |

#### 2. 表

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 表            | 表 | 表 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 十 | 十 | 十 | 十 | 表 | 表 | 表 |  |

#### 3. 族

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 族            | 族 | 族 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 一 | 一 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 方 | 族 | 族 | 族 |

#### 4. 試

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 試            | 試 | 試 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 試 | 試 |

#### 5. 験

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 験            | 験 | 験 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 一 | 験 | 験 |

#### 6. 写

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| 写            | 写 | 写 |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 一 | 一 | 写 | 写 |  |  |  |  |  |



### 13. 野

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 野            | 野 | 野 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 7 | 7 | 日 | 甲 | 里 | 里 | 野 | 野 | 野 |

### 14. 有

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 有            | 有 | 有 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | ナ | ナ | 有 | 有 | 有 |  |  |  |

### 15. 無

|              |   |   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 無            | 無 | 無 |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 16. 意

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 意            | 意 | 意 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 一 | ㇏ | ㇏ | 立 | 𠂔 | 𠂔 | 音 | 音 | 音 | 音 | 意 | 意 | 意 |

### 17. 昼

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 昼            | 昼 | 昼 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 18. 夕

|              |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 夕            | 夕 | 夕 |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | 夕 | 夕 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Exercise 9.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. しけんのまえにせんせいにはつぴょうさせられた。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. とくべつなひるごはんだったからしゃしんをとらせてもらった。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. ゆいめいじんにあうために、ファンがあつまっているところまでいそいでいった。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. ゆうしょくのためのやさいがないのでいちじかんいないにかいにいきなさい。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. いちにちににじゅうじかんいじょうはたらくのがむりだ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. かぞくがかえるまでにおもちゃをすべてかたづけてしまわないといけない。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. いかでじぶんのごいけんをさんびやくもじいいないにかきなさい。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 9.3

Choose the right word from each (                      ) so that the Japanese and English match in *meaning* (don't be tricked by trying to match the English grammar or vocabulary 100%).

1. I had no choice but to go.

私は（行かれた・行かせた・行かせられた）。

2. They let her say her opinion.

かのじょは意見を（言わせてもらった・言わせてくれた・言わされてもらった）。

3. I've been asked that many times.

何回も（聞かれた・聞かせた・聞かせられた）よ。

4. The teacher let him play at the park.

かれは先生に公園で（あそんでくれた・あそばせてくれた・あそばせてもらった・あそんでもらった）。

5. They aren't allowed to sing, it's our rule.

私たちはかれらを（歌って・歌われて・歌わせて・歌わせられて）（あげない・くれない）。

6. A dog bit me. Well, I mean, I let it bite me though.

犬に（かんだ・かまれた・かませた・かませられた）。まあ、私が（かんだ・かまれた・かませた・かませられた）けど。

7. I was allowed to use the computer by my dad. He also got me a game!

父がコンピューターを（使って・使われて・使わせて・使わせられて）（くれた・あげた・もらった）。かれにゲームも買って（くれた・あげた・もらった）。

8. They won't make it for me. I've got no choice but to make it.

私に（作って・作られて・作らせて・作らせられて）（くれない・あげない・もらわない）。だから、（作られている・作らせている・作らせられている）。

9. I don't think he's going to let me.

私のかれに（やって・やられて・やらせて・やらせられて）（あげない・くれない・もらわない）と思う。

10. You can't look at this.

私は（見せて・見られて・見させて・見させられて）（あげない・くれない）よ。

11. Ha! You thought I'd just go home and let you win? The fight's not over yet!

あなたは（帰って・帰られて・帰らせて・帰らせられて）（あげる・くれる・もらう）と思ったの？ 戦<sup>たたか</sup>いがまだまだだよ。

### Exercise 9.4

Translate each similar sentence in each set into Japanese as literally as possible, using the passive, causative, or causative passive as appropriate. Pay close attention to particles.

1. He was eaten by a lion \_\_\_\_\_

He let a lion eat fish \_\_\_\_\_

He was forced to eat a lion \_\_\_\_\_



2. She made me cry \_\_\_\_\_

She allowed me to cry \_\_\_\_\_

I was allowed to cry by her \_\_\_\_\_

I was cried at by her \_\_\_\_\_



3. I touched the alien (うちゅうじん) \_\_\_\_\_

I was touched by the alien \_\_\_\_\_

I was allowed to touch the alien's hand by the alien \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

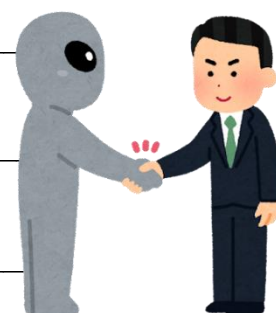
The alien allowed me to touch its hand \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

The alien forced me to touch its hand \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

I was forced to touch the alien \_\_\_\_\_



## Exercise 9.5

Write the correct particles to make the English sentence match each potential Japanese translation in terms of *meaning* (not literal grammar). Use “X” for “no particle”.

1. Tanaka let Mariko play his guitar.

田中さん（ ）真理子さん（ ）自分のギター（ ）ひかせてあげた。

田中さん（ ）真理子さん（ ）ギター（ ）ひかせてもらった。

2. We ate it.

私たち（ ）食べました。

私たち（ ）食べられました。

3. They made the boy cry.

かれら（ ）男の子（ ）なかせた。

かれら（ ）せい（ ）男の子（ ）ないた。

4. Send it to me before tomorrow.

明日（ ）前（ ）送rinaさい。

明日（ ）まで（ ）送rinaさい。

5. They should arrive within a week.

一週間（ ）以内（ ）着く（ ）はずだ。

## Exercise 9.6

For each blank, choose 以来, 以降, 以前, 以下, 以上, or 以内 to create a sentence that makes (the most) sense.

1. けっきょくに四週間（ ）かかってしまった。

2. 多分十分（ ）にできると思いますので少々お待ちください。

3. 来月（ ）ここに車が通れなくなる。歩行者のための道になる。

4. 毎日ジムで<sup>m u s c l e</sup>きんにくを作ろうとしているけど、体重がまだ60キロ（ ）だ。

5. （ ）でサインをする前に、（ ）のじょうほうをもう一回ちゃんと読んでください。サインして（ ）一年間キャンセルできないから。

6. 思った（ ）においしかった。

7. インターネット（ ）の時代に別の国の友だちを作るのが<sup>むずか</sup>難しかった。

8. <sup>は た ち</sup>二十歳（ ）の方にアルコールを売ってはいけない。

9. （ ）からここに住んでみたかったよ。



### Exercise 9.7

For each image, think up some commands which might make sense to say to someone using ~なさい to fix the problem.

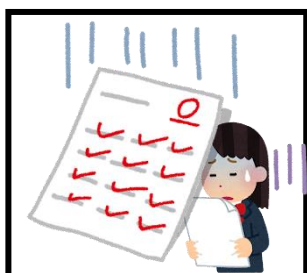
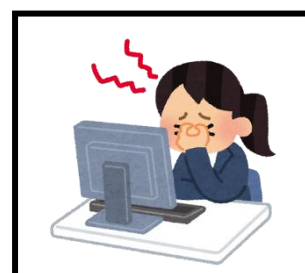


1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_



1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 9.7

Using までに, try writing about five real-world deadlines you have coming up, or things you want to accomplish by a certain time!

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_

## CHAPTER 9 WORKBOOK ANSWER KEY • 解答集 9

### Exercise 9.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

## 1. 発

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                                                                |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------------------------------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| 発            | 発 | 発 |   |   |   |   |   |   | general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts. |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order | フ | フ | フ | フ | フ | フ | フ | フ | 発                                                              | 発 |  |  |  |  |

## 2. 表

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 表            | 表 | 表 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 丰 | 丰 | 丰 | 表 | 表 | 表 |  |  |  |  |

### 3. 族

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 族            | 族 | 族 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 一 | ㇀ | 方 | 方 | 𠂆 | 𠂆 | 𠂆 | 𠂆 | 𠂆 | 𠂆 | 𠂆 | 𠂆 |

## 4. 試

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 試            | 試 | 試 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 一 | 二 | 三 | 言 | 言 | 言 | 言 | 訃 | 訃 | 訃 | 訃 |

## 5. 験

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 驗            | 驗 | 驗 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order | 1 | ㄥ | ㄥ | ㄥ | ㄥ | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 驗 | 驗 | 驗 | 驗 | 驗 | 驗 | 驗 | 驗 |

## 6. 写

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 写            | 写 | 写 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 7. 真

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 真            | 真 | 真 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 十 | 市 | 市 | 市 | 市 | 直 | 直 | 真 |  |

## 8. 集

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 集            | 集 | 集 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 丨 | 丨 | 乚 | 乚 | 乚 | 乚 | 隹 | 隹 | 隹 | 集 |

## 9. 特

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 特            | 特 | 特 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 乚 | 牛 | 牛 | 牛 | 牛 | 牛 | 特 | 特 | 特 |  |

## 10. 別

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 別            | 別 | 別 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 冂 | 口 | 弓 | 弓 | 別 | 別 |  |  |  |  |

## 11. 急

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 急            | 急 | 急 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 乚 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 急 | 急 | 急 |  |

## 12. 以

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 以            | 以 | 以 |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丨 | 乚 | 乚 | 以 | 以 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 13. 野

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 野            | 野 | 野 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 7 | 7 | 日 | 甲 | 里 | 里 | 野 | 野 | 野 |  |

### 14. 有

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| 有            | 有 | 有 |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | ナ | ナ | 有 | 有 | 有 |  |  |  |  |  |

### 15. 無

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 無            | 無 | 無 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | ナ | ナ | ナ | 年 | 年 | 年 | 無 | 無 | 無 | 無 |

### 16. 意

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 意            | 意 | 意 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 一 | ナ | ナ | 立 | 立 | 音 | 音 | 音 | 意 | 意 |

### 17. 昼

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 昼            | 昼 | 昼 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | フ | コ | 尸 | 尺 | 尺 | 尺 | 尺 | 昼 | 昼 |  |  |

### 18. 夕

|              |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 夕            | 夕 | 夕 |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | ノ | 夕 | 夕 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Exercise 9.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. しけんのまえにせんせいにはつひょうさせられた。

Rewrite: 試験の前に先生に発表させられた。

Translate: I was made to present by the teacher before the test.

2. とくべつなひるごはんだったからしゃしんをとらせてもらった。

Rewrite: 特別な昼ご飯だったから写真をとらせてもらった。

Translate: Because it was a special lunch, I received permission to take a photo.

3. ゆいめいじんにあうために、ファンがあつまっているところまでいそいでいった。

Rewrite: 有名人に会うために、ファンが集まっているところまで急いで行った。

Translate: In order to meet a/the famous person, I rushed to where the fans gathered.

4. ゆうしょくのためのやさいがないのでいちじかんいないにかいにいきなさい。

Rewrite: 夕食のための野菜がないので一時間以内に買いに行きなさい。

Translate: We don't have any veggies for dinner so please go buy some within an hour.

5. いちにちににじゅうじかんいじょうはたらくのがむりだ。

Rewrite: 一日に二十時間以上はたらくのが無理だ。

Translate: Working more than 20 hours in one day is impossible.

6. かぞくがかえるまでにおもちゃをすべてかたづけてしまわないといけない。

Rewrite: 家族が帰るまでにおもちゃを全てかたづけてしまわないといけない。

Translate: I must completely clean up all the toys before my family comes home.

7. いかでじぶんのごいけんをさんびゃくもじいないにかきなさい。

Rewrite: 以下で自分のご意見を三百文字以内に書きなさい。

Translate: Please write your opinion below in 300 characters or less.

### Exercise 9.3

Choose the right word from each ( ) so that the Japanese and English match in *meaning* (don't be tricked by trying to match the English grammar or vocabulary 100%).

1. I had no choice but to go.

私は（行かれた・行かせた・**行かせられた**）。

2. They let her say her opinion.

かのじよは意見を（**言わせてもらった**・言わせてくれた・言わされてもらった）。

3. I've been asked that many times.

何回も（**聞かれた**・聞かせた・聞かせられた）よ。

4. The teacher let him play at the park.

かれは先生に公園で（あそんでくれた・あそばせてくれた・**あそばせてもらった**・あそんでもらった）。

あそんでもらった here would be "had the teacher play with/for him". It loses the "allowed" meaning.

5. They aren't allowed to sing, it's our rule.

私たちはかれらを（歌って・歌われて・**歌わせて**・歌わせられて）（**あげない**・くれない）。

6. A dog bit me. Well, I mean, I let it bite me though.

犬に（かんだ・**かまれた**・かませた・かませられた）。まあ、私が（かんだ・かまれた・**かませた**・かませられた）けど。

7. I was allowed to use the computer by my dad. He also got me a game!

父がコンピューターを（使って・使われて・**使わせて**・使わせられて）（**くれた**・あげた・もらった）。かれにゲームも買って（くれた・あげた・**もらった**）。

8. They won't make it for me. I've got no choice but to make it.

私に（**作って**・作られて・作らせて・作らせられて）（**くれない**・あげない・もらわない）。だから、（作られている・作らせている・**作らせられている**）。

9. I don't think he's going to let me.

私のかれに（やって・やられて・**やらせて**・やらせられて）（あげない・くれない・**もらわない**）と思う。

～やらせてくれない requires you to be the target of action here, as the "giver" needs to be the topic.

10. You can't look at this.

私は（見せて・見られて・**見させて**・見させられて）（**あげない**・くれない）よ。

11. Ha! You thought I'd just go home and let you win? The fight's not over yet!

あなたは（**帰って**・帰られて・帰らせて・帰らせられて）（あげる・くれる・**もらう**）と思ったの？ 戦いがまだまだだよ。

### Exercise 9.4

You are of course welcome to answer these in polite form.

Translate each similar sentence in each set into Japanese as literally as possible, using the passive, causative, or causative passive as appropriate. Pay close attention to particles.

1. He was eaten by a lion かれはライオンに食べられた。

～させてあげた is OK too.

He let a lion eat fish かれはライオンに魚を食べさせた。

He was forced to eat a lion かれはライオンを食べさせられた。



2. She made me cry かのじょが私をなかせた。

She allowed me to cry かのじょが私をなかせてくれた。

I was allowed to cry by her 私はかのじょになかせてもらった。

I was cried at by her 私はかのじょになかれた。



3. I touched the alien (うちゅうじん) うちゅうじんをさわった。

I was touched by the alien うちゅうじんにさわられた。

I was allowed to touch the alien's hand by the alien うちゅうじんの手を  
(その)うちゅうじんにさわらせてもらった。

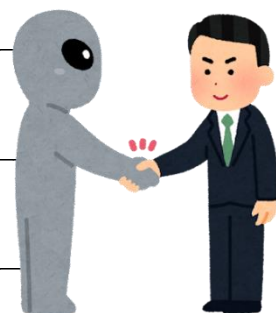
The alien allowed me to touch its hand うちゅうじんが私に  
手をさわらせてくれた。

The alien forced me to touch its hand うちゅうじんが私に

手を(むりやりに・きょうせいにてきに)さわらせた。

I was forced to touch the alien 私はうちゅうじんをさわらせられた。

さわらせた also works.



### Exercise 9.5

が could be は in all cases

Write the correct particles to make the English sentence match each potential Japanese translation in terms of *meaning* (not literal grammar). Use “X” for “no particle”.

1. Tanaka let Mariko play his guitar.

田中さん（が）真理子さん（に）自分のギター（を）ひかせてあげた。

田中さん（に）真理子さん（が）ギター（を）ひかせてもらった。

2. We ate it.

私たち（が）食べました。

私たち（に）食べられました。

“It was eaten by us” still means “we ate it”

3. They made the boy cry.

かれら（が）男の子（を）なかせた。

かれら（の）せい（で）男の子（が）ないた。

4. Send it to me before tomorrow.

明日（の）前（に）送きなさい。

明日（X）まで（に）送きなさい。

5. They should arrive within a week.

一週間（X）以内（に）着く（X）はずだ。

### Exercise 9.6

For each blank, choose 以来, 以降, 以前, 以下, 以上, or 以内 to create a sentence that makes (the most) sense.

1. けっきょくに四週間（以上）かかってしまった。

2. 多分十分（以内）にできると思いますので少々お待ちください。

3. 来月（以来）ここに車が通れなくなる。歩行者のための道になる。

4. 毎日ジムできんにくを作ろうとしているけど、体重がまだ60キロ（以下）だ。

5. （以下）でサインをする前に、（以上）のじょうほうをもう一回ちゃんと読んでください。サインして（以来）一年間キャンセルできないから。

6. 思った（以上）においしかった。

7. インターネット（以前）の時代に別の国の友だちを作るのが難しかった。

8. 二十歳（以下）の方にアルコールを売ってはいけない。

9. （以前）からここに住んでみたかったよ。

Don't forget that 方 is a polite word for “person”



### Exercise 9.7

For each image, think up some commands which might make sense using ~なさい to fix the problem.

These are just examples, your answers may/should differ.



1. しずかになりなさい。

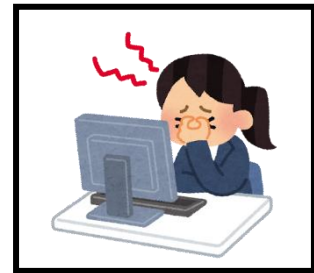
2. お家へ帰りなさい。

3. バーに行きなさい。

1. 少し休みなさい。

2. 外でちょっと歩きなさい。

3. めぐすり  
目薬を使いなさい。



1. もっと勉強しなさい。

2. 先生と話しなさい。

3. cram school  
じゅくへ行きなさい。

### Exercise 9.7

Using までに, try writing about five real-world deadlines you want to accomplish by a certain time!

These are just examples, your answers may/should differ.

1. セven時までにばんごはんを食べなければなりません。

2. 朝に午前六時までにシャワーをあびないと仕事におくれる。

3. 来年までに新しい仕事を見つけたいです。

4. JLPT をうけるまでにこの教科書<sup>か</sup>を最後まで読むつもりだ。

5. 六月までに体重を五キロへらすよていです。

## CHAPTER TEN ・ 第十章

### VOCABULARY ・ ごい

#### Nouns

あいて  
相手

interlocuter, other 人

いわかん  
違和感

sense of oddness

うんでんしゅ  
運転手

driver

おんど  
温度

temperature

かいけいし  
会計士

accountant

かんごし  
看護師

nurse

かんきょう  
環境

environment

きゅうきゅうしゃ  
救急車

ambulance

けんちく  
建築

architecture

じゅうい  
獣医

veterinarian

じゅぎょうりょう  
授業料

tuition

しょうがくきん  
奨学金

scholarship

しょうぼうし  
消防士

fire fighter

しょうぼうしゃ  
消防車

fire truck

しょくどう  
食堂

cafeteria

どうりょう  
 동료

co-worker

はんにな  
犯人

criminal

へいわ  
平和

peace

むかし  
昔

a long time ago

むだづかい  
無駄遣い

wasteful use

もんく  
文句

a complaint

#### Phrases

せわ  
お世話になる

to owe someone a debt

つまり  
つまり

in other words

ようするに  
ようするに

to sum it up

けっこうです  
けっこうです

I don't need it, I'm fine  
as-is, no thanks

#### う Verbs

だます

to deceive

つたわる

to be conveyed [intr.]

はかる

to measure

みおく  
見送る

to send off

なやむ

to worry

計る = measure time  
or amounts

測る = measure  
distance

量る = measure  
weight or volume

#### る Verbs

いじめる

to bully

せめる

to blame

た  
建てる

to build

つかまえる

to catch (a person)

つたえる

to convey, to express

ほめる

to compliment

まちがえる

to mistake

#### Compound Verbs

がっかりする

to be dissatisfied

がまんする

to put up with

#### な Adjectives

さいわい

fortunate, blessed

けんせつてき  
建設的

constructive

てきとう

appropriate, slapdash

Yes, the two meanings are  
completely opposite. It's annoying.

#### Adverbs

たまたま

by chance

てつやで

to do all night

## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 10.1: Questions within sentences

The ~かどうか form creates a “yes/no” question within a sentence, working like “whether (or not)” in English. It attaches to words or phrases that end in the plain form, although any potential uses of ~だ are dropped. The use of particles connecting かどうか to the verb that follows is optional, and they are often dropped.

かれがもう会計士に会いに行ったかどうか (が) 分からない。  
[I don't know if he's gone to see the accountant yet.]

エミさんのせいかどうか知らないけど、聞いてみる。  
[I don't know whether it was Emi's fault, but I'll ask.]

今日は昼ご飯を家で食べるかどうかはまだ決まってない。  
[It's not yet decided whether I'll eat lunch at home.]

明日暑くなるかどうか (を) チェックしてください。  
[Please check if it will become hot tomorrow.]

All the questions in these examples can be answered by “yes” or “no”.

“Did he go to the accountant yet?”  
“Yes, he did.” “No, he didn’t.”

Therefore, ~かどうか is used.

Because ~かどうか turns any verb phrases its attached to into noun phrases, you can add the particle ~の after it to create complex constructions.

平和になるかどうかの問題じゃなくて、平和になれるかどうかの問題だ。  
[It's not a problem of if peace will come, but one of if peace can come.]

のうりょくがあるかどうかの話より、心が良いかどうかの話のほうが大事です。  
[Talk of whether they have talent is less vital than that of if their heart is good.]



In contrast, ~か attaches to clauses ending in the plain form to create open ended questions in a sentence that cannot be answered by “yes” or “no”, as in these examples:

だれが行くか分からないし、いつ行くか分からないし。何も分からない、私。  
[I don't know who's going. I don't know when they'll go. I don't know anything.]

どうすればいいかまよっているんです。  
[I'm at a loss about (the question of) what to do.]

かれに何が食べたいかについて聞いてみてください。  
[Try asking him about what he wants to eat.]

だれがやるべきかが分かる。しかし、その人がやるかどうかは分からない。  
[I know who should do it. But I don't now if that person will do it.]

As you can see, English translations of this grammar point often don't have an equivalent of the 「か」 in them.



## Grammar Point 10.2: Defining things via という

The phrase ~という [noun (phrase)] is placed after a word or phrase in the plain form (dropping any potential ~だs) to begin defining it. The [noun (phrase)] that comes after ~という places the [noun (phrase)] before ~という in a specific category.

The most straightforward use of this grammar form is to name and define specific items or individuals. This is especially common when you assume the other person might not know who or what you're taking about, so they need more information than just the name.

このまちには、「クロ」という有名なネコがいました。

[In this town, there was a famous cat called "Kuro".]

「マナちゃんの大ぼうけん」というマンガがごぞんじですか。

[Do you know the manga "Mana's Grand Adventure"?]

これはなつとうという食べ物です。日本には人気があります。

[This is a food known as "natto". It is popular in Japan.]



It is possible for という to disappear in a translation!

By adding more detail before or after ~という, you can then define concepts or items in great detail. In particular, by placing a verb phrase in front of ~という and then attaching ~こと or ~の after, you create a phrase which describes an action, phenomenon, or concept that either doesn't have a name or you don't know the name for.

「食べすぎる」ということはよくない!」とよく父に言われた。

[I was often told by my dad that "(the thing of) eating too much is no good".]

あやまるべきなのにあやまらないというのははずかしい行動だよ。

[(The act of) not apologizing when you should apologize is embarrassing behavior.]

自分の部屋を自分でかたづけたということはえらいよ。よくやったね。

[(Your action of) cleaning up your room by yourself is admirable. Great job.]

Finally, ~という can also be used to place something within a larger category, defining specifically what about the thing you find to be important in a given context.

きょうしという仕事はとても大変だと思う。

[I believe that a teacher, as a profession, is quite a difficult one.]

「私のせいではないのでつたわなくてもいい」という考え方がきらいです。

[I hate the mindset of "since it's not my fault, I don't need to help".]

私たちは先生だからいじめという社会問題についてふかく考えるべきだ。

[As we are teachers, we should think hard about the social problem of bullying.]



### Grammar Point 10.3: The “As a noun” form として

By applying ~として to the end of a noun, we create the phrase 「as a [noun]」. Just like in English, this is a simple construction that can be used for three major purposes: 1) to state the position, job, form, or identity someone/something [verbs] as....

今はきょうしとしてはたらいている。

[Right now, (someone is) working as a teacher.]

留学生として日本に来たんです。

[(Someone) came to Japan as a study abroad student.]

うまい日本酒を作る町として世界中に知られている。

[It is known world over as a town that makes delicious sake.]



...2) to indicate that something is used for a purpose that it normally is not...

かれはペンをおはしとして使った。

[He used pens as chopsticks.]

とりあえず私たちはこのソファをベッドとして使おう。

[For now, let's use this sofa as a bed.]



...or 3) to state someone's position to frame a claim.



けいさつとしてほうりつのニュアンスを知っておくべきだ。

[As a police officer, you should be aware of the nuances of the law in advance.]

それはかんごしとしてやってはいけないことですよ。

[That is something that, as a nurse, you must not do.]

### Grammar Point 10.4.a: Metaphors via ~のよう

The phrase ~のよう functions very similar to the ~みたい form from GP5.3, in that [Noun A]のような[Noun B] and [Noun A]みたいな[Noun B] both mean “a B that is like A”.

しょうぼうしゃのような車が大好きだ・しょうぼうしゃみたいな車が大好きだ。

[I like vehicles similar to fire trucks.]

かれはいつもピエロと同じような服を着ている。

[He's always dressed just like a clown.]

このようないわかんをかんじさせる映画をあまり見たくない。

[I don't want to watch movies that make me feel this kind of odd feeling.]

「noun」と同じよう（な・に） is often used to stress exact (rather than general or metaphorical) overlap or repetition.  
Use な to modify nouns, and に to create an adverb.

Or “odd feelings similar to this” if you need visualize the grammar.





Both ~[Noun A]のように and ~[Noun A]みたいに can also be followed by verbs to mean “to [verb] like [Noun A]”. The form 「[Noun A]を[Noun B]のように[verb]」 seen in the final two sentences below then means “to [verb] [A] as though it is [B]”.



あなたの<sup>ように</sup>走れない・あなた<sup>みたいに</sup>走れない。はやすぎる。  
[I can't run **like** you **(do)**. You're too fast.]

よってしまうと、かれはいつもはかせ<sup>professor</sup>の<sup>begin talking</sup>ように話しはじめる。  
[He always begins talking **like** he's some kind of professor when he gets drunk.]

しずかさんがお酒を水<sup>のように</sup>飲む。  
[Shizuka drinks booze **like it's** water.]

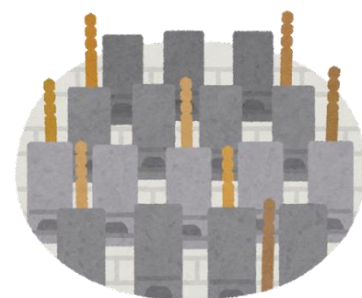
あのオタクがレアカードを<sup>たからもの</sup>宝物<sup>のように</sup>大事にする。  
[That otaku takes care of rare cards **as though they were** treasure.]



You can also follow ~のように・みたいに with adjectives to mean “as [adjective] as [A]”.

その後で、パーティーがはかば<sup>graveyard</sup>かの<sup>ように</sup>しずかだった。  
[After that, the party was as silent **as** the grave.]

ゴリラ<sup>のように</sup>強い動物だね。  
[It's an animal that's a strong **like** a gorilla.]



### Grammar Point 10.4.b: Verbs and ~ように

The ~ように form (not ~のように) can be used after verbs, but the meaning is not often as straight forward as with other word types. In the most simple cases, the use of [verb]ように can still create a metaphor via indicating “as though [verb]”, although this grammar point often requires the verb in front of ~ように to be part of a larger relative clause.

歩いている<sup>ように</sup>おどるんですよ。それがこのダンスのコツです。  
[You dance **as though** you are walking. That's the trick to this dance.]

兄が今やっている<sup>ように</sup>ちゃんと勉強しなさい。  
[Please attend to your studies, **just as** your older brother is doing right now.]

多くの人に見られている<sup>かん</sup>ように感じてしまった。  
[I felt **as though** I was being watched by a lot of people.]

分かっていないのに分かっている<sup>ように</sup>話している。  
[They are talking **like** they understand despite that they don't.]



In many cases, however, 「[verb A]ように[verb B]」 instead shows that both actions have a relationship, as in “do(n’t do) [verb B] so that [verb A] does(n’t) occur”.

虫が入らないように窓を閉めておいてください。

[Please close the windows **so that** bugs don’t get in.]

部屋が明るくなるように窓を全部開けました。

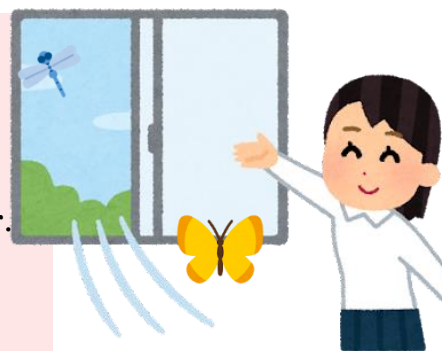
[I opened all the windows **so that** the room would get brighter.]

だまされないように気をつけてください。

[Be careful **so that** you aren’t deceived.]

明日がとても良い日になるように今日がんばりましょう。

[Let’s do our best today **to make** tomorrow an excellent day.]



The ~[verb]ようになる construction then indicates that a change has occurred.

お寿司がどんどんアメリカで食べられるようになった。

[Sushi gradually **became** eaten in America.]

最近毎日使うようになった。

[Recently, **I’ve begun** using it every day.]

くもがなくなったら、山が見えるようになるはずだ。

[Once the clouds depart, the mountain should **become** visible.]

子どもをうんでから、四年間子どもとなりで寝るようになってしまった。

[After I had a kid, I **ended up** sleeping next to them for four years.]



Remember to use ~見える and ~聞こえる for “literally able to see/hear”



Finally, when ~ように is used after the plain potential form of verbs (the “can do” form), the meaning changes to “so that [can verb]”.

ここで食べられるようにテーブルをかたづけなさい。

[Please clean up the table **so that** we **can eat** here.]

明日早く起きられるように今日は早く寝ます。

[I’m going to sleep early today **in order to** **be able to wake up** early tomorrow.]

たくさんの人がさんかできるように、チケットを無料でくばった。

[**So that** many people **can participate**, we handed out tickets for free.]

すぐ払えるようにクレジットカードを出しておいた。

[I took out my credit card ahead of time **to ensure that** I **could pay** ASAP.]

「noun」がありますように can also be used as a kind of hope or prayer, as in 「これからも平和がありますように」



## Grammar Point 10.5: 気 words

Japanese has a massive number of verb phrases which involve the use of 気. While it is impossible to list all of them here, this section contains a large number of frequently used forms, divided by the particle used after 気. Here are some common uses of 気を:



ここはとてもあぶないところですから気をつけましょう。

[This is a very dangerous area, so **let's be careful**.]

かのじょはよく気を使うね。

[She's good at **paying attention to the needs of others**.]

ダイエットしているので口に入れる物に気をくばっている。

[I'm dieting, so I'm **keeping a strict eye on** what I put in my mouth]

飲みすぎて、バーの前で気をうしなった。

[They drank too much and **lost consciousness** in front of the bar.]

かれが好きな男性の気を引こうとした。

[He **tried to get the attention of** the guy he liked.]

一びょうだけ気をぬいてしまったが、その間にころされた。

[They only **zoned out** for a second, but in that moment they were killed.]

こんがっき  
今学期はすべてのクラスに落ちたが気を落とさないようにしている。

[I failed all my classes this semester, but I'm trying **to not get discouraged**.]



You can also combine 気 with に to create a number of other useful phrases:

かれのことがとても気に入っている。でも、かれは私が気に入らないみたい。

[I'm **really into him**. But it seems like he's **not a fan of me**.]

はやく犯人をつかまえるかどうか気になっている。

[I'm **concerned about/interested in** whether they will catch the criminal quickly.]

そんなことを気にしないでください。ぜったいにだいじょうぶですよ。

[**Don't worry** about that kind of stuff. It will be alright for sure.]

まきさんの言ったことがちょっと私の気にさわった。

[What Maki said **offended** me somewhat.]

みらいのことが気にかかっているようです。

[The future seems to be **weighing on** their mind.]





The most productive combination of 気 is probably 気が, as below. Note that many of these forms require a relative clause before 気.

まだ気がついていないみたい。はやく行こう。

[It seems as if they **haven't noticed** yet. Let's get a move on.]

今日はねむいのであまり外であそぶ気がない。

[I'm sleepy today so I **don't** really **feel like** going out.]

かれが変なことを考えている気がする。

[I **have a feeling** that he's thinking about something odd.]

気がぬける前に飲んだほうがいいよ。

[It's best to drink it before it **goes flat**.]

私は気がすむまでがんばらないと、死ぬまでこうかいすると思う。

[If I don't do my best until **I'm satisfied**, I think I'll regret it until the end.]

仕事をうしなってから気がくるったと言われた。

[I was told they **lost their mind** after they lost their job.]

かのじょと気がとても合うのでよくいっしょにあそぶのです。

[We hang out a lot because we **I along together** with her really **well**.]

かんごしなのに気が短い。多分その仕事に合わないね。

[They are a nurse, but have a short temper. Probably not well suited to the job.]

わかいので気ははやいというのはよくあることだけど、気がちりすぎている。

[**Being rash** is common when you're young, but you are **getting too distracted**.]

気がむいたら私の家まであそびに来てください。

[**If you feel like it**, please come hang out at my house.]

ライオンのように気が強い人とネズミのように気が弱い人がいた。

[There was a person as **strong-willed** as a lion, and a person as **timid** as a mouse.]

なん  
何よりも気がきく人とけっこんしたいと思う。

[More than anything, I think I want to marry someone who **is considerate**.]

やらなければならないと分かるのに、なかなか気がのらない。

[I know that I have to do it, but **I just don't feel motivated**.]



While there are plenty more phrases using 気, what you have seen so far cover a large number of the key ones. To summarize, here's a table listing all the phrases:

| 気を Phrase              | Translation                       | 気に Phrase                                   | Translation                                |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| [nounに]気をつける           | to be careful                     | [nounが]気 <sup>い</sup> に入る                   | to like                                    |
| [nounに]気をつかう           | to be mindful of,<br>to attend to | [nounが]気になる                                 | to worry about, or to<br>become enfatuated |
| [nounに]気をくばる           | to pay attention to               | [nounを]気にする                                 | to care/worry about                        |
| 気をうしなう                 | to lose consciousness             | [人の]気にさわる                                   | to offend                                  |
| [人の]気を引く               | to grab attention                 | [人の]気にかかる                                   | to weigh on one's<br>mind                  |
| 気をぬく                   | to zone out                       |                                             |                                            |
| 気を落とす                  | to get discouraged                |                                             |                                            |
| 気が Phrase              |                                   | Translation                                 |                                            |
| [nounに]気がつく            |                                   | to notice                                   |                                            |
| [verb]気がある             |                                   | motivated to [verb], feeling like [verb]ing |                                            |
| [verb]気がする             |                                   | feel as though [verb] is true/will occur    |                                            |
| 気がぬく                   |                                   | a drink etc. goes flat                      |                                            |
| 気がすむ                   |                                   | to be satisfied                             |                                            |
| 気がくるう                  |                                   | to go mad, to lose one's mind               |                                            |
| [人と]気が <sup>あ</sup> 合う |                                   | to get along well with                      |                                            |
| 気が短い                   |                                   | short-tempered                              |                                            |
| 気がはやい                  |                                   | rash, (too) quick to act                    |                                            |
| 気がちる                   |                                   | to be distracted                            |                                            |
| [nounに]気がむく            |                                   | to feel inclined to do something            |                                            |
| 気が強い                   |                                   | tough, strong-willed                        |                                            |
| 気が弱い                   |                                   | weak-willed, timid                          |                                            |
| 気がきく                   |                                   | thinks of others, considerate               |                                            |
| [nounに]気がのる            |                                   | to be motivated to do                       |                                            |



## Grammar Point 10.6: Using ~ていく・てくる to show the start/end of actions

The verbs 行く and 来る can be attached to a verb's ~て form to show whether a motion is heading away from you or towards you.

鳥が空へ飛んで行った。

[The birds flew away into the sky.]

かれがここまで歩いて来たのでつめたいお茶でもあげよう。

[He walked all the way to here so let's give him some cool tea at least.]



Both forms can also refer to your own movements too.

じゃ、買って行く。

[Okay, I'll buy it and then go.]

じゃ、買って来るね。

[I'll buy it and be back.]

More metaphorically, ~ていく and ~てくる can also note that an action is beginning or has run up to the current time, respectively. In this use, the verbs serve as auxiliary verbs, and therefore like ~てみる etc. usually do not receive kanji.



今日から毎日れんしゅうしていきます。

[From today, I'm going to start the new behavior of practicing daily.]

これから予定を決めていくつもりだ。

[We plan to set the plans going forward after this.]

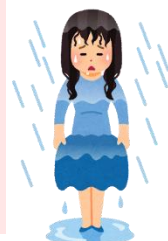
日本語を六年間以上勉強してきた。だから、少し分かってきた。

[I've studied Japanese for over six years up to now. So I now get it a bit.]

雨がふってきたし、おなかがすいてきたし、いやだ。

[Rain's coming down now. My stomach is now growling. This is awful.]

The translation of "now" is a bit forced, but the point is that the event or feeling has fully arrived, whereas with ~ていく it's going to begin and continue on.



The ~てくる form can also be used to indicate that you are finally beginning to sense something (e.g., see, smell, hear). This use does not work with ~ていく.

左を見てね。ふじ山がまもなく見えてくるよ。

[Look to your left. Mount Fuji will soon come into view.]



### Grammar Point 10.7: Desiring positive futures via ~といい

By attaching ~といい to a clause ending in the plain form, you note that it would be good if that thing did/did not occur. When attaching to a noun or な adjective, だ is required. This pattern has two main uses: in the first, which is used to speak about someone else's future or a shared desire, ~ね usually follows at the end.



明日はれるといいですね。そうじゃないとピクニックができません。

[I **hope** it will be sunny tomorrow. If not, we won't be able to have a picnic.]

え、明日デートがあるの？ やさしい人だといいね！

[Oh, you've got a date tomorrow? **Hopefully** they'll be a kind person.]



The ~ね ending is dropped in the second use, which is for talking about your own desires. However, in this context the phrase generally implies some hesitation or doubt that the outcome will happen. You cannot use this phrase when you have total control over the outcome; when referring to your own actions, be sure to use the potential ("can") form instead.

かれがパーティーに来るといいんだけど、多分来ないよね。

[I'd **love it if** he came to the party, but he probably won't will he?]

パパが私におこらないといいんですが...

[**It would be nice if** dad wasn't upset at me but (I bet he will be)...]

しょうらい日本に住めるといいと思う。

[I think **it would be great if** I could live in Japan in the future.]



### Grammar Point 10.8: Expressing regret via ~てすみませんでした

The ~てすみませんでした form is used to apologize and show regret for an action you performed. This can be attached to positive and negative ~て forms; in the latter case, it shows your regret for *not* accomplishing an action.



しめきりまでにレポートを終わらせられなくてすみませんでした。

[I'm **terribly sorry** I couldn't complete the report before the deadline.]

ピザを全部一人で食べてしまってすみませんでした。

[I'm **sorry that** I ate the entire pizza all by myself.]



### Grammar Point 10.9: Using たびに to mean “every time”

The phrase たびに, which can be written in kanji as 度に, is used after verbs in their **plain positive polite present** form to mean “every time [verb]” or “whenever [verb]”.

私の犬を獣医につれて行くたびにじゅういかまれてしまう。

[Every time I take my dog to the vet I get bitten.]

だまされる度に自分のことをせめる。

[Whenever I/they get tricked I/they blame myself/themself.]



Just like [verb]前に, the verb before たびに is in the **present form** even if the sentence itself ends in the **past tense**, which creates a clear difference to English.

上手に説明できないけど、かれにほめられるたびにいやな気分になった。

[I can't explain well, but every time I was complimented by him I felt awful.]

子どもの時、学校に行く度にいじめられたのできらいだった。

[When I was a kid, I was bullied whenever I went to school so I didn't enjoy it.]

Both ほめられる and 行く are in present tense, but the translations of “complimented” and “went” are not.

### Grammar Point 10.10: Seeking confirmation via negative endings

In casual Japanese, ~じゃ・ではない (か) can be used in questions with a rising intonation to seek confirmation or agreement – often similar to the use of ね. This attaches to the end of any word in **any plain form conjugation**, but attaches to nouns and な adjectives in their present plain positive form without だ.

がまんしないのが悪いけど、がまんしすぎるのもダメじゃないか。

[Impatience is bad, yes, but isn't putting up with too much also bad?]

これはとてもおいしいじゃん？

[This is delicious, don't you think (rising intonation)?]

In very casual speech, か is sometimes dropped, and じゃない sometimes becomes じゃん, as in ダメじゃない? or ダメじゃん?

In polite speech, ~じゃ・ではないですか and ~じゃ・ではないでしょうか work in the same way. The second form has a feeling of emphasis or even incredulity at times.

せいせきがとてもいいのでよい奨学金しょうがくきんをもらえるじゃないでしょうか。

[As (person)'s grades are good, they should be able to get a good scholarship, right?]



## CHAPTER 10 KANJI ・ かんじ

Congratulations! After this chapter you now know all the N4 kanji, plus a few dozen extra.

|   |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 場 | Meaning         | Place, location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ば                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しょう・ちょう                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>ば しょ</small><br/>場所         </div> <div> <small>し じょう</small><br/>市場         </div> <div> <small>ば あい</small><br/>場合         </div> <div> <small>かい じょう</small><br/>会場         </div> <div> <small>たち ば</small><br/>立場         </div> <div> <small>とう じょう</small><br/>登場する         </div> <div> <small>しょく ば</small><br/>職場         </div> <div> <small>とう じょう じん ぶつ</small><br/>登場人物         </div> |
| 所 | Meaning         | Place                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ところ・どころ・とこ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しょ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>ば しょ</small><br/>場所         </div> <div> <small>じ む しょ</small><br/>事務所         </div> <div> <small>ところ</small><br/>所         </div> <div> <small>だい ところ</small><br/>台所         </div> <div> <small>じゅう しょ</small><br/>住所         </div>                                                                                                                                                              |
| 度 | Meaning         | Times, degrees                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | たび                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | と・ど・たく                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>なん ど</small><br/>何度も         </div> <div> <small>せい ど</small><br/>制度         </div> <div> <small>おん ど</small><br/>温度         </div> <div> <small>こん ど</small><br/>今度         </div> <div> <small>し たく</small><br/>支度         </div> <div> <small>てい ど</small><br/>程度         </div>                                                                                                                  |
| 町 | Meaning         | Village, street, block                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | まち                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ちょう                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>まち</small><br/>町         </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

|   |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 去 | Meaning     | Leave, pass, last                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | Kun yomi    | さ (る)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | On yomi     | こ・きよ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>さ</small><br/>去る </div> <div> <small>きよねん</small><br/>去年<br/><br/> <small>か こ</small><br/>過去 </div>                                                                                                                      |
| 医 | Meaning     | Doctor, medicine                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Kun yomi    | くすし・い (やす)                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | On yomi     | い                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>い しゃ</small><br/>医者 </div> <div> <small>い がく</small><br/>医学<br/><br/> <small>い し</small><br/>医師 </div> <div> <small>じゅう い</small><br/>獣 医 </div>                                                                         |
| 洋 | Meaning     | Western, ocean                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | よう                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>ようふく</small><br/>洋服<br/><br/> <small>ようふう</small><br/>洋風<br/><br/> <small>せいよう</small><br/>西洋 </div> <div> <small>たいせいよう</small><br/>大西洋 (Atlantic Ocean)<br/><br/> <small>たいへいよう</small><br/>太平洋 (Pacific Ocean) </div> |
| 和 | Meaning     | Japan, harmony, peace                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | Kun yomi    | やわ (らげる) ・なご (む) ・なご (やか)                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | わ・か・お                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>わ しょく</small><br/>和 食 </div> <div> <small>わ ふう</small><br/>和風 </div> <div> <small>へい わ</small><br/>平和<br/><br/> <small>い わ かん</small><br/>違和感 </div>                                                                     |
| 業 | Meaning     | Vocation, performance, skill                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | Kun yomi    | わざ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | ごう・ぎょう                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>き ぎょう</small><br/>企 業<br/><br/> <small>じゅぎょう</small><br/>授 業 </div> <div> <small>そつぎょう しき</small><br/>卒 業 (式)<br/><br/> <small>じゅうぎょういん</small><br/>従 業 員 </div>                                                         |

|   |                 |                                                                                                                                                     |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 界 | Meaning         | World                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | かい                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>せ かい<br/>世界</div> <div>だいに じ せ かい たい せん<br/>第二次世界大戦</div> <div>せ かい かん<br/>世界観</div> <div>げん かい<br/>限界</div>                                   |
| 送 | Meaning         | Send                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | おく (る)                                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | そう                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>おく<br/>送る</div> <div>ほう そう<br/>放送</div> <div>み おく<br/>見送る</div> <div>ゆう そう<br/>郵送</div>                                                        |
| 計 | Meaning         | Calculate, measure, plot                                                                                                                            |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | はか (る)                                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | けい                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>はか<br/>計る</div> <div>けい かく<br/>計画</div> <div>かい けい し<br/>会計士</div> <div>けい さん<br/>計算</div> <div>とう けい が く<br/>統計学</div> <div>と けい<br/>時計</div> |
| 習 | Meaning         | Learn                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | なら (う) ・なら (い)                                                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しゅう ・じゅ                                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>なら<br/>習う</div> <div>れん しゅう<br/>練習</div> <div>しゅう かん<br/>習慣</div>                                                                              |
| 身 | Meaning         | Body, self, meat, contents                                                                                                                          |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | み                                                                                                                                                   |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しん                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>なか み<br/>中身</div> <div>じ しん<br/>自身</div> <div>さし み<br/>刺身</div> <div>しゅっ しん<br/>出身</div>                                                       |



|   |             |                                                    |
|---|-------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 堂 | Meaning     | Hall, chamber                                      |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | どう                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | しょくどう<br>食堂                                        |
| 員 | Meaning     | Member, employee                                   |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                    |
|   | On yomi     | いん                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | てんいん じゅうぎょういん<br>店員 従業員<br>ぜんいん こっかいぎいん<br>全員 国会議員 |
| 建 | Meaning     | Build                                              |
|   | Kun yomi    | た (てる) ・ た (つ)                                     |
|   | On yomi     | こん ・ けん                                            |
|   | Sample uses | た けんちく<br>建てる 建築<br>たてもの けんせつぎ<br>建物 建設的           |
| 転 | Meaning     | Rotate, change, revolve, fall down                 |
|   | Kun yomi    | ころ (ぶ) ・ ころ (がす)                                   |
|   | On yomi     | てん                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | ころ うんでん<br>転ぶ 運転<br>自転車                            |



わあ、自転車で転んだ！

# CHAPTER 10 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 10

## Exercise 10.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

### 1. 場

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 場            | 場 | 場 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 土 | 土 | 土 | 土 | 土 | 場 | 場 |

### 2. 所

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 所            | 所 | 所 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | フ | コ | 戸 | 戸 | 所 | 所 | 所 |  |  |

### 3. 度

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 度            | 度 | 度 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 一 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 度 | 度 |  |

### 4. 町

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 町            | 町 | 町 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 冂 | 冂 | 田 | 田 | 田 | 田 | 町 |  |  |

### 5. 去

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| 去            | 去 | 去 |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 土 | 去 | 去 |  |  |  |  |  |

### 6. 医

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| 医            | 医 | 医 |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | フ | フ | 写 | 写 |  |  |  |  |  |





### Exercise 10.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. このまちに「アルマビルディング」というたてもものがあるかどうかきいてみよう。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. いしゃへいく たびにきがよわくなってしまう。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. ぜんいんがしょくどうでパーティーのけいかくについてはなしてきたが、まだどのばしょでやるかがきまっていない。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. ころばないようにじてんしゃのつかいかたをちゃんとならっていく。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. きょねんとおなじようにようふうのスーツをプレゼントとしておくるつもり？

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. どのだいがくから卒ぎょうするかわからないけど、わふうの卒ぎょう式だといい。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. わしょくというのは、せかいでとてもにんきのあるりょうりになってきた。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 10.3

In each blank, place a verb phrase followed by either か or かどうか to translate each of the sentence pairs.

1. I don't know how many children I'll have.

子どもを何人\_\_\_\_\_分かりません。

I don't know if I'll have kids.

子どもを\_\_\_\_\_分かりません。

2. Please explain how I should go.

どうやって\_\_\_\_\_説明してください。

Please explain if I should go.

\_\_\_\_\_説明してください。

3. I will check to see if someone will speak.

だれかが\_\_\_\_\_をかくにんします。

I will check where he will speak.

かれが\_\_\_\_\_をかくにんします。

4. The problem is if it might be eaten by the dog.

犬に\_\_\_\_\_がもんだいだね。

The problem is whether I can make the dog eat it.

犬に\_\_\_\_\_がもんだいだね。

5. I was asked where I'm going tomorrow.

明日\_\_\_\_\_聞かれた。

I was asked how I'll be going tomorrow.

明日\_\_\_\_\_聞かれた。

### Exercise 10.4

Choose either か, かどうか, という, or として from each ( ) to create a grammatically correct sentence that makes sense. Then, translate the sentence.

1. 今先生 (か・かどうか・という・として) 話しているので、こんなことを言うべき (か・かどうか・という・として) 分かりませんが...

---

2. 日本人 (か・かどうか・という・として) の意見があるが、どうやって言うべき (か・かどうか・という・として) まよっている。

---

3. かれをほめる (か・かどうか・という・として) じゃなくて、かれをどうやって上手にほめられる (か・かどうか・という・として) (か・かどうか・という・として) 質問について考えたほうがいい。上司 (か・かどうか・という・として) 毎日部下をほめるべきだ。

---

---

4. 日本 (か・かどうか・という・として) 国では、明日の食べ物のためのお金がある (か・かどうか・という・として) を心配している人がふえていると思う？

---

5. だれがやる (か・かどうか・という・として) (か・かどうか・という・として) のを聞かないで、「自分がやるよ」と自分で言う人がりっぱだね。

---

6. たしかに食べ物 (か・かどうか・という・として) おいしいが、カリフォルニアロール (か・かどうか・という・として) おすしが和食 (か・かどうか・という・として) (か・かどうか・という・として) 質問に答えられない。

---

---

### Exercise 10.5

From each group, match each metaphor to its translation.

- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. A dog like a cat                  | A. 猫のような犬                             |
| 2. A cat like a dog                  | B. 猫のように飲む犬                           |
| 3. A dog that drinks like a cat      | C. 犬のような猫                             |
| 4. A cat that drinks like a dog      | D. 犬のように飲む猫                           |
|                                      |                                       |
| 1. 見られているように話す                       | A. Sleeping like a corpse             |
| 2. こわれているように見える                      | B. Talking as though you know things  |
| 3. 知っているように話す                        | C. Speaking like you're being watched |
| 4. 死んでいるように寝る                        | D. Looks as though it's broken        |
|                                      |                                       |
| 1. Can eat it like it a soup         | A. 食べられるように飲む                         |
| 2. Eat like you're drinking          | B. 食べなくてもいいように飲んでおく                   |
| 3. Drink it so you can eat           | C. スープのように飲める                         |
| 4. Drink it so you don't have to eat | D. 飲んでいるように食べる                        |

### Exercise 10.6

Fill in the blanks to create functional sentences:

1. お金がなくならないように\_\_\_\_\_ほうがいい。
2. だまされないように\_\_\_\_\_ください。
3. \_\_\_\_\_ようにアパートをかたづておこう。
4. \_\_\_\_\_ようにかさを持ってください。
5. \_\_\_\_\_ように\_\_\_\_\_年間勉強してきた。
6. \_\_\_\_\_として\_\_\_\_\_ように何をすればいいですか。
7. マイクさんは\_\_\_\_\_のように\_\_\_\_\_かどうか分かりません。
8. \_\_\_\_\_できるように\_\_\_\_\_。



### Exercise 10.7

Use the right verbs **and** particles after each 気 to translate the sentences.

1. 彼が気\_\_\_\_\_ように気\_\_\_\_\_かどうかが気\_\_\_\_\_。  
“I’m concerned about if we can grab his attention so he doesn’t lose consciousness.”
2. 気\_\_\_\_\_けど気\_\_\_\_\_人だから気\_\_\_\_\_ようにがんばる。  
“We don’t get along, but they are a caring type so I try not to offend them.”
3. 気\_\_\_\_\_と思うが、私は気\_\_\_\_\_漢字が気\_\_\_\_\_。  
“I don’t imagine you noticed, but I don’t like the kanji for 気.”
4. ちょっと気\_\_\_\_\_しまって、気\_\_\_\_\_人にちゅういされた。  
“I zone out a bit, and was cautioned by someone with a short temper.”
5. たいていやる気\_\_\_\_\_が、気\_\_\_\_\_時もあるので時々気\_\_\_\_\_。  
“I’m usually motivated but there are times when I’m not, so I sometimes get discouraged.”
6. あの気\_\_\_\_\_子どもに気\_\_\_\_\_。  
“We must keep an eye on that crazy kid.”
7. あなたが気\_\_\_\_\_気\_\_\_\_\_。どうして気\_\_\_\_\_んですか。  
“I feel like you weren’t being careful. Why did you get distracted?”
8. 気\_\_\_\_\_ので終わらせるまで気\_\_\_\_\_と気\_\_\_\_\_。  
“It’s weighing on my mind, so I’ve realized that I won’t be satisfied until I finish it.”
9. ビールは気\_\_\_\_\_が私は気\_\_\_\_\_人だから気\_\_\_\_\_。  
“My beer has gone flat, but I’m quite tough so I’m not worrying about it.”
10. 気\_\_\_\_\_人とはたらくのにぜんぜん気\_\_\_\_\_。  
“I’m not really inclined to work with a short-tempered individual.”
11. かれが私に気\_\_\_\_\_かどうかを気\_\_\_\_\_。気のせいかな。  
“I’m concerned as to whether they’re infatuated with me. Maybe it’s all in my head.”
12. よく気\_\_\_\_\_人だけど、時々気\_\_\_\_\_て、落ち着けない気\_\_\_\_\_。  
“They are very mindful, but sometimes rash, and it makes me feel like they can’t calm down”.



## 7. 洋

|              |   |   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |                                                                                     |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 洋            | 洋 | 洋 |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |                                                                                     |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 8. 和

|              |   |   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |                                                                                     |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 和            | 和 | 和 |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |                                                                                     |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 9. 業

|              |   |   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |                                                                                     |
|--------------|---|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 業            | 業 | 業 |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |                                                                                     |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 10. 界

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 界            | 界 | 界 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 11. 送

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 送            | 送 | 送 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 12. 計

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 計            | 計 | 計 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



## Exercise 10.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. このまちに「アルマビルディング」というたてものがあるかどうかきいてみよう。

Rewrite: この町／街に「アルマビルディング」という建物があるかどうか聞いてみよう。

Translate: Let's ask if there is a building in this town called the "Arma building"

2. いしゃへいく たびにきがよわくなくなってしまう。

Rewrite: 医者へ行く度に気が弱くなってしまう。

Translate: Every time I go to the doctor, I get nervous.

3. ぜんいんがしょくどうでパーティーのけいかくについてはなしてきたが、まだどのばしょでやるかがきまっていない。

Rewrite: 全員が食堂でパーティーの計画について話してきたが、まだどの場所でやるかが決まっていない。

Translate: Every one talked about the party plan at the cafeteria, but its not decided which place to hold it at yet.

4. ころばないようにじてんしゃのつかいかたをちゃんとならっていく。

Rewrite: 転ばないように自転車の使い方をちゃんと習っていく。

Translate: I'm going to properly learn how to use a bike so I don't fall.

5. きょねんとおなじようにようふうのスーツをプレゼントとしておくるつもり？

Rewrite: 去年と同じように洋風のスーツをプレゼントとして送るつもり？

Translate: Are you going to send a western suit as a present again like last year?

6. どのだいがくから卒ぎょうするかわからないけど、わふうの卒ぎょう式だといい。

Rewrite: どの大学から卒業するか分からないけど、和風の卒業式だといい。

Translate: I don't know what uni I'll graduate from, but I hope it's a Japanese-style graduation ceremony.

7. わしょくというのは、せかいでとてもにんきのあるりょうりになってきた。

Rewrite: 和食というのは、世界でとても人気のある料理になってきた。

Translate: Washoku has become an incredibly popular cuisine on the global scale.

### Exercise 10.3

In each blank, place a verb phrase followed by either か or かどうか to translate each of the sentence pairs.

1. I don't know how many children I'll have.

子どもを何人 **作るか** 分かりません。

I don't know if I'll have kids.

子どもを **作るかどうか** 分かりません。

2. Please explain how I should go.

どうやって **行くべきか(を)** 説明してください。

Please explain if I should go.

**行くべきかどうか(を)** 説明してください。

**行った方がいいかどうか(を)**

3. I will check to see if someone will speak.

だれかが **話すかどうか** をかくにんします。

I will check where he will speak.

かれが **どこで話すか** をかくにんします。

4. The problem is if it might be eaten by the dog.

犬に **食べられるかどうか** がもんだいだね。

The problem is whether I can make the dog eat it.

犬に **食べさせられるかどうか** がもんだいだ。

Here 食べさせられる  
is not the causative passive it's  
the causative plus the potential.

5. I was asked where I'm going tomorrow.

明日 **どこに行くか(を)** 聞かれた。

I was asked how I'll be going tomorrow.

明日 **どうやって行くか(を)** 聞かれた。

**何で行くか(を)**

### Exercise 10.4

Choose either か, かどうか, という, or として from each ( ) to create a grammatically correct sentence that makes sense. Then, translate the sentence.

1. 今先生 (か・かどうか・という・として) 話しているので、こんなことを言うべき (か・かどうか・という・として) 分かりませんが...

**I'm currently speaking in my role as a teacher, so I don't know if I should say this but...**

---

2. 日本人 (か・かどうか・という・として) の意見があるが、どうやって言うべき (か・かどうか・という・として) まよっている。

**I have an opinion as a Japanese person, but I'm lost as to how to best express it.**

---

3. かれをほめる (か・かどうか・という・として) じゃなくて、かれをどうやって上手にほめられる (か・かどうか・という・として) (か・かどうか・という・として) 質問について考えたほうがいい。上司 (か・かどうか・という・として) 毎日部下をほめるべきだ。

**The question you should think about is not IF you should compliment him, but HOW should you should compliment him. As a boss, you should compliment your staff daily.**

---

4. 日本 (か・かどうか・という・として) 国では、明日の食べ物のためのお金がある (か・かどうか・という・として) を心配している人がふえていると思う？

**Do you think that in the country of Japan, are the number of people who don't know if they have money for tomorrow's food increasing?**

---

5. だれがやる (か・かどうか・という・として) (か・かどうか・という・として) のを聞かないで、「自分がやるよ」と自分で言う人がりっぱだね。

**People who just say "I'll do it" without asking "who will do it" are amazing.**

---

6. たしかに食べ物 (か・かどうか・という・として) おいしいが、カリフォルニアロール (か・かどうか・という・として) おすしが和食 (か・かどうか・という・として) (か・かどうか・という・として) 質問に答えられない。

**As a food, it's certainly delicious, but I can't answer the question of whether the sushi known as a "California Roll" is Japanese food.**

---

### Exercise 10.5

From each group, match each metaphor to its translation.

- |                                 |   |             |
|---------------------------------|---|-------------|
| 1. A dog like a cat             | → | A. 猫のような犬   |
| 2. A cat like a dog             | → | B. 猫のように飲む犬 |
| 3. A dog that drinks like a cat | → | C. 犬のような猫   |
| 4. A cat that drinks like a dog | → | D. 犬のように飲む猫 |

- |                 |   |                                       |
|-----------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. 見られているように話す  | → | A. Sleeping like a corpse             |
| 2. こわれているように見える | → | B. Talking as though you know things  |
| 3. 知っているように話す   | → | C. Speaking like you're being watched |
| 4. 死んでいるように寝る   | → | D. Looks as though it's broken        |

- |                                      |   |                     |
|--------------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| 1. Can eat it like it's a soup       | → | A. 食べられるように飲む       |
| 2. Eat like you're drinking          | → | B. 食べなくてもいいように飲んでおく |
| 3. Drink it so you can eat           | → | C. スープのように飲める       |
| 4. Drink it so you don't have to eat | → | D. 飲んでいるように食べる      |

### Exercise 10.6

Fill in the blanks to create functional sentences:

These are just examples, your answers may/should differ.

1. お金がなくならないように **毎月お金をちょきんした** ほうがいい。  
It's good to save properly every month so that you don't run out of money.
2. だまされないように **あやしい人の話を信じないで** ください。  
So that you aren't deceived, don't believe sketchy people's stories.
3. **人をアパートまでさそえる** ようにアパートをかたづておこう。  
Let's clean the apartment (in advance) so that we can invite people to it.
4. **雨でぬれない** ようにかさを持ってください。  
Please take an umbrella so you don't get wet from rain.
5. **日本ではたらける** ように **日本語を六** 年間勉強してきた。  
I studied Japanese for 6 years so that I could work in Japan.
6. **親** として **子どもが元気にそだつ** ように何をすればいいですか。  
What should I do as a parent so that my children grow up healthy?
7. マイクさんは **くま** のように **けぶかい人** かどうか分かりません。  
I don't know if Mike is as hairy as a bear.
8. **明日早く起きることが** できるように **今すぐ寝ようよ**。  
Let's sleep now so that we can wake up early tomorrow.



### Exercise 10.7

Use the right verbs **and** particles after each 気 to translate the sentences.

1. 彼が気 をうしなわない ように気 をひける かどうか気 になっている。  
“I’m concerned about if we can grab his attention so he doesn’t lose consciousness.”
2. 気 があわない けど気 がきく 人だから気 にさわらない ようにがんばる。  
“We don’t get along, but they are a caring type so I try not to offend them.”
3. 気 がついていない と思うが、私は気 という 漢字が気 に入らない。  
“I don’t imagine you noticed, but I don’t like the kanji for 気.”
4. ちょっと気 がぬいて しまって、気 が短い 人にちゅういされた。  
“I zone out a bit, and was cautioned by someone with a short temper.”
5. たいていやる気 がある が、気 がのらない 時もあるので時々気 を落とす。  
“I’m usually motivated but there are times when I’m not, so I sometimes get discouraged.”
6. あの気 がくるった 子どもに気 をはらなければならない。  
“We must keep an eye on that crazy kid.”
7. あなたが気 をつけた 気 がする。どうして気 がちった んですか。  
“I feel like you weren’t being careful. Why did you get distracted?”
8. 気 になっている ので終わらせるまで気 がすすまない と気 がついた。  
“It’s weighing on my mind, so I’ve realized that I won’t be satisfied until I finish it.”
9. ビールは気 がぬけた が私は気 が強い 人だから気 にしていない。  
“My beer has gone flat, but I’m quite tough so I’m not worrying about it.”
10. 気 が短い 人とはたらくのにぜんぜん気 がむいていない。  
“I’m not really inclined to work with a short-tempered individual.”
11. かれが私に気 になっている かどうかを気 にしている。気のせいかな。  
“I’m concerned as to whether they’re infatuated with me. Maybe it’s all in my head.”
12. よく気 をつかう 人だけど、時々気 がはやく て、落ち着けない気 がする。  
“They are very mindful, but sometimes rash, and it makes me feel like they can’t calm down”.

# CHAPTER ELEVEN · 第十一章

## VOCABULARY · ごい

### Nouns

|            |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|
| い ち<br>位置  | position, status         |
| いやがらせ      | harassment               |
| うら         | back side, inverse       |
| おうさま<br>王様 | king                     |
| おせん        | pollution                |
| おもて<br>表   | front side               |
| かがく<br>科学  | science                  |
| かがく<br>化学  | chemistry                |
| かたち<br>形   | shape                    |
| けっか<br>結果  | result, outcome          |
| こうか<br>効果  | effect                   |
| コンセント      | electrical outlet        |
| ざいこ<br>在庫  | stock (in a store)       |
| はいち<br>配置  | layout, arrangement      |
| ばあい<br>場合  | case, situation, context |

### い Adjectives

|        |                    |
|--------|--------------------|
| いやしい   | vulgar, vile       |
| ばかばかしい | ridiculous, absurd |
| たのもし   | reliable           |

### な Adjectives

|                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| けんぜん<br>こうかてき<br>効果的 | healthy, sound<br>effective |
| さいあく<br>最悪           | awful, the worst            |
| たいりつてき<br>対立的        | oppositional                |

### Compound Verbs

|                 |                        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| はんたい<br>[に]反対する | to oppose              |
| ほぞんする           | to save (a file, etc.) |
| ふんしつ<br>紛失する    | to misplace, to lose   |

ふんしつ means you don't know  
where something is, うしなう means  
loss as in of a friend or chance.

### う Verbs

|              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| お<br>押す      | to push               |
| うしな<br>失う    | to lose, to miss      |
| つきあ<br>付き合う  | to date, to accompany |
| ひく<br>引く     | to pull               |
| ならぶ          | to line up (intrans)  |
| にあ<br>[に]似合う | to look good on       |
| まにあ<br>間に合う  | to make it in time    |

### る Verbs

|           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| あ<br>合わせる | to put together |
| え<br>得る   | to get, to earn |
| かんじる      | to feel         |

### Adverbs

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| あいかわらず        | same as ever                        |
| えいえんに         | endlessly                           |
| おもしろ<br>面白半分に | just for fun,<br>for no real reason |
| かりに           | temporarily, for now                |
| せいぜい          | at most                             |
| つね<br>常に      | always                              |
| ひじょう<br>非常に   | extremely                           |

## GRAMMAR ・ 文法

### Grammar Point 11.1: Depending on via によって

By attaching によって to a noun phrase, you create a new noun phrase meaning “depending on [noun phrase]”.

In writing, this sometimes becomes により, often followed by a comma, and it can end sentences as による.

人によってやりがちがうので、色々な方法をみとめるべきだ。

[Each person has **their own** way, so we should recognize many methods.]

明日の天気によってビーチに行くかどうかを決めよう。

[Let's decide on if we go to the beach **depending on** tomorrow's weather.]

先生によって教え方がちがうので、自分に合うのをさがしたほうがいい。

[Teaching styles **depend on** the teacher, so you should search for one that suits you.]



You can use によって after a verb phrase by placing the ~か or ~かどうか from **Grammar Point 10.1** between them. This allows you to say “depending on if/whether [verb]”.

まだ行くかどうか分からない。かれが来るかどうかによる。

[I don't know if I will go yet. It **depends on** if he comes.]

The よる in による is a verb, so you can end sentences with it. The polite form is によります as this is an う verb.

あの会社に電話してもむりだ。だれと話すかによって答えがいつもちがう。

[Calling that company is a waste of time. You always get a different answer **depending on** who you talk to.]



In some cases, however, によって can indicate that something is the cause of an outcome or an event.

おおあめ  
大雨によって帰るのに三時間以上かかってしまいました。

[**Due to** the heavy rains, it took me over three hours to get home.]

これは有名なアーティストによってかかれたえだよ。

[This is a painting drawn **by** a famous artist.]



Finally, this “causal/source” use can also be used to modify nouns via the による form.

これは犬によくいるノミによる病気だ。

[This is a disease **caused by** fleas that are often found on dogs.]

あのいやなユーチューバーによるインタビューにさんかしたくない。

[I don't want to participate in an interview **from** that annoying YouTuber.]



## Grammar Point 11.2: Contrasting expectations with くせに

The phrase くせに attaches to words to mean “despite” or “although”. That is, the term begins with some kind of expectation set by the word attached to くせに, which is then countered or inverted in the phrase that follows. In almost all cases, くせに is used in complaints or negative comparisons – while it can mirror phrases like のに or けど, it is distinct in creating an air of disapproval or disappointment.

When using くせに with い adjectives and plain form verbs, the word attaches directly.

かのじょが全然勉強しない<sup>ぜん</sup>くせに、ごうかくできると思っている。

[Despite that she never studies, she thinks she can pass.]

「使ってもいい」と一回も聞かなかったくせに毎日使っている。

[Despite never asking ‘may I use it?’ even once, they are using it daily.]

私よりわかいくせに「じゃ、教えてあげるよ」とよく言ってくる。

[Although they are younger than me, they often come and say ‘I’ll teach you!’.]



When used with nouns, くせに instead attaches via の, and when used with な adjectives, くせに attaches via な... assuming both are used in their positive present form. In other conjugations, くせに attaches directly to the noun or adjective’s plain form.

日本人のくせに漢字が読めない。はずかしい。

[Despite being Japanese, they can’t read kanji. Disgraceful.]

While this could be read as a positive or neutral statement in English, the use of くせに makes it clear the speaker is unhappy.

かいぎでとても対立的なくせに、仕事が終わったらいつも友だちになろうとする。

[Even though he’s confrontational in meetings, he tries to be my buddy after work.]

医者じゃないくせに私の食事生活<sup>かつ</sup>についてよくコメントしている。

[Who does he think he is, commenting on my eating habits though he’s no doctor?]

子どもの時にとても親切だったくせに今最悪な人になった。

[They were so kind as a child, yet they’ve now become a truly horrible person.]

Note that the use of くせに after phrases relating to gender, age, etc., are often considered stereotypical forms of harassment in contemporary Japan. The following sentences are common examples to be aware of – due to the disapproval implied by くせに their implications that a woman *should* be able to cook or that men *shouldn’t* cry makes them and grammatically similar phrases (aimed at any one) extremely rude.

女性<sup>めいせい</sup>のくせに料理ができないの？

[You can’t cook despite being a woman?]

なっているね。男<sup>おとこ</sup>のくせに。

[You’re crying. Not much of a man.]



### Grammar Point 11.3: Subsidiary verbs

Many Japanese verbs can attach to the stems of other verbs to create what are called “subsidiary (or auxiliary/helper) verbs”, known as 補助動詞 (ほじょどうし) in Japanese. These subsidiary verbs modify the meaning of the verb they are attached to slightly – in most cases they simply add specificity (like ~すぎる, which you learned in **Grammar Point 3.6**), but in other cases they alter the verb’s meaning heavily. It would be impossible here to list all possible subsidiary verbs, but here’s some common ones with key examples of their use (note that it is not uncommon for the attached verb to be written in hiragana):

The verb ~込む can be added to a verb to show that something is done to a “deeper” or more complete extent than the verb its attached to would imply on its own.

じゃ、口に入っているくすりをちゃんと飲み込んでください。

[Okay then, please properly **swallow** the medicine in your mouth.]

見て見て。映画館におかしを持ち込んだよ。

[Look, look! I **brought/snuck in** candy to the movie theater.]

カエルがいけに飛び込んだ後で見えなくなった。

[I couldn’t see the frog after it **jumped into** the pond.]

名前をここで書き込んでください。

[Please **write in** your name here.]



The verb ~出す is instead used to indicate that something begins to act, happens suddenly, [verbs] with great energy, or that the verb moves outwards (often metaphorically).

馬が走り出した。

[The horses **started off running**.]

昨日ぜったい持って帰ったくせにどこにおいたか思い出せない。

[Despite that I brought it home yesterday for sure, I **can’t remember** where I put it.]

ポケットから何を取り出しましたか。

[What did you **take out of** your pocket?]

いやがらせにもうがまんできなくて、急になき出した。

[Unable to put up with the harassment anymore, I suddenly **burst into tears**.]



The verb 直す (なおす) simply indicates that something is done again, often to fix errors.

まちが間違っているところをやりなおしてください。

[Please **re-do** the incorrect parts.]



Although these verbs can attach to ~やる (if appropriate), none of them can attach to ~する unless it is part of a compound verb.



In contrast, ~<sup>わす</sup>忘れる indicates that someone will forget/has forgotten to do the verb, or that they [verb]ed an object and then (usually unintentionally) left it as-is.

あ、**言い忘れた**ことがある。

[Ah, there's something I **forgot to mention**.]

バスに私のスマホを**置き忘れた**ようです。

[Seems like I **left** my smartphone **behind** on the bus.]



The verb ~終わる is then used to mean that something is done to completion. Note that although 終わる is an intransitive verb, when it attaches to a transitive verb the resultant verb is always transitive, although it retains the う verb typing of 終わる.



すごいね。あんなに長いのにもう**読み終わった**の？

[Amazing... even though it's that long you've already **finished reading** it.]

えっと、まだ言いたいことを**言い終わって**いないんですけど。

[Excuse me, I **haven't finished saying** the things I want to say yet.]

Subsidiary verbs **usually** keep the transitivity of their *first* verb. So even though ~おわる is intransitive, it doesn't affect the transitivity here.

Unsurprisingly, ~始める can then be used to mean “start [verb]ing”.

先に**食べはじめて**もいいですか。

[May I **begin eating** ahead of everyone?]

最近、色々なやしいテレビばんぐみが**出始めた**気がする。

[I feel like a number of vulgar TV programs have **started to show up** lately.]



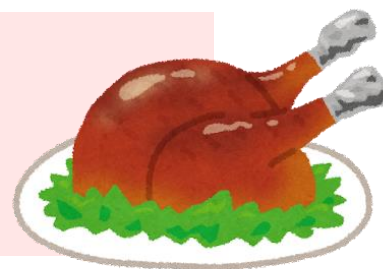
The ~続ける ending is one of the most directly useful, as it shows a continued action.

終わるまで**やり続け**なさい。

[**Keep doing it** until it's done.]

去年のサンクスギビングに五時間ぐらい**食べつづけた**。

[We **ate continuously** for like 5 hours last Thanksgiving.]



Finally, ~上がる indicates that a verb is aimed up or towards completion. The intransitive verb でき上がる meaning “to complete” is a especially common and useful example.

はやく**立ち上がった**せいで目まいがした。

[Because I **stood up** quickly, I got dizzy.]

朝ご飯が**でき上がった**よ。

[Breakfast is **ready**!]

Subsidiary verbs usually keep the transitivity of their *first* verb. So as でき is intransitive, we can't say 朝ご飯をできあがった。



As mentioned, this list of subsidiary verbs is incomplete. However, if you see a verb you know with another verb attached to its stem, that's a good sign that you are encountering a new subsidiary verb. When you look it's meaning up – if you even need to! – be sure to note other verbs that use the same subsidiary verb, as it will help you see what kinds of meanings the verb adds. Indeed, all the subsidiary verbs you've seen here commonly attach to far more verbs than what I was able to show you, so before moving to the next grammar point I encourage you to look up and memorize other common constructions which use the subsidiary verbs you see here.

Do be careful making your own subsidiary verb compounds though; while some subsidiary verbs like ~すぎる, ~つづける, and ~はじめる can attach to almost any verb, others like ~出す and ~上がる have more limited usage. For instance, while 勉強しすぎる, 勉強しつづける, and 勉強しはじめる all make sense, I'm not sure what 勉強しあがる could possibly mean... and the fact that when I just searched for it via Google I got literally 0 hits indicates that Japanese people don't either.

### Grammar Point 11.4: A few counters more

In **Grammar Point 7.7**, we learned a handful of new counters. For our fourth grammar point here, we're going to learn a few more. Be sure to review 7.7 if you need a reminder of how to use counters in sentences.

Our first counter set is used for the number of nights you stay somewhere. When listing a length of stay, use this counter first, then the number of days. This form can also be used as a verb, as you see in the final example on the right.

| #  | Counter for evenings<br>(はく・泊) | Reading   |
|----|--------------------------------|-----------|
| 1  | 一泊                             | いっぱく      |
| 2  | 二泊                             | にはく       |
| 3  | 三泊                             | さんはく・さんぱく |
| 4  | 四泊                             | よんはく      |
| 5  | 五泊                             | ごはく       |
| 6  | 六泊                             | ろっぱく      |
| 7  | 七泊                             | ななはく      |
| 8  | 八泊                             | はっぱく      |
| 9  | 九泊                             | きゅうはく     |
| 10 | 十泊                             | じゅっぱく     |
| ?  | 何泊                             | なんぱく      |

なんぱく  
何泊ですか。

[How many nights will you be staying?]

みはく よっか と  
三泊四日泊まりたいです。

[I want to stay for 3 nights and 4 days.]

いっぱく ふつか  
一泊二日の旅にしよう。

[Let's do an overnight (1 night 2 days) trip.]

りよかんに 四泊した。

[I spent 4 nights at a ryokan.]



Another simple pair of counters is the polite pair for people, and the counter for dishes (as well as plates of food). You are likely to encounter both at restaurants. Neither have any changed readings, but do note that the first two “plates” counters use Japanese numbers.

| #  | Polite counter for people<br>(めい・名) | Reading | Counter for plates<br>(さら・皿) | Reading   |
|----|-------------------------------------|---------|------------------------------|-----------|
| 1  | 一名                                  | いちめい    | 一皿                           | ひとさら      |
| 2  | 二名                                  | にめい     | 二皿                           | ふたさら      |
| 3  | 三名                                  | さんめい    | 三皿                           | さんさら      |
| 4  | 四名                                  | よんめい    | 四皿                           | よんさら      |
| 5  | 五名                                  | ごめい     | 五皿                           | ごさら       |
| 6  | 六名                                  | ろくめい    | 六皿                           | ろくさら      |
| 7  | 七名                                  | ななめい    | 七皿                           | ななさら      |
| 8  | 八名                                  | はちめい    | 八皿                           | はちさら・はっさら |
| 9  | 九名                                  | きゅうめい   | 九皿                           | きゅうさら     |
| 10 | 十名                                  | じゅうめい   | 十皿                           | じゅうさら     |
| ?  | 何名                                  | なんめい    | 何皿                           | なんさら      |

「<sup>なんめい</sup>何名<sup>さま</sup>様ですか。」 「三人います。」  
 [“**How many** are in your party?” “There are three of us.”]

Note how you just like you don't use sonkeigo to refer to your own actions, you don't use ~名 to refer to your own group.

「おきやくさんが**八名**入りました！」  
 [“**Eight (honorable people of)** customers have come in!”]

じゃ、マグロとを**六さら**とブリを**三さら**食べましたね。千五十円です。  
 [Let's see, you had **6 plates of** tuna and **3 of** yellowtail. That's 1050 yen.]



When counting bites/sips, you use the counter 一口 (ひとくち), and for breaks, cups of tea, or cigarette puffs you use 一服 (いっぷく). These counters are rarely used above “one”.

ハンバーガーを**一口**食べさせてくれない？おいしそうで食べてみたい。  
 [Won't you let me have **a bite** of your burger? It looks good and I want to try it.]

つぎの仕事の前に**一服**しよう。  
 [Let's have **a break/smoke** before the next job.]

タバコを**一服**すってもいいですか。  
 [May I have a puff?]





Our next set of two counters are useful for talking about clothing. The counter <sup>そく</sup>~足 is used for pairs of socks, shoes, etc., while the counter <sup>ちゃく</sup>~着 is used for larger articles of clothing.



| #  | Counter for pairs of socks/shoes (そく・足) | Reading   |
|----|-----------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1  | 一足                                      | いっそく      |
| 2  | 二足                                      | にそく       |
| 3  | 三足                                      | さんそく      |
| 4  | 四足                                      | よんそく      |
| 5  | 五足                                      | ごそく       |
| 6  | 六足                                      | ろくそく      |
| 7  | 七足                                      | ななそく      |
| 8  | 八足                                      | はっそく・はちそく |
| 9  | 九足                                      | きゅうそく     |
| 10 | 十足                                      | じゅっそく     |
| ?  | 何足                                      | なんそく      |

| Counter for clothing (ちゃく・着) | Reading |
|------------------------------|---------|
| 一着                           | いっちゃく   |
| 二着                           | にちゃく    |
| 三着                           | さんちゃく   |
| 四着                           | よんちゃく   |
| 五着                           | ごちゃく    |
| 六着                           | ろくちゃく   |
| 七着                           | ななちゃく   |
| 八着                           | はっちゃく   |
| 九着                           | きゅうちゃく  |
| 十着                           | じゅっちゃく  |
| 何着                           | なんちゃく   |

えっと、新しいくつを二足とTシャツを五着買いますね。

[Let's see, so you're buying two new pairs of shoes and five t-shirts, correct?]

昨日ジャケットを何着買ったの？

[How many (clothings worth of) jackets did you buy yesterday?]



You can also use the kanji 度 the we learned in **Chapter 10** to count temperature...

天気予報によると来週気温が三十度まで上がるそうです。

[According to the forecast, the temperature will go up to 30C next week.]



...and the kanji 発 from **Chapter 9** can be used to count number of punches, hits, or shots. Metaphorically, 一発 can also be used to mean “in one attempt/go”.

てきをろっばつ六発なぐった。

[They punched their enemy six times.]

えへへ、いっばつ一発でござうかくしたよ。すごくない？

[Ehehe, I passed on my first try. Aren't I amazing?]



|    |       |
|----|-------|
| 一発 | いっばつ  |
| 二発 | にはつ   |
| 三発 | さんばつ  |
| 四発 | よんばつ  |
| 五発 | ごはつ   |
| 六発 | ろっばつ  |
| 七発 | ななはつ  |
| 八発 | はっばつ  |
| 九発 | きゅうはつ |
| 十発 | じゅっばつ |

Another two useful counters are then 巻 (かん), which is used to count volumes of a text, manga, etc., and 通 (つう), which is used for pieces of correspondence. This originally meant things like postcards or reports, but can now be used for emails etc. as well.



| #  | Counter for Volumes<br>(かん・巻) | Reading |
|----|-------------------------------|---------|
| 1  | 一巻                            | いっかん    |
| 2  | 二巻                            | にかん     |
| 3  | 三巻                            | さんかん    |
| 4  | 四巻                            | よんかん    |
| 5  | 五巻                            | ごかん     |
| 6  | 六巻                            | ろくかん    |
| 7  | 七巻                            | ななかん    |
| 8  | 八巻                            | はちかん    |
| 9  | 九巻                            | きゅうかん   |
| 10 | 十巻                            | じゅうかん   |
| ?  | 何巻                            | なんかん    |

| Counter for Correspondance<br>(つう・通) | Reading |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| 一通                                   | いっつう    |
| 二通                                   | にっつう    |
| 三通                                   | さんつう    |
| 四通                                   | よんつう    |
| 五通                                   | ごつう     |
| 六通                                   | ろくつう    |
| 七通                                   | ななつう    |
| 八通                                   | はっつう    |
| 九通                                   | きゅうつう   |
| 十通                                   | じゅうつう   |
| 何通                                   | なんけん    |



spam



このマンガを何巻まで読んだ？

[Up to what volume of this manga have you read?]

毎日知らないメールを百通ぐらい消すと思います。

[I think I delete about 100 (correspondences of) unnecessary emails every day.]

Finally you can count types of things using 種類 (which on its own means “type”), with the only irregular reading being いっしゅるい for “one type”, while 段 is used for steps or layers (a 段 is a layer; it appears in the word 階段, or “stairs”).

おもちゃが六しゅるいあるので好きなのを一こえらんでください。

[There are six types of toys, so choose one you like please.]

兄弟と三だんベッドで寝るんです。私は二段目で寝ます。

[I sleep with my brothers in a three-bunk bed. I sleep on the second bunk.]



There's many more counters in Japanese, but you now know the majority of common ones! The rest just learn as you go. The best resource I've seen for learning more is [this list on Tofugu.com](http://Tofugu.com). Do check it out if you want to learn more, as they even rank them by usefulness/how commonly you will see and use them.

### Grammar Point 11.5: Extent via ~ほど

In **Grammar Point 6.6** we learned the ~ば~ほど pattern. We can also use ~ほど on its own to list something as an extent or limit. With nouns, this ~ほど attaches directly to a noun which represents an extent, with what will (not) go to that extent following.

私はかれほどお金持ちではありませんが、このような物が問題なく買えますよ。  
[I'm not as wealthy as him, but I can buy something like this without problems.]

The ほど form can also attach to adjectives as though it is a noun. So it attaches directly to い adjectives but to な adjectives via ~な.



くすり 薬が強いほど<sup>side effects</sup>ふくさようがひどい。

[The stronger the medicine is, the worse the side effects]

うまく行くと思ったが、ばかなほど対立的なミーティングになってしまった。  
[I thought it would go well, but it became a ridiculously antagonistic meeting.]

男の話になると、服がきれいなほどしんじにくくなる。  
[When it comes to men, the nicer their clothes are the less I trust them.]

Finally, ~ほど can also attach to verbs and verb phrases ending in the **plain form**. The use of ~ほど after **plain past tense** verbs, however, is often restricted to verbs expressing feelings, thoughts, or expectations (see Examples 2 & 3).

一時間以内に説明できないほどむずかしい話だった。  
[It was a conversation so difficult that it can't be described in one hour.]

思ったほど高くなかった。  
[I was not as expensive as I expected it would be.]

しんばい 心配したほど大変ではなかったが、大変だった。  
[It wasn't as bad as I worried, but it was still bad.]

がまんできないほど痛い。  
[It hurts to the extent that I can't bear it.]

いや、かのじょが言うほど大変ではないよ。  
[No, it's not as difficult as she says (it is).]

だれでもできるほど簡単<sup>かんたん</sup>なことではないんだけど、がんばったらできると思う。  
[It's not so easy that anyone can do it, but if you try I think you can.]



In many cases, regardless of the word type it attaches to, ~ほど is used in statements which involve metaphor, exaggeration, or poetic effect. The “extent” listed in a sentence using the ~ほど pattern does not have to be literal.

泳いで帰れるほど雨がふった。

[It rained so much that I could swim home.]

目が回るほど意見がかわされていた。

[So many opinions were exchanged that my eyes spun around.]

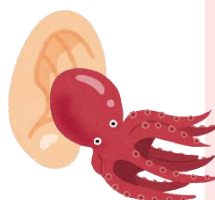
猫の手でも借りたいほどいそがしいです。

[I'm busy to the extent that I would even love assistance from a cat]

猫の手でも借りたい  
and 耳にタコができた  
are both common  
Japanese phrases.  
I did not invent them.

その話をもう何回も聞いたよ。耳にタコができたほど聞いた。

[I've already heard that many times. So much that I have callouses on my ears.]



### Grammar Point 11.6: Saying “for” as in “given that”

The にしては form attaches to nouns or noun phrases to express a contrast to a given limitation or expectation. In English, this often translates into “for a [noun]”, as used to mean “given that something is a [noun]”. Unlike ~くせに, this can be positive.

日本語を一年間しか勉強していない人にしてはとても上手に話せますね。

[They/you can speak Japanese quite well for someone who's only studied for 1 year.]

冬にしては暖かい日なので、ちょっとさんぽしようか。

[Given that it's a warm day for winter, shall we go for a stroll?]

「コーヒーにしてはあまいよ」と言ってもにがい物はにがいよ。

[Even if you say “it's sweet given that it's coffee” bitter things are bitter.]



While somewhat less common, this grammar form can also attach to verb phrases ending in the plain form.

初めてやったにしては、よくできたよ。

[For doing it your first time, you did quite well.]

In sentences like this one, the form sound evaluative, so be careful – a teacher to a student or friend to friend is fine, but I wouldn't say it to my boss.

毎日れんしゅうしているにしては日本語がぜんぜん話せないようです。

[For studying every day it seems like they can't speak Japanese at all.]



The ~にしても form then means “even if/for”, noting something outside of expectations.

これは日本人にしても読みにくい本だよ。

[Even for Japanese people, this is a difficult book to read.]

This form cannot be used in positive statements. Do not use it to say things like “Even among professional chefs, you're really good at cooking!”

### Grammar Point 11.7: Suggesting with ~たらどう

In GP5.5, we learned the “if” form ~たら. By adding ~どうですか to the end, this form becomes equivalent to “how about doing [verb]?”, which can be used to give advice.



明日彼にちよくせつに話に行<sup>つ</sup>たらどうですか。

[How about going to speak with him directly tomorrow?]

寝る前に映画でも見<sup>た</sup>らどう？

[How about a something like a movie before bed?]

やめ<sup>た</sup>ら？

[Why not just stop?/Cut it out!]

In very casual speech, ~どう can be completely dropped. In a use like this, the phrase is often a sarcastic order.

Unlike other ways of giving advice we’ve covered, ~たらどう can imply frustration or contempt towards the listener for not already having completed the action. This is especially true when the advice is unsolicited, unwelcome, or stated in an unfriendly tone.



はい、はい、とりあえずしずかにし<sup>た</sup>ら？ 大人が話しているもん。

[Right, right, listen, how about shutting your trap for the moment? Adults are talking.]

### Grammar Point 11.8: Two uses of ばかり

The word ばかり has a lot of uses in Japanese, but in this textbook we will just go over the two most common. First, ばかり attaches to nouns to mean “only”, usually implying that the noun exists or is being [verbed] to a problematic extent. It is therefore sometimes synonymous with しか~ない from GP6.1, although ばかり is often used in a slightly exaggerated sense (i.e., it’s usually “close to only” instead of “actually only”).

You can just follow ばかり with です or place a verb after it. When doing the latter, ばかり works with particles just like も does: it replaces は・が・を, and attaches to に・で・と.



外は雪<sup>ばかり</sup>ですね。家で<sup>のんびり</sup>しましょう。

[Outside there’s snow everywhere huh. Let’s just take it easy at home.]

最近弟がおかし<sup>ばかり</sup>食べているので母が心配<sup>ばい</sup>している。

[Lately my little brother has been eating nothing but sweets, so my mom is worried.]

わかい女性の部下<sup>とばかり</sup>話しているじょうしはいやだね。

[Bosses who just talk with young female subordinates are icky.]

うそ<sup>ばかり</sup>言<sup>う</sup>とだれにも信じられなくなるよ。

[If all you do is tell lies, you’ll end up not believed by anyone.]





ばかり can also be used after a verb in the **plain past positive** form to mean “just [verb]ed”. This doesn’t have any of the negative implications common to [noun]ばかり.



クラスが終わったばかりだから、今すぐ行くよ。

[Class just ended, so I’m on my way now.]

やっとソファにすわったばかりなのにもうだれかに呼ばれている。

[I just now finally sat down on the couch, and I’m already being called by someone.]

### Grammar Point 11.9: Saying “ever since” with ~てからは

In GP6.2 we learned about ~てから meaning “after [verb]”. The ~てからは form is similar, but means “ever since”, and is often followed by a verb in the ~ている form.



けっこんしてからはかじなどをあまりやっていません。

[Ever since we/they got married, (someone) hasn’t been doing much housework.]

ものごころ  
物心ついてからは、やったことがないんだよ。

[I’ve never done it, at least since my first memories.]

物心（が）ついてから（は） is a nice phrase meaning “since I first became aware of the world” or “since my first memories of things”.

### Grammar Point 11.10: Two new uses of ~ある

Our last grammar point involves new uses of ~ある. The first is the ~てある form, which works like the ~ている form except that it indicates that a **transitive verb** has been completed and left in that state (in contrast to the ongoing action implied by ~ている).

あのかんばんに何が書いてあるのですか。あまり見えないんです。

[What is written on that sign? I can’t really see it.]

店にいていねいに作ってあるいすがたくさんある。

[There are a lot of chairs made with care in the store.]



The ~ことがある form then resembles the ~たことがある form from GP5.1, but it attaches to a word in the **plain positive present** form (positive or negative) to show that something happens on certain occasions. It often sounds more passive than 時々.

温かくなると水が下から出ることもあるので、寒いところに置いてください。

[When it gets warm, water can leak out the bottom, so put it in a cold place please.]

この花はさいている時にくさいこともある。

[This flower may sometimes stink while in bloom.]

かれは話さないことがない。

[There are no times when he isn’t speaking.]

Don’t mix this up with the generic ~こと = thing that you see in relative clauses. For instance, やることがある is just “have something to do”, while 言うことがない is normally “don’t have things to say”, not “saying doesn’t happen”.



# CHAPTER 11 KANJI ・ かんじ

This week, we are learning 18 simple kanji that oddly appear on N3 instead of N4 or N5.

|   |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 王 | Meaning         | Rule, king                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | おう                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>おう</small><br/>王         </div> <div> <small>おうさま</small><br/>王様         </div> <div> <small>おうじょ</small><br/>王女         </div> <div> <small>おうこく</small><br/>王国         </div>    |
| 玉 | Meaning         | Ball, jewel, sphere                                                                                                                                                                             |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | たま・だま                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ぎよく                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>たま</small><br/>玉         </div> <div> <small>めだま</small><br/>目玉         </div> <div> <small>としだま</small><br/>お年玉         </div> <div> <small>さいたま</small><br/>埼玉         </div>    |
| 森 | Meaning         | Forest                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | もり                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しん                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>もり</small><br/>森         </div> <div> <small>しんりん</small><br/>森林         </div>                                                                                                    |
| 貝 | Meaning         | Shell, shellfish                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | かい                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ばい                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>かい</small><br/>貝         </div> <div> <small>かいがら</small><br/>貝殻         </div>                                                                                                    |
| 回 | Meaning         | Times, occurrences                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | か（える）・まわ（す）・まわ（る）                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | かい・え                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Sample uses     | <div> <small>いっかい</small><br/>一回         </div> <div> <small>かいすう</small><br/>回数         </div> <div> <small>なんかい</small><br/>何回         </div> <div> <small>まいかい</small><br/>毎回         </div> |

|   |             |                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                  |
|---|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 合 | Meaning     | Match, unite, suit                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | あ（う）・あ（わせる）                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | On yomi     | がっ・ごう                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses | <small>あ</small><br>合う<br><br><small>あ</small><br>合わせる<br><br><small>ば あい</small><br>場合<br><br><small>わりあい</small><br>割合 | <small>はな あ</small><br>話し合う<br><br><small>し あ</small><br>知り合う<br><br><small>ま あ</small><br>間に合う<br><br><small>に あ</small><br>似合う |
| 内 | Meaning     | Inside                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | うち                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | On yomi     | ない・だい                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses | <small>こくない</small><br>国内<br><br><small>ないぞう</small><br>内臓                                                               | <small>ないよう</small><br>内容<br><br><small>い ない</small><br>以内                                                                       |
| 反 | Meaning     | Anti                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | そ（らす）・そ（る）・かえ（す）                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | On yomi     | はん・ほん・たん・ほ                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses | <small>そ</small><br>反らす<br><br><small>そ</small><br>反る<br><br><small>はん</small><br>反する                                    | <small>はんたい</small><br>反対<br><br><small>い はん</small><br>違反<br><br><small>はんのう</small><br>反応                                      |
| 対 | Meaning     | Opposite, compare                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | こた（える）・なら（ぶ）・そろ（い）                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | On yomi     | つい・たい                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses | <small>たい</small><br>対する<br><br><small>ぜったい</small><br>絶対<br><br><small>たいしょう</small><br>対象                              | <small>はんたい</small><br>反対<br><br><small>たいおう</small><br>対応<br><br><small>たいりつ</small><br>対立                                      |



|   |             |                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 化 | Meaning     | Change                                                                                                                                   |
|   | Kun yomi    | ば（かす）・ば（ける）                                                                                                                              |
|   | On yomi     | か・け                                                                                                                                      |
|   | Sample uses | <div>ぶん か<br/>文化</div> <div>へん か<br/>変化</div> <div>あつ か<br/>悪化</div> <div>け しょう<br/>化粧</div> <div>か がく<br/>化学</div> <div>ば<br/>お化け</div> |
| 失 | Meaning     | Lose, fault, error                                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | うしな（う）・うせ（る）                                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     | しつ                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses | <div>うしな<br/>失 う</div> <div>しつぱい<br/>失敗</div> <div>ふんしつ<br/>紛失</div>                                                                     |
| 礼 | Meaning     | Thanks, bow, remuneration                                                                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    |                                                                                                                                          |
|   | On yomi     | れい・らい                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Sample uses | <div>れい<br/>お礼</div> <div>しつれい<br/>失礼</div> <div>れい ぎ<br/>礼儀</div>                                                                       |
| 声 | Meaning     | Voice                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    | こえ                                                                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | せい                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Sample uses | <div>こえ<br/>声</div> <div>せいたい<br/>声帯</div> <div>せいゆう<br/>声優</div>                                                                        |
| 形 | Meaning     | Shape                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Kun yomi    | かたち・かた・がた                                                                                                                                |
|   | On yomi     | けい・ぎょう                                                                                                                                   |
|   | Sample uses | <div>かたち<br/>形</div> <div>にんぎょう<br/>人形</div> <div>けい<br/>形 s</div>                                                                       |

|   |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 光 | Meaning     | Light                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    | ひか (り) ・ ひか (る)                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | On yomi     | こう                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>ひかり</small><br/>光 </div> <div> <small>かんこう</small><br/>観光 </div> <div> <small>かんこうきやく</small><br/>観光客 </div> <div> <small>けいこう</small><br/>蛍光ペン </div>                                 |
| 非 | Meaning     | Fault, error, non-                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | Kun yomi    | あら (ず)                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | On yomi     | ひ                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>ひ じょう</small><br/>非常 </div>                                                                                                                                                            |
| 常 | Meaning     | Always, usual                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | つね                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|   | On yomi     | じょう                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>つね</small><br/>常に </div> <div> <small>じょうしき</small><br/>常識 </div> <div> <small>ひ じょう</small><br/>非常 </div>                                                                             |
| 果 | Meaning     | Fruit, reward                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | は (てる) ・ は (たす)                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|   | On yomi     | か                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|   | Sample uses | <div> <small>は</small><br/>果てる </div> <div> <small>は</small><br/>果たす </div> <div> <small>くだもの</small><br/>果物 </div> <div> <small>けっ か</small><br/>結果 </div> <div> <small>こう か</small><br/>効果 </div> |



CHAPTER 11 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 11

### Exercise 11.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

1. 王

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 王            | 王 | 王 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 2. 玉

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 玉            | 玉 | 玉 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 3. 森

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 森            | 森 | 森 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 4. 貝

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 貝            | 貝 | 貝 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5. 回

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 回            | 回 | 回 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

6. 合

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 合            | 合 | 合 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



### 13. 声

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 声            | 声 | 声 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 士 | 吉 | 韦 | 吉 | 声 |  |  |  |

### 14. 形

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 形            | 形 | 形 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 二 | 开 | 开 | 开 | 形 | 形 |  |  |  |

### 15. 光

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 光            | 光 | 光 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 丿 | 丿 | 丿 | 光 | 光 | 光 |  |  |  |

### 16. 非

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 非            | 非 | 非 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | フ | フ | フ | 非 | 非 | 非 | 非 |  |  |

### 17. 常

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 常            | 常 | 常 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 丿 | 丿 | 丿 | 常 | 常 | 常 | 常 | 常 | 常 |

### 18. 果

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 果            | 果 | 果 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 冂 | 冂 | 日 | 旦 | 早 | 果 | 果 |  |  |

### Exercise 11.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. べつのくにからきたくせに、おうさまにひじょうにしつれいなことをいった。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. あそのもりにくだものがたくさんありますよ。とりにいったらどうですか。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. からだのちいさいひとにしては、こえがおおきい。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. さんじゅうごふんいないにかいをどのぐらいたべられるとおもう？

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. どのへやからみるかによって、ひかりのかたちがちょっとへんかする。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. はんたいのいけんばかりいうと、ともだちをうしなうことがある。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. まいにち <sup>はたら</sup>働いてもあのたまほどきれいなものをじんせいでいっかいもかえないか

もしれない。ふんぼうなせいかつがわたしにあわないのに。。。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 11.3

Choose the correct option from each (    ) to create a sentence that makes sense, and then translate it into English.

1. 私はかれ（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）上手に料理が作れないんだけど、  
外食（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）していない。

---

---

2. たしかにだれがやるか（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）結果が<sup>けっか</sup>ちがう。でも  
心ばい（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）すると、自分が本当にできる  
（ばかり・によって・くせに・ほど）一生気がつかないよ。

---

---

3. もう何回も飲み（こんだ・わすれた・上がった・出した）（ばかり・によって・  
くせに・ほど）まだ前の薬（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）薬ではない。

---

---

4. ほかのこと（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）考えていた（くせに・せいで・  
だけで・ように）店で買ったものをカバンに入れ（こんだ・わすれた・上がった・  
出した）。買った（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）なのに！

---

---

5. 仕事をやめた（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）（ばかり・によって・  
のくせに・ほど）もうかれに「新しい仕事をみつけなさい」（ばかり・によって・  
のくせに・ほど）言われているが、今はそれ（ばかり・によって・のくせに・  
ほど）いやなことはない。

---

---

### Exercise 11.4

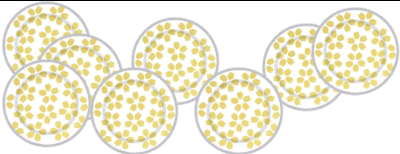
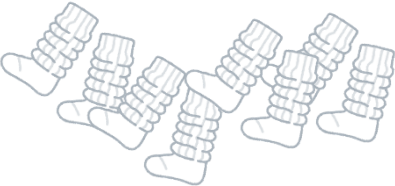
Fill in the blanks using grammar from this chapter so that the English and Japanese sentences match.

1. あの（ ）雑誌をきのう（ ）。  
I left that open magazine over there out yesterday.
2. 最近肉（ ）食べているので、今日は大きいサラダを（ ）注文（ ）。  
We've been eating nothing but meat recently, so today why don't we order one big dish of salad?
3. 化学が大好き（ ）このラボの仕事を（ ）  
いやな思い（ ）ある。きゅうりょう（ ）大変過ぎる。  
While I love science, ever since starting this new lab job there's been nothing but awful memories. It's too hard given the pay.
4. できない（ ）「やるよ！」と（ ）しまった。  
Despite not being able to do it, I let out "I'll do it!".
5. あそこに「くつを（ ）買ったならフリーシャツを（ ）  
もらおうよ！」と（ ）。  
Over there it's written that "if you buy three pairs of shoes you'll get a free shirt!".
6. 大事なことを（ ）（ ）が、あなた  
（ ）悪くないよ。  
I do forget to say important things from time to time, but I'm nowhere as bad as you!
7. かれがおもしろ半分でやっている（ ）私はかれ（ ）  
上手になれないのでいらやましい思い（ ）している。  
Even though he's only doing it for fun, I can't become better than him, so I'm having a whole bunch of jealous thoughts.
8. 結果は（ ）か（ ）<sup>けっか</sup>。だから、一生けんめい  
（ ）。  
The result depends on whether or not you keep doing it. So why not do your best?
9. 高校のせいせきがとてもよかった（ ）大学に（ ）  
色々が分からなくて、やめたくなる（ ）かなしい。  
Although my high school grades were great in high school, after entering uni there's so much I don't understand, and I'm so sad that I begin to feel like quitting.



### Exercise 11.4

Using hiragana, write the correct number+counter for the items you see, using only counters from this chapter.

|                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    |    |    |
|    |    |    |
|   |   |   |
|  |  |  |

### Exercise 11.5

Try creating original sentences using each of ~にしては・も prompt, or use ~にしては・も to fill in the first half of the sentence.

- 暑い日にしては\_\_\_\_\_。
- \_\_\_\_\_ たのもしいいんだ。
- 分からないことがあるにしても\_\_\_\_\_。
- \_\_\_\_\_ けっか いい結果だった。

### Exercise 11.6

Try creating original sentences in Japanese which use all the grammar forms listed in each prompt (in any order).

1. Use によって and ~たらどうですか

---

2. Use two counters and くせに

---

3. Use ~てある and ~たらどうですか

---

4. Use three verbs including subsidiary verbs in a single sentence

---

5. Use ~てからは and ばかり

---

6. Use ばかり, ほど, and くせに

---

7. Use くせに and a verb including a subsidiary verb

---

8. Use ほど and にしては

---

9. Use によって and ことがある

---

### Exercise 11.7

Look up a new combined verb using each of the subsidiary verbs listed, and try using it in a sentence. The combined verb should not be introduced in this chapter.

1. ~こむ      Verb: \_\_\_\_\_      Meaning: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. ~出す      Verb: \_\_\_\_\_      Meaning: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. ~なおす      Verb: \_\_\_\_\_      Meaning: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. ~終わる      Verb: \_\_\_\_\_      Meaning: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. ~わすれる      Verb: \_\_\_\_\_      Meaning: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6. ~<sup>つづ</sup>続ける      Verb: \_\_\_\_\_      Meaning: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

7. ~あがる      Verb: \_\_\_\_\_      Meaning: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

8. ~始める      Verb: \_\_\_\_\_      Meaning: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 11.8

Use the prompts to create complete sentences:

1. 日本語を勉強し始めてからは\_\_\_\_\_。

2. 大人になってからは\_\_\_\_\_。

### Exercise 11.9

Using the same starting part of a sentence, create unique sentences given the grammar that follows.

1. 今年日本...

- a. ...に行けないくせに\_\_\_\_\_
- b. ...に行けないほど\_\_\_\_\_
- c. ...に行けるかどうかによって\_\_\_\_\_
- d. ...ばかりに行った\_\_\_\_\_

2. 今回の結果<sup>けっか</sup>...

- a. ...によって\_\_\_\_\_
- b. ...ほど\_\_\_\_\_
- c. ...ばかり\_\_\_\_\_
- d. ...をこれからも出しつづけたら\_\_\_\_\_
- e. ...が私たちにしては\_\_\_\_\_

3. 私にぜんぜん似合わない...

- a. ...服のくせに\_\_\_\_\_
- b. ...ほど\_\_\_\_\_
- c. ...スタイルにしては\_\_\_\_\_
- d. ...ドレスにしても\_\_\_\_\_
- e. ...服を着始めてからは\_\_\_\_\_
- f. ...\_\_\_\_\_買うことがある。
- g. ...\_\_\_\_\_自分で作りなおした。





### 13. 声

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 声            | 声 | 声 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 十 | 士 | 吉 | 韦 | 吉 | 声 |  |  |  |

### 14. 形

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 形            | 形 | 形 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 二 | 开 | 开 | 开 | 形 | 形 |  |  |  |

### 15. 光

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| 光            | 光 | 光 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 丿 | 丿 | 丿 | 光 | 光 | 光 |  |  |  |

### 16. 非

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 非            | 非 | 非 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | フ | フ | フ | 非 | 非 | 非 | 非 |  |  |

### 17. 常

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 常            | 常 | 常 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 丿 | 丿 | 丿 | 常 | 常 | 常 | 常 | 常 | 常 |

### 18. 果

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 果            | 果 | 果 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 冂 | 冂 | 日 | 旦 | 早 | 果 | 果 |  |  |

## Exercise 11.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. べつのくにからきたくせに、おうさまにひじょうにしつれいなことをいった。

Rewrite: 別の国から来たくせに、王さまに非常に失礼なことを言った。

Translate: Despite coming from another country, they said a very rude thing to the king.

2. あそののもりにくだものがたくさんありますよ。とりにいったらどうですか。

Rewrite: あその森に果物がたくさんありますよ。取に行ったらどうですか。

Translate: There's a lot of fruit in that forest over there. How about going to get some?

3. からだのちいさいひとにしては、こえがおおきい。

Rewrite: 体の小さい人にしては、声が大きい。

Translate: For someone with a small body (for a small person), they've got a loud voice.

4. さんじゅう ごふんいないにかいをどのぐらいたべられるとおもう？

Rewrite: 三十五分以内に貝をどのくらい食べられると思う？

Translate: How many shellfish do you think you can eat within 35 minutes?

5. どのへやからみるかによって、ひかりのかたちがちょっとへんかする。

Rewrite: どの部屋から見るかによって光の形がちょっと変化する。

Translate: Depending on which room you look at it from, the light's shape changes a bit.

6. はんたいのいけんばかりいうと、ともだちをうしなうことがある。

Rewrite: 反対の意見ばかり言うと、友だちを失うことがある。

Translate: If you only say opposing opinions, you can lose friends.

7. まいにち <sup>はたら</sup>働いてもあのたまほどきれいなものをじんせいでいっかいもかえないか

もしれない。ぶんぼうなせいかつがわたしにあわないのに。。。

毎日働いてもあの玉ほどきれいな物を人生で一回も買えないかもしれない。

Rewrite: ぶんぼうな<sup>かつ</sup>生活が私に合わないのに。

Translate: Even if I work every day I might not be able to buy someone as pretty as that gem even once in my life. A poor life doesn't suit me though...



### Exercise 11.3

Choose the correct option from each ( ) to create a sentence that makes sense, and then translate it into English.

1. 私はかれ（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）上手に料理が作れないんだけど、  
外食（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）していない。

**I'm not as skilled at cooking as he is, but it's not like I only eat out.**

---

2. たしかにだれがやるか（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）結果がちがう。でも  
心ばい（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）すると、自分が本当にできる  
（ばかり・によって・くせに・ほど）一生気がつかないよ。

**Of course, the result changes depending on who does it. But if you only worry  
you'll never realize that you can do it even though you really can.**

---

3. もう何回も飲み（こんだ・わすれた・上がった・出した）（ばかり・によって・  
くせに・ほど）まだ前の薬（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）薬ではない。

**Even though I've swallowed it plenty of times now, it's not as easy to do as  
the prior medicine.**

---

4. ほかのこと（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）考えていた（くせに・せいで・  
だけで・ように）店で買ったものをカバンに入れ（こんだ・わすれた・上がった・  
出した）。買った（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）なのに！

**Because I was only thinking about other stuff, I forgot to put what I bought  
at the store into my bag. Even though I just bought it!**

---

5. 仕事をやめた（ばかり・によって・のくせに・ほど）（ばかり・によって・  
のくせに・ほど）もうかれに「新しい仕事をみつけなさい」（ばかり・によって・  
のくせに・ほど）言われているが、今はそれ（ばかり・によって・のくせに・  
ほど）いやなことはない。

**Despite that I only just quit my job, he's already telling me "find a new job"  
all the time, but that's the worst thing he could say right now.**

---

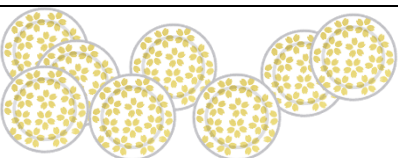
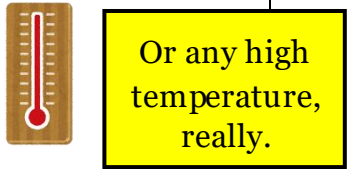
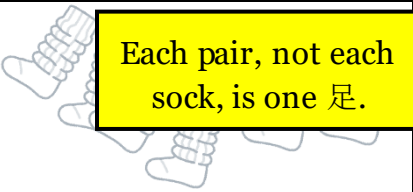
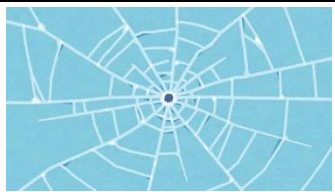
### Exercise 11.4

Fill in the blanks using grammar from this chapter so that the English and Japanese sentences match.

- あの（ **あけてある** ）雑誌をきのう（ **おいてあった** ）。  
I left that open magazine over there out yesterday.
- 最近肉（ **ばかり** ）食べているので、今日は大きいサラダを（ **一皿** ）注文（ **したらどうですか** ）。  
We've been eating nothing but meat recently, so today why don't we order one big dish of salad?
- 化学が大好き（ **なくせに** ）このラボの仕事を（ **始めてからは** ）いやな思い（ **ばかり** ）ある。きゅうりょう（ **にしては** ）大変過ぎる。  
While I love science, ever since starting this new lab job there's been nothing but awful memories. It's too hard given the pay.
- できない（ **くせに** ）「やるよ！」と（ **言い出して** ）しまった。  
Despite not being able to do it, I let out "I'll do it!".
- あそこに「くつを（ **三足** ）買ったならフリーシャツを（ **一着** ）もらおうよ！」と（ **書いてある** ）。  
Over there it's written that "if you buy three pairs of shoes you'll get a free shirt!".
- 大事なことを（ **言いわすれる** ）（ **ことがある** ）が、あなた（ **ほど** ）悪くないよ。  
I do forget to say important things from time to time, but I'm nowhere as bad as you!
- かれがおもしろ半分でやっている（ **くせに** ）私はかれ（ **ほど** ）上手になれないのでうらやましい思い（ **ばかり** ）している。  
Even though he's only doing it for fun, I can't become better than him, so I'm having a whole bunch of jealous thoughts.
- 結果は（ **やりつづける** ）か（ **による** ）。だから、一生けんめい（ **やったらどう** ）。  
The result depends on whether or not you keep doing it. So why not do your best?
- 高校のせいせきがとてもよかった（ **くせに** ）大学に（ **入ってからは** ）色々が分からなくて、やめたくなる（ **ほど** ）かなしい。  
Although my high school grades were great in high school, after entering uni there's so much I don't understand, and I'm so sad that I start to feel like quitting.

### Exercise 11.4

Using hiragana, write the correct number+counter for the items you see, using only counters from this chapter.

|                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    |     |    |
| いっぷく                                                                                | はちめい                                                                                 | さんつう                                                                                  |
|    |     |    |
| はちさら                                                                                | にしゅるい                                                                                | ごはく                                                                                   |
|   |   |   |
| よんちゃく                                                                               | ひゃくと                                                                                 | いっぷく                                                                                  |
|  |  |  |
| ごかん(め)                                                                              | よんそく                                                                                 | いっぱつ                                                                                  |

### Exercise 11.5

Try creating original sentences using each of ~にしては to fill in the first half of the sentence.

These are just examples, your answers may/should differ.

- 暑い日にしては **天気がとても悪いです**。
- とてもわかい人にしては** たのもしいんだ。
- 分からないことがあるにしても **あきらめるのが良くないよ**。
- 始めてやったことにしては** けっか いい結果だった。

### Exercise 11.6

Try creating original sentences in Japanese which use all the prompts listed in each prompt (in any order).

These are just examples, your answers may/should differ.

1. Use **によって** and **~たらどうですか**

**その日の天気の良いさによって決めたらどうですか。**

How about deciding based on the quality of the weather that day?

2. Use two counters and **くせに**

**ハワイに八はくとまったくくせにおみやとして安いシャツを一着しか買ってくれなかった。**

Despite staying in Hawaii for 8 nights they just bought me one cheap t-shirt as a souvenir.

3. Use **~である** and **~たらどうですか**

**あそこにおいてある服を着たらどうですか。**

How about wearing that clothing sitting over there?

4. Use three verbs including subsidiary verbs in a single sentence

**寝こむ前に猫がなきはじめて、毛の玉をゆかにはき出した。**

Before falling asleep the cat started crying, and spit up a ball of hair onto the floor.

5. Use **~てからは** and **ばかり**

**仕事を失ったてからは、お酒ばかり飲んでいる。**

Since losing their job, they've been drinking nothing but booze.

6. Use **ばかり**, **ほど**, and **くせに**

**新しい車を買ったばかりだけど、高かったくせに前のほどうんてんしやすくない。**

I just bought a new car, but despite the price it's not as easy to drive as my last one.

7. Use **くせに** and a verb including a subsidiary verb

**人気のある仕事のくせに、何年やりつづけてもきゅうりょうが上がらない。**

Despite being a popular job, no matter how many years you keep doing it your pay doesn't go up..

8. Use **ほど** and **にしては**

**かのじょほど有名な歌手にしては、とてもやさしい。**

For a singer as famous as her, she's very kind.

9. Use **によって** and **ことがある**

**季節によって雨が毎日ふることがある。**

Depending on the season, there are times where it rains all day.

### Exercise 11.7

Look up a new combined verb using each of the subsidiary verb in the sentence. The combined verb should not be introduced in the sentence.

These are just examples, your answers may/should differ.

1. ~こむ      Verb: 思いこむ      Meaning: To assume that  
かれがいつもこのへんに住むと思いこんだが、急にひっこした。  
(I assumed he'd always live around here, but he moved away suddenly.)
2. ~出す      Verb: とび出す      Meaning: To jump out  
子猫が自転車の前でとびだした。  
(A kitten jumped out in front of my bike.)
3. ~なおす      Verb: 見なおす      Meaning: To look again  
その後で、かのじょを見なおした。じつはとてもやさしい人だと分かった。  
(After that, I looked at her in a new light. I realized she was actually a kind person.)
4. ~終わる      Verb: 読み終わる      Meaning: To finish reading  
先週買ったばかりのにもう読み終わったの？  
(You already finished reading it even though you bought it just last week?)
5. ~わすれる      Verb: 聞きわすれる      Meaning: To forget to ask  
先生に聞きわすれたのでいつまでにやらなければならないか分からなくてこまっている。  
(I forgot to ask the teacher so I don't know when I have to do it by and I'm in trouble.)
6. ~<sup>つづ</sup>続ける      Verb: 乗りつづける      Meaning: To keep riding  
家の前の駅でおりるつもりだったが、電車でねてしまって、CBD まで乗りつづけた。  
(I meant to get off at the station in front of my house, but I fell asleep on the train and rode it all the way to the CBD.)
7. ~あがる      Verb: 起き上がる      Meaning: To get/wake up  
なかなか起き上がれないよ！  
(I'm having a lot of trouble getting out of bed!)
8. ~始める      Verb: 出始める      Meaning: To start appearing  
公園のまわりに変な花が出始めた。  
(Strange flowers began to appear around the park.)

### Exercise 11.8

Use the prompts to create complete sentences:

1. 日本語を勉強し始めてからは とても上手になってきた。
2. 大人になってからは ひまな時間がほとんどなくなっていました。

These are just examples, your answers may/should differ.

### Exercise 11.9

Using the same starting part of a sentence, create unique sentences given the grammar that follows.

1. 今年日本...

a. ...に行けなくせに **友だちがみんな行くつもりだ。**

Despite that I can't go to Japan this year all my friends plan to go..

b. ...に行けないほど **かなしいことはない。**

Nothing is sadder than not being able to go to Japan this year.

c. ...に行けるかどうかによって **日本語を勉強し始める。**

I'll start to study Japanese depending on if I can go to Japan this year.

d. ...ばかりに行った **ので来年かん国や中国に行くと思う。**

Because I basically only went to Japan this year I think I'll go to Korea or China or something next year.

2. 今回の結果<sup>けっか</sup>...

a. ...によって **つぎのじっけんを決めよう。**

Let's choose the next experiment based on this time's result.

b. ...ほど **悪いのを見たことがない。**

I've never seen a result as bad as this time's one.

c. ...ばかり **考えるより、立ちなおってもう一回やってみるのがいいよ。**

Rather than thinking only about this time's result, it's better to dust yourself off and try again.

d. ...をこれからも出しつづけたら **大変な目に会うよ。**

If you keep producing results like this one you'll get in a lot of trouble.

e. ...が私たちにしては **とても良いのだと思う。**

I think this time's result is a pretty good one, for us at least.

3. 私にぜんぜん似合わない...

a. ...服のくせに **母に着させられた。**

Despite that the clothes don't suit me at all I was forced to wear them by my mom.

b. ...ほど **形と色が変わだ。**

The shape and color are so strange that it doesn't suit me at all.

c. ...スタイルにしては **好きだけど、買いたくなるほどではない。**

I like it for a style that doesn't suit me at all, but not so much that I want to buy it.

d. ...ドレスにしても **かなり気に入らない。**

Even for a dress that doesn't suit me, I really dislike it.

e. ...服を着始めてからは **変な自信がちょっとついてきた。**

Since I started wearing clothes that don't suit me, I've developed a strange confidence.

f. ... **ほどユニークな服を見つけると、時々** 買うことがある。

When I find clothing so unique that it doesn't suit me at all, I sometimes buy it.

g. ... **ズボンになってしまったので** 自分で作りなおした。

The pants became ones that didn't look good on me at all so I remade them by myself.

## CHAPTER TWELVE · 第十二章

### VOCABULARY · ごい

#### Nouns

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| あほ                   | moron, idiot        |
| うそつき                 | liar                |
| うわき                  | cheating, affairs   |
| がき                   | young brat          |
| くすり                  | drugs               |
| くそ                   | shit, poop          |
| けつ                   | butt, ass           |
| たいま                  | marijuana           |
| ちかん                  | molester, pervert   |
| ドタキャン                | sudden cancellation |
| <sup>もと</sup> 元カノ・カレ | ex-girl/boyfriend   |

#### る Verbs

|       |                          |
|-------|--------------------------|
| イケている | hot, handsome, sexy      |
| てれる   | to be embarrassed/shy    |
| ふざける  | to mess around, make out |
| なめる   | to look down on          |
| モテる   | to be attractive         |

Both a generic and sexual meaning are possible.

#### Phrases

|           |                      |
|-----------|----------------------|
| ざま (を) みろ | serves you right     |
| ちくしょう     | damnit!              |
| ドンマイ      | don't worry about it |

#### う Verbs

|        |                         |
|--------|-------------------------|
| いく     | to orgasm               |
| いちゃつく  | to flirt, make out      |
| ウケる    | to be amusing [intra]   |
| く食う    | to eat (rough)          |
| ググる    | to search online        |
| サボる    | to sluff/skip school    |
| びびる    | to be scared, shocked   |
| (に)はまる | to be obsessed w/       |
| (が)バレる | (info etc.) leaks       |
| ムカつく   | to be angry, pissed off |
| (と)やる  | to have sex with        |

#### Compound Verbs

|         |                          |
|---------|--------------------------|
| カンニングする | to cheat (on tests etc.) |
| じゃまする   | to interrupt, interfere  |
| チンする    | to microwave             |
| ナンパする   | to hit on, to pick up    |

#### Adverbs

|                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| <sup>いったい</sup> 一体 | [adds emphasis]         |
| ガチ                 | very, truly             |
| ダメもとで              | can't hurt to [do verb] |
| ほんまに               | honestly, truly         |
| まじ (で)             | truly, very, really     |

#### い Adjectives

|     |                      |
|-----|----------------------|
| ウザい | annoying, bothersome |
| いたい | cringe, embarrassing |
| えぐい | amazing, awful       |
| キモい | gross, icky          |
| すごい | amazing, incredible  |
| やばい | amazing, awful       |

#### な Adjectives

|        |                   |
|--------|-------------------|
| おろか・あほ | stupid, foolish   |
| ばか     | stupid, foolish   |
| へんたい   | sexual, perverted |



**Grammar Point 12.0: A Note About Impoliteness**

In many ways, this chapter is the opposite of Chapter 8. Rather than talking about forms that are “politer” than ~です・ます, we are going to discuss forms that are “more casual” than plain form: highly casual and even potentially offensive speech. Throughout the current chapter, I’ll call the forms I introduce “casual” or “crude”. Just like “polite”, however, these labels are not absolute. What is “crude” in one context maybe be just right, hip, cool, or even friendly in another. In some cases, the use of forms here may simply reflect differences in social power, rank, or status (e.g., “talking downwards”) rather than any issues of politeness at all. But to make my explanations easier I will use “casual” and “crude” uncritically, and I will also divide their uses as follows: when I call something “casual”, the form or word is not inherently rude, but can be inappropriate in a polite situation – or even a “casual” situation where plain form is normal. If I call something “crude”, it’s instead generally seen as distasteful, and brings about risk in any context.

The forms I discuss here are not, as far as I know, included in any mainstream textbooks. There are good reasons for this, of course. Time is limited in any classroom, and it’s much more important to learn fundamentals and inoffensive forms than potentially rude ones. However, I also think there are bad reasons why textbooks overlook the kind of content you’ll find here. Language learning is often focused on what is “proper” and “good”, and likes to pretend everything else isn’t worth our attention. But to truly understand a language, we need to understand how it is used by *everyone*, as even if we agree not to use “bad” terms they might be used towards us, or in the media we consume. Additionally, by leaving these forms out of formal materials, we pass the responsibility of explaining them onto guides to “rude Japanese”, and these are often both riddled with errors and written more with the intent of having a laugh than seriously improving anyone’s language ability.

Yet while I embrace you learning the content of this chapter, I still recommend you take care using what I introduce. While not all its contents are inherently or even *usually* offensive, all can be in the wrong context. And knowing what is the *right* context is often difficult. Consider how mastery of a word like “fuck” is a vital part of contemporary English fluency, but acquiring this skill is harder than almost any “normal” grammar form. So while the forms I will introduce here are common in Japan and Japanese media, and are absolutely all ones I think you should know (this chapter won’t cover obscure slang, extremely abusive curses, or new terms/phrasing whose longevity is questionable), they are not forms you should use actively. And if you *do* use the content of this chapter in front of your boss, teacher, or someone you’re trying to impress and consequently embarrass yourself or even damage that relationship as a result, that’s *your* responsibility.

All in all, I hope you enjoy this chapter, and that it helps you understand styles of Japanese language use that were closed off to you. But I also hope that learning about “improper” forms helps you better understand which forms around you *are* proper. Always err towards polite speech if you want to make a good impression with the largest number of people.



### Grammar Point 12.1: The ~ちゃう version of ~てしまう

The ~ちゃう form is a casual version of the ~てしまう ending from **GB9.3**. There is little difference between the two, although ~ちゃう can have a cutesy feel in some cases.

For irregular verbs and る verbs, the ~ちゃう form simply replaces ~てしまう. Think of the ~ちゃ as a sound made by blending ~てしま together.

Note how を is dropped in both sentences. This is very common in extremely casual speech.

あ、ごめん！もう チンしちゃった。

[Oh sorry! I already microwaved it and this act can't be undone.]

あら、リスが にげちゃった。ざんねん。なでたかったのに。

[Oh, the squirrel ran away completely. How sad. I wanted to pet it.]



For う verbs with a ~て form that ends in ~て, the same ~てしまう→ちゃう change occurs. However, if the verb's ~て form ends in ~で, the ending changes to ~じゃう instead.

かも is a casual shortening of かもしれない

え、でも、ばんごはん 作っちゃったよ！

[Eh, but, I finished making dinner!]

うわあ、はくかも。 はいちゃうよ。ビールをたくさん 飲んじゃったせい。

[Ugh, I might puke. I'm going to puke. 'Cuz I drank a lot of beers.]

In casual or rough speech the お can be dropped

父さんのせいでゲームで 死んじゃったよ！ 殺されちゃったよ！ まけちゃうぞ。

[Dad, because of you I died in the game! I was killed! We're going to lose!]



### Grammar Point 12.2: The ら抜き言葉 phenomenon

The term ら抜き言葉 refers to a solution to the problem of the potential form, passive form, and one 尊敬語 pattern for る verbs all looking like ~られる: when making a る verb's **potential ("can") form**, you can "remove (抜く)" the ら.

きのうはよく 寝(×)れた？

[Were you able to sleep well last night?]

なんでこのドアが 閉め(×)れないかな。

[I wonder why can't I shut this door...]

サンクスギビングに 食べすぎちゃったので もうこの服着(×)れない。

[I ate too much at Thanksgiving so now I can't put these clothes on anymore.]

一(×)れる



Out of the grammar in this chapter, ~ら抜き言葉 have one of the highest chances of becoming "normal" Japanese. They are very common, and it wouldn't be shocking to hear them even in a workplace. But they are still not yet OK in formal contexts/writing.

### Grammar Point 12.3: Saying “stuff like” with なんて

The phrase なんて attaches to nouns and noun phrases or plain form verb phrases to indicate “things like this”. It often – but not always – has a dismissive feel, or shows contempt or disbelief towards the word or words it is attached to. When following a noun (phrase), なんて absorbs any particles that would normally appear after the noun (phrase).

お金なんてないよ。別の人に聞いてよ。

[I don't have **any damn** money **or anything else**. Ask someone else.]

うそをつくなんてしないよ。信じなさい。

[I don't tell **things like** lies. Believe me.]

かれなんていやだ。そういう男なんてきょうみないよ。

[I can't stand him **(the jerk)**. I have no interest in men **like that**.]

あなたのいない人生なんて考えたくないよ。

[I don't want to even think about **something like** a world without you.]

ねんてね, sometimes altered into なんちゃって is a way of saying “just kidding”, but it often sounds old and/or lame.

This sentence is much more complimentary than the rest, but なんて still expresses shock/disgust towards an idea/possibility.

### Grammar Point 12.4: More sentence-final particles

The sentence-final particles (SFPs) ね, よ, and か are enough for most contexts. However, there are a large number of other SFPs common in Japan which are best not used in formal situations. The endings ~ぞ and ~ぜ are both mostly, but not exclusively, used by men. They most often express aggression, but can also produce a sort of cool, youthful solidarity.

これは・それは・あれは  
can be made rougher via changing ~れは to ~りや.

そりゃいけないぞ。もう一回やってみたら殺してやるぜ。

[Not a smart move **dumba\*\***. Try it again and I'll **f\*\*\*ing** kill you.]

飲もうぜ! 飲もう!

[Let's go drink! Let's go drink! **Also, we're like, young and cool woووо!**]



In contrast, the use of ~わ with a rising intonation is often associated with women's speech, and produces a mild assertive affect or a kind of delighted emphasis. This final ~わ can also be combined with ~ね and ~よ, although these sometimes sound affected or old fashioned. Characters in media tend to use ~わ more than people in real life.

行くわよ! はやくじゅんぴをおわらせて!

[We're going, **and I'm being firm but not mean yet**. Finish your prep fast!]

あら、かわいいわ! 見して、見して!

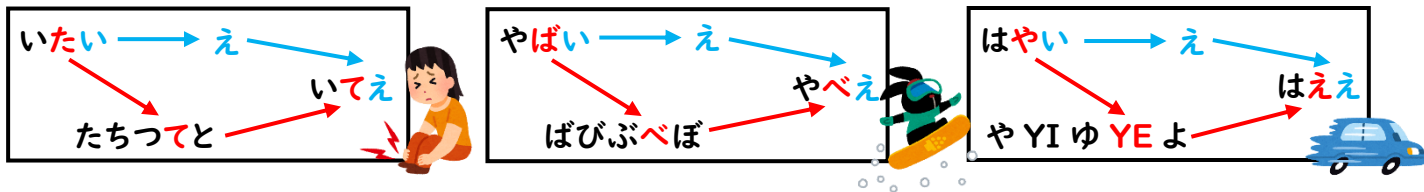
[OMG it's **sooooo** cute. Show it to me, let me see it!]

見して is a casual shortening of 見せて

There are many more SFPs, but like pronouns (see **GP12.7**) they come and go, and often are linked to certain groups or fads. Be careful using any besides the “standard” three.

## Grammar Point 12.5: The ~え variants of い adjectives and ~ない

In crude speech, Japanese い adjectives which end in ~ai or ~oi can change their final sound from ~い to ~え, often written as ~え. When this happens, the [consonant+a] sound before ~い changes to [consonant+え]... even if that sound “doesn’t exist”, as in *hayee*.



Generally, when written this second [c+vowel] to [c+え] change is “hidden” by kanji, as you can see in the renderings 痛え, 弱え, and 早え below. But in some cases, an emphatic small つ can appear before the ~[consonant+え] change, as in いてえ becoming いててえ.

うわ、痛ってててえ。めっちゃくちゃ痛え！  
[Oh, **owowowow**. This **f\*\*\*ing** hurts a lot!]

なんか非常にかてえよ、これ。ハンマーある？  
[This damn thing is super **hard** for some reason. You got a hammer?]

やあああ、弱え！あはは、ぜったいかてない。もうだめだ、もういい。  
[Ahhh, you're **weak** as s\*\*\*! Ahahah, no way you can win. It's too funny, stop.]

朝の三時なんて早えよ。無理無理無理。ぜったい起きられない。  
[Three in the morning is **too damn early**. No way in hell can I wake up.]

どうやってやったの？おもしれえ！ちょうかっけえ！  
[How did you do that? It's **so interesting**! Super **cool**!]

かっこういい  
is special, as it sees  
further shortening  
into かっけえ

For whatever reason, adjectives that don't end in ~ai or ~oi cannot make this change. You cannot, for instance, say “cold” in a rough way via 「さめえ」, or “fun” via 「たのしえ」.

No adjectives in this crude ~え form can conjugate into the past tense. However, **all** **words** can replace the ~ない ending of their casual negative form with ~ねえ.

聞か**ねえ**よ、そんなばかばかしい話。つま**んねえ**。  
[I **don't** listen to stupid stories like that. They're **boring as hell**.]

かれと付き合いたく**ねえ**。親切じゃ**ねえ**し、おもしろく**ねえ**し。  
[I **don't** want to date him at all. He's **not** kind, and he's **not** interesting.]

おれにお金**がねえ**よ。**つていうか**、おれは銀行でも**ねえ**ぞ。  
[I **don't** have any f\*\*\*ing money for you. And I'm **not** a g\*\*\*d\*\*\* bank **anyway**.]

つまらない is another special い adjective, as it often becomesつまんねえ instead ofつまらねえ in its crude positive form. Similar adjectives like すくない act normally, becomingすくねえ etc.

This crude phrase is used like “moreover” or “more to the point”

## Grammar Point 12.6: The command form (命令形)

The command form is a blunt and unfriendly form of verbs used for ordering people to do things. As always, the way to make the form is divided between the three verb types. You can see the two irregular verbs below:



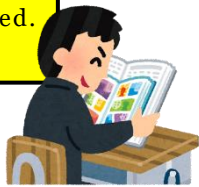
| Plain positive | Command  |
|----------------|----------|
| する             | せよ<br>しろ |
| くる             | こい       |

～せよ is mostly found in writing, and can feel a bit old fashioned. ~しろ is much more common.

今すぐ勉強しろ！  
[Go study right now!]

In casual speech/writing, the い in ~ている is often dropped. Likewise, ~ているの often becomes ~てんの.

おい！なにしてんの？はやくこっちにこ来い！  
[Hey! What do you think you're doing? Get your a\*\* over here NOW!]



For る verbs, simply change the final ~る to ~ろ.

もっと大人らしく考えろ！  
[Think more like an adult! I'm mad at you]  
まどを閉めろ！  
[Shut the d\*\*\* windows!]

English doesn't have a command form of verbs, so showing this form via translation is tricky. To give a gruff order, we often instead place verbs in front of sentences (Go to the store!), use tone of voice, and or literally state "I'm ordering you to [verb]".

Finally, for う verbs, change the final sound to the ~え sound from the same hiragana row.



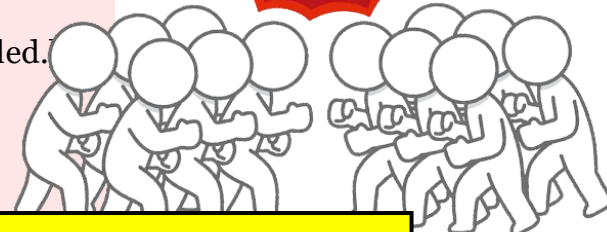
|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| の <del>お</del> | ま<br>み<br>む<br>め<br>も |
| お <del>よ</del> | が<br>ぎ<br>ぐ<br>げ<br>ご |
| う <del>た</del> | あ<br>い<br>う<br>え<br>お |
| あ <del>つ</del> | ら<br>り<br>る<br>れ<br>ろ |

すぐかのじょのところへ行ってあやまれ！  
[Go to her and apologize right now d\*\*\* you!]

もういいぞ、<sup>ころ</sup>帰れ。殺される前に帰れよ。  
[It's too late, go home. Go home before you get killed.]

行けよ！<sup>opponent</sup>てきを殺せ！がんばれ！  
[Go! Kill your enemy! Fight!]

While the command form is generally quite gruff and unkind, in contexts like this it can be encouraging.



To order someone to *not* do something, instead place な at the end of a verb in the **plain positive present** form. Unlike the politer ~ないてください, the verb does not negate.



これを飲むなよ！どくだよ、どく。

[Don't you dare drink this! It's poison. Poison.]

バカなことを言うな。私のところへ来るな。もう会いたくない。

[Don't say stupid things. Don't come near me. I don't want to know you anymore.]

ここがまだぬれているので走るな。

[It's still wet here so don't run. I'm talking down to you a bit, or am higher socially.]

### Grammar Point 12.7: Pronouns beyond わたし・あなた

Japanese has a lot of first, second, and third person pronouns, and the choice between them is often difficult. In Japanese classes, we regularly teach 私 as the “best” pronoun because it’s “safe”... and this is true! In most situations, 私 will get you through; at worst it’s a bit boring. Still, there’s no question that 私 is overused by Japanese learners, to the extent that it is now associated with them. The correct “replacement” pronoun is difficult to choose though, as arguably no two people feel the exact same about the same pronoun.

In traditional depictions of Japanese pronouns, there are five major first person pronouns broken down by politeness and gendered use as follows:



|              | Masculine | Feminine |
|--------------|-----------|----------|
| Hyper-Polite | わたくし      |          |
| Polite       | わたし       | わたし      |
| Semi-Polite  | ぼく        | あたし      |
| Informal     |           |          |
| Rough        | おれ        |          |

Under this chart, which is myth, everyone uses わたくし in hyper-polite situations, and わたし is always polite but seen as somewhat more formal when used by men. Men are then the only users of ぼく, but switch to おれ when acting particularly rough. In contrast, women might use あたし in casual situations, but have no “rough” speech.

There is value in knowing the chart above, as it does broadly explain some norms, and represents a common stereotype. But in reality, pronoun use in Japan is incredibly diverse, and there is no one reason that all people use (or avoid) a given pronoun.





For the “masculine” pronouns, **ぼく** is a sort of “manly but polite” pronoun, although it can also be seen as childish because young boys like it. The pronoun **おれ** is then seen as a bit rough, cool, or manly, depending on the context. These two pronouns are more commonly used by men than women, but the idea that *only* men use them is a complete fantasy. In some dialects they are even non-gendered! The use of **ぼく** by women as a semi-polite pronoun is normalized compared to **おれ**, although it can have a somewhat nerdy feel to it. Women using **おれ** is – in standard Japanese – still quite noticeable, and generally attempts to portray a very “cool” and anti-authority vibe. Women’s use of **ぼく**・**おれ** can sometimes be met with extreme disapproval, so do be aware of this before trying them out yourself.

「**ぼく**」を使う女性は時々「**ぼくっ子**」と呼ばれている。

[Women who use “**boku**” are sometimes called “*bokukko*”.]

「私はなぐるぞ」なんて言えない。「**おれ**がなぐるぞ」のほうがこわい。

[“*Watashi* will punch you” feels odd to say. “**Ore** will punch you” sounds scarier”]



In contrast, **あたし** is most commonly linked to casual/rough women’s speech or the speech of older women. As a result, some younger women have taken to **うち** instead. Some men do use **あたし**・**うち** though, with the most well known case being certain groups of gay men. The “oneself” term **自分** also sees use as a “neutral” polite pronoun, although it is somewhat preferred by men. Finally, some people just use their name (e.g., Mike would say “Mike likes it”), but this is seen as affected or annoying by others.

**自分**は自分のことを「自分」と呼ぶ。

[I call myself “*jibun*”.]

ぶんみゃくによって変わるよね。オフィスで「**自分**」、友だちと「**あたし**」。

[It changes based on context. At the office I’m *jibun*, but with friends, I’m *atashi*.]

In short, it’s kind of true that there is no choice of pronoun that someone won’t think is weird for some reason.

Japanese also has a number of second person pronouns. These generally have more stable meanings. The most “normal” is **あなた**, which can also be used to get a partner’s attention.

**あなた**、ちょっここっちに来て。←

[**Darling**, come here for a bit please.]

あ、すみません。これは**あなた**のさいふですか。

[Ah, excuse me. Is this **your** wallet?]

**あなたは** would be very odd here.



Names/titles are always preferred in Japanese over second person pronouns, but this does not mean words like **あなた** are “rude”. But don’t yell “**あなた**” at a stranger to get their attention, no. That would imply they’re your partner.



The second person pronouns きみ and ぼく are then more casual than あなた, but also generally not seen as impolite. The きみ pronoun generally implies you are close to the speaker, although it can have gruff uses, while ぼく is mainly used towards young boys.

あ、きみのを使っちゃった？ごめん！

[Ah, did I use yours? My bad!]

ねえ、ぼく！お母さんは今家にいるの？これをサインしてほしいんだけど。

[Hey there little dude! Is your mom home? I want her to sign this.]



The best way to refer to a friend though is usually their name. Calling someone by their name as-is, known as <sup>よ</sup>呼び<sup>す</sup>捨て, often shows that you are very close or even in a relationship, so it's best to avoid it until they <sup>よ</sup>呼び<sup>す</sup>捨て you. The ~さん ending can be replaced by ~くん, ~ちゃん, or ~たん to show affection in a safer way. Stereotypically, ~くん is used for men, while the others are used for women. Some people dislike being referred to by these suffixes though (for instance, not all young women are huge fans of old men making a one-sided decision to call them ~ちゃん), so be sure your relationship is close enough before using them. A safe rule is that if they are calling you [name]+[suffix other than さん], you can do the same back... unless they are above you in social status.



あ、まさみちゃん！おはよう！今日は何するの？

[Oh, good morning (my close friend) Masami! What are you doing today?]

Other second person pronouns generally risk implying contempt. The pronoun お前 literally means “honorable in front of [me]” and at one time was polite. It is still used in a not-always-crude sense to talk to people younger than you, and some husbands still use it without any rude intent to refer to their wives, although this becoming a dated practice. So if you see an 80 year old man call his wife お前, don't assume they are fighting, but if you call your partner お前 and it starts a fight, you have no one to blame but yourself. The form あんた, a derivative of あなた, works similarly; it can be neutral or imply hostility. The pronouns てめえ and きさま are then pretty much always rude. The one exception is as a term of rough comradery, similar to insulting your close friends as a form of bonding.

おい、お前！なんでまたここにいるの？きのう戻るなって言ってたでしょう！

[Hey, a\*\*\*\*\*! Why are you here again? I told you yesterday to never come back!]

なんで笑ってんの、てめえ。お前もまけたじゃん。もういい、行こうよ、行こう。

[You jerk, what's so funny? You lost too bro. Whatever, let's just get out of here.]



Remember, what is vulgar or rude in one context may be treated as friendly and warm in another.

For third person pronouns, or references to third parties, the words やつ and こいつ are generally seen as impolite. Both can be pluralized by adding ~ら. Names and/or nouns referencing groups can also have ~め attached to show disrespect, and ~やろう can be attached to この・その・あの and many animal words for a similar pejorative effect.

そういうやつらが大きらい。

[I hate sons of a b\*\*\*\*es like that.]

きみのようなよっぱらいと話すつもりないぞ。出て行けブタめ。

[I don't have any intention of talking to a drunk like you. Get out you f\*\*\*\*ing pig!]

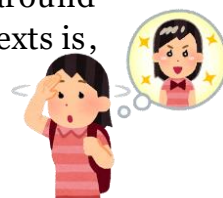
死ね、ねずみやろう！

[Die you rat f\*\*\*.]

The clip art is a joke. This would be said to a human. Probably.



Ultimately, I highly recommend avoiding all potentially offensive pronouns, and sticking with 私 as your first-person pronoun until you have spent time in Japan (*not* just engaging with Japanese media) and seeing who uses what pronoun where. Exploring which pronoun works best for you can be exciting and important, but breaking norms brings about risks – or even, because you're a non-native speaker, the assumption that you're just making a mistake – and it's important to understand how other people may feel about your pronoun use. You may find that your favorite first-person pronoun is one you can only use around close friends... but that's totally normal! Using different pronouns in different contexts is, probably more than anything, the true norm of pronoun use in Japan(ese).



## Grammar Point 12.8: Casual adverbs

In casual speech, there are a number of synonyms for とても, as you can see below. Note that <sup>ぜんぜん</sup>全然 is one of these. That said, while positive use of 全然 is becoming normalized, you should still consider positive sentences using 全然 “wrong” in formal contexts.

うわ、今日はめっちゃ寒いよね。

[Oh my god, it's so cold.]

ちょう美人じゃん？ まじやばい。

[They are extremely beautiful aren't they!? It's too much]

気にしないでよ！ <sup>ぜん</sup>全然だいじょうぶだ。ドンマイ。

[Don't worry about it. It's absolutely fine. Not a problem.]

ドンマイ comes from “don't mind”, but means “don't stress about it” not “I don't care”.





In more vulgar speech, the word くそ<sup>s h i t</sup> can be attached to adjectives in a manner similar to the English adverb f\*\*\*ing.

さき先くそデカイゴキブリを見ちゃった。ひっこそう。

[I just saw a f\*\*\*ing gigantic cockroach. Let's move to a new house.]

なんでそのくそヤバいやつと時間をすごすの？

[Why do you spend time with that extremely sketchy dude?]



### Grammar Point 12.9: Expressing contempt for behavior via ~(て)やがる

The ~やがる form is vulgar suffix which express contempt towards the **doer of an action**. That is, the speaker/writer feels contempt, but the topic/subject of the sentence does the action. There are two methods to creating the ~やがる form. The first is just to attach ~やがる to the verb's **stem**. Often, sentences which do this just trail off in the ~て form when directly critiquing an action.

ぼくのフライドポテトを食べやがって！自分のを買いに行け。

[Hey, stop eating my g\*\*\*\*\*n fries! Go buy your own!]

バカな会話をよくしやがるね。

[You love wasting my time by doing stupid conversation.]

一体何言いやがったの？

[What the hell did you say?]

As you can see from these conjugations, やがる is an う verb. It would be nearly unthinkable to conjugate it into ~やがります though, as “polite contempt” doesn't really work.

You can also place ~やがる after a verb's ~て form. This is actually the ~ている form with ~やがる attached to ~いる, indicating contempt towards a habitual or continuing action. However, in practice the ~い from ~いる is often dropped, creating ~てやがる.

わかいくせにもうお酒なんて飲んでやがる。

[Despite being young they're already drinking booze (I think this is bad).]

何を言ってやがった？

[What stupid nonsense were you spouting off?]



## Grammar Point 12.10: Repeating yourself via ~ってば

The ending ~ってば can be attached to a sentence that ends in the plain form to stress that you've already said or explained something. This statement generally implies a high level of frustration, and stresses that you are tired of repeating yourself.



違う **ってば**！ちゃんと先生の話聞きなさい！

[**For the last time**, you're wrong! Listen to the teacher's/my explanation properly!]

「でもみほちゃん大好きだよ。」 「もう会いたくない **ってば**！ここに来るな！」

["But Miho, I love you." "**I told you** I don't want to see you again! Don't come here!"]

The use of ~てば is always in response to a comment or context. You can't, for instance, say ばんごはんってば！ to frustratedly call people to dinner if it's the first time you call them.

## Grammar Point 12.11: The ~か・かい interrogative endings

In casual Japanese, questions are normally made via rising intonation and ~か is dropped. Adding ~か back is possible, but creates three distinct meanings: either the question is 1) self-reflexive ("I see..."), 2) normal, but a bit crude, or 3) aggressive and/or accusatory.

1

なるほど。私の仕事だった**か**。

[I see. Hmm... **so** it was my job... **I misunderstood and will ruminate on this.**]

2

じゃ、今行こう**か**？あるいは明日行く**か**？

[So shall we head out now? Or go tomorrow? **Also, I'm like, way casual oooo.**]



「へえ、お前がおれをたおすつもり**か**？いい**か**？無理だよ。」

["Oh-ho, **you're** going to defeat me? **Listen up**, not a chance."]

知る**か**よ is a crude set phrase which translates well as "who gives a \*\*\*\*?"

The ending ~かい similarly has either 1) an accusatory, crude impression or 2) and extremely casual feel as if talking to a child. Tone of voice matters in telling the two apart.

あんたがやる**かい**？笑わせるな。

[**You're** going to do it? **I'm incredulous**. Don't make me laugh.]

ねえ、さとうくん。このおもちゃ欲しい**かい**？

[Hey Sato. You want this toy? **Also, I'm way older than you.**]



Using **かい** or **か** to someone higher in status than you is a good way to get in very deep trouble.

## CHAPTER 12 KANJI ・ かんじ

This week, we are learning 18 kanji used for common verbs you know.

|   |                 |                                                                                                             |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 感 | Meaning         | Feelings                                                                                                    |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                                                                                                             |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | かん                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>かん 感じる</div> <div>かん 感じ</div> <div>かんじょう 感情</div> <div>どうかん 同感</div>                                   |
| 信 | Meaning         | Belief                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> |                                                                                                             |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しん                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>しん 信じる</div> <div>しんよう 信用 (confidence in)</div> <div>しんらい 信頼 (trust)</div> <div>しんこう 信仰 (belief)</div> |
| 引 | Meaning         | Pull                                                                                                        |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | ひ (く)                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | いん                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>ひ 引く</div> <div>ひ 引き出す</div> <div>わりびき 割引</div> <div>さくいん 索引</div>                                     |
| 押 | Meaning         | Push                                                                                                        |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | お (す)                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | おう                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>お 押す</div> <div>お 押し付ける</div> <div>おしい 押入れ</div>                                                       |



|   |             |                                                                                                                             |
|---|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 込 | Meaning     | Crowded, entry, complex                                                                                                     |
|   | Kun yomi    | こ（む）・こ（み）・こ（める）                                                                                                             |
|   | On yomi     |                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses | <div>こ 込む</div> <div>み こ 見込み</div> <div>の こ 飲み込む</div> <div>お こ 落ち込む</div>                                                  |
| 受 | Meaning     | Accept, take, receive                                                                                                       |
|   | Kun yomi    | う（ける）・う（かる）                                                                                                                 |
|   | On yomi     | じゅ                                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses | <div>う 受ける</div> <div>じゅけん 受験</div> <div>う 受かる</div> <div>じゅ わ き 受話器</div>                                                  |
| 呼 | Meaning     | Call                                                                                                                        |
|   | Kun yomi    | よ（ぶ）                                                                                                                        |
|   | On yomi     | こ                                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses | <div>よ 呼ぶ</div> <div>しん こ きゅう 深呼吸</div>                                                                                     |
| 残 | Meaning     | Remain, leave over                                                                                                          |
|   | Kun yomi    | のこ（る）・のこ（す）                                                                                                                 |
|   | On yomi     | ざん                                                                                                                          |
|   | Sample uses | <div>のこ 残す</div> <div>ざんねん 残念</div> <div>のこ 残る</div> <div>ざんだか 残高</div>                                                     |
| 座 | Meaning     | Sit                                                                                                                         |
|   | Kun yomi    | すわ（る）                                                                                                                       |
|   | On yomi     | ざ                                                                                                                           |
|   | Sample uses | <div>すわ 座る</div> <div>おう ざ 王座</div> <div>ざ せき 座席</div> <div>ざ ぶ とん 座布団</div> <div>ゆうせんせき 優先席</div> <div>ぎんこうこう ざ 銀行口座</div> |

|   |                 |                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 戻 | Meaning         | Return                                                                                                                                |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | もど（る）・もど（す）                                                                                                                           |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | れい                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>もど<br/>戻る</div> <div>と もど<br/>取り戻す</div> <div>もど<br/>戻す</div> <div>ま もど<br/>巻き戻す</div>                                           |
| 消 | Meaning         | Erase, delete, put out, turn off                                                                                                      |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | け（す）・き（える）                                                                                                                            |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しょう                                                                                                                                   |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>け<br/>消す</div> <div>しょうぼうしゃ<br/>消防車</div> <div>き<br/>消える</div> <div>しょう か<br/>消化</div>                                           |
| 付 | Meaning         | Attach, turn on                                                                                                                       |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | つ（く）・つ（ける）                                                                                                                            |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | ふ                                                                                                                                     |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>づ<br/>付ける</div> <div>き ふ<br/>寄付</div> <div>っ<br/>付く</div> <div>き づ<br/>気付く</div> <div>っ あ<br/>付き合う</div> <div>な づ<br/>名付ける</div> |
| 守 | Meaning         | Protect                                                                                                                               |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | まも（る）                                                                                                                                 |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | しゅ                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>まも<br/>守る</div> <div>ほ しゅてき<br/>保守的</div> <div>まも<br/>お守り</div> <div>み まも<br/>見守る</div>                                          |
| 得 | Meaning         | Get, earn                                                                                                                             |
|   | <i>Kun yomi</i> | え（る）                                                                                                                                  |
|   | <i>On yomi</i>  | とく                                                                                                                                    |
|   | Sample uses     | <div>え<br/>得る</div> <div>なつとく<br/>納得</div> <div>しゅとく<br/>取得</div>                                                                     |

|   |             |                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 殺 | Meaning     | Kill                                                                                                                                           |
|   | Kun yomi    | ころ (す)                                                                                                                                         |
|   | On yomi     | さつ                                                                                                                                             |
|   | Sample uses | <div>ころ<br/>殺す</div> <div>さつじん<br/>殺人</div> <div>じ さつ<br/>自殺</div> <div>さつがい<br/>殺害</div> <div>そうさい<br/>相殺する</div> <div>あんさつ<br/>暗殺</div>      |
| 置 | Meaning     | Put, place down                                                                                                                                |
|   | Kun yomi    | お (く) ・お (ける)                                                                                                                                  |
|   | On yomi     | ち                                                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>お<br/>置く</div> <div>お ば<br/>置き場</div> <div>ほう ち<br/>放置</div> <div>せつ ち<br/>設置</div> <div>い ち<br/>位置</div> <div>はい ち<br/>配置</div>          |
| 違 | Meaning     | Different, wrong                                                                                                                               |
|   | Kun yomi    | ちが (う)                                                                                                                                         |
|   | On yomi     | い                                                                                                                                              |
|   | Sample uses | <div>ちが<br/>違う</div> <div>ま ちが<br/>間違える</div> <div>ま ちが<br/>間違う</div> <div>い ほう<br/>違法</div> <div>ま ちが<br/>間違い</div> <div>い わ かん<br/>違和感</div> |
| 笑 | Meaning     | Laugh                                                                                                                                          |
|   | Kun yomi    | わら (う) ・わら (い)                                                                                                                                 |
|   | On yomi     | しょう                                                                                                                                            |
|   | Sample uses | <div>わら<br/>笑う</div> <div>わら<br/>笑い</div> <div>ばくしょう<br/>爆笑</div> <div>くしょう<br/>苦笑</div>                                                       |



## CHAPTER 12 WORKBOOK ・ ワークブック 12

### Exercise 12.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

## 1. 感

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 感            | 感 | 感 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | ㄥ | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 后 | 后 | 咸 | 咸 | 咸 | 咸 | 感 | 感 | 感 | 感 |  |  |

## 2. 信

[illegible]

### 3. 引

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 引            | 引 | 引 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 4. 押

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 押            | 押 | 押 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5. 込

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 込            | 込 | 込 |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6. 受

|              |   |   |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 受            | 受 | 受 |                                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 7. 呼

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 呼            | 呼 | 呼 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 1 | 𠃍 | 口 | 𠃍 | 𠃍 | 𠃍 | 𠃍 | 𠃍 | 𠃍 | 呼 |

## 8. 残

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 残            | 残 | 残 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | 丿 | ㄣ | ㄣ | ㄣ | ㄣ | ㄣ | 残 | 残 | 残 |

## 9. 座

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 座            | 座 | 座 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丶 | 一 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 广 | 座 | 座 | 座 |

## 10. 戾

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 戾            | 戾 | 戾 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 一 | ㄣ | ㄣ | 户 | 户 | 户 | 户 | 戾 |  |  |

## 11. 消

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 消            | 消 | 消 |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 12. 付

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| 付            | 付 | 付 |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | 亻 | 亻 | 付 | 付 |  |  |  |  |  |





### Exercise 11.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. 「しんじてくれ」って？わらわせるな。 きえろ！

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

2. にもつをうけつけにおいたらホテルにもどるまでまもってくれるよ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. ちがうってば！まちがっていることをもういっかいいうところしてやるぞ！

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

4. ひかなければならないドアをおしちゃって「ばか」とよばれた。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

5. どこにすわれる？ほとんどのイスにガムがついているんだけど。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

6. あたたかいおちやをのみこむと、めっちやきもちいいかんじがするぜ。

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

7. にほんごをべんきょうすることでなにをえるつもりかい？せつめいしろ！

Rewrite: \_\_\_\_\_

Translate: \_\_\_\_\_

This is a fairly short workbook, as I'm not sure I want people "practicing" the content of this chapter. I may change my mind about this in the future, but for now, the workbook is just going to focus on the kanji, working in a bit of grammar practice in these translations.

## CHAPTER 12 WORKBOOK ANSWER KEY • 解答集 12

### Exercise 12.1

Practice writing this week's kanji. Be sure to pay attention to the stroke order.

## 1. 感

|              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 感            | 感 | 感 |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Stroke order |   |   | 丿 | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ | ㇏ |

Check to make sure you filled in the kanji carefully, following stroke order and retaining a general size balance across each of the 10 free-hand attempts.

## 2. 信

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 信            | 信 | 信 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 3. 引

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 弓            | 弓 | 弓 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 4. 押

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 押            | 押 | 押 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5. 込

|              |   |   |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 込            | 込 | 込 |                                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6. 受

|              |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 受            | 受 | 受 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stroke order |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |





## Exercise 11.2

Re-write each sentence to include kanji for the underlined elements, and then translate.

1. 「しんじてくれ」って？わらわせるな。きえろ！

Rewrite: 「**信じてくれ**」って？**笑**わせるな。**消**えろ！

Translate: **"Trust me?" Don't make me laugh. Get the hell out of here!**

2. にもつをうけつけにおいたらホテルにもどるまでまもってくれるよ。

Rewrite: **にもつを受付に置いたらホテルに戻るまで守**ってくれるよ。

Translate: **If you leave your luggage with the reception they'll protect it until you return to the hotel.**

3. ちがうってば！まちがっていることをもういっかいいうところしてやるぞ！

Rewrite: **違**うってば！**間違**っていることをもう一回言**う**と殺**して**やるぞ！

Translate: **I said that's wrong! Keep saying incorrect stuff and I'll end you.**

4. ひかなければならないドアをおしちゃった。「ばか」とよばれた。

Rewrite: **引**かなければならないドアを**押**しちゃって「ばか」と呼**ば**れた。

Translate: **I pushed a door you have to pull and was called an idiot.**

5. どこにすわれる？ほとんどのイスにガムがついているんだけど。

Rewrite: **どこに座**れる？ほとんどのイスにガムが**付**いているんだけど。

Translate: **Where can we/I sit? There's gum on most of the seats...**

6. あたたかいおちやをのみこむと、めっちゃきもちいいかんじがするぜ。

Rewrite: **温**かい**お**茶を**飲**み込**む**と、めっちゃ**気持**いい**感**じがするぜ。

Translate: **When you swallow warm tea, you feel super good.**

7. にほんごをべんきょうすることでなにをえるつもりかい？せつめいしろ！

Rewrite: **日**本語を勉強すること**で**何を得るつもりかい？**説**明しろ！

Translate: **What do you plan on getting out of studying Japanese? Explain!**

# GRAMMAR INDEX ・ ぶんぽう さくいん

Note: You can use ctrl+left mouse to click on a grammar point and jump to it.

## Chapter 1

1. Asking/Giving permission via ~てもいい.....7
2. Forbidding via ~てはいけない.....9
3. Saying [verb] is necessary via ~なければ/~なくては.....10
4. Recommending with ~ほうがいい.....11
5. Using ために to say “for” or “in order to”.....12
6. Creating different “shoulds” with べき and はず.....12

## Chapter 2

1. The verb for “to say” and “to think” .....30
2. Using ~かた to express “way/how to”.....32
3. もう~まだ.....33
4. Different probabilities of plans.....35
5. Expressing desire via ~たい, ~たがる.....36
6. Listing activities via ~たり、~たり.....38
7. A new “but” via のに.....38

## Chapter 3

1. The potential (“can do”) from of verbs .....56
2. Attempting things for the first time with ~てみる.....58
3. Plain forms of ましょう・ませんか.....58
4. Question words marked by か make “some”.....60
5. Turning adjectives into nouns.....61
6. Expressing “too much” via ~すぎる.....62
7. Connecting explanations via し.....63

## Chapter 4

1. Giving & receiving items .....83
2. Giving & receiving actions.....84
3. Saying “for” with ために and にとって.....87
4. Doing things in advance with ~ておく.....88
5. Requesting via ~てくれませんか.....88

## Chapter 5

1. Asking “Have you ever?”.....106
2. Using によると for “According to”.....107
3. Reporting speech/hearsay with そうです & みたいです.....107
4. Hard/easy to verb.....111
5. Three big ifs.....112

## Chapter 6

1. Two versions of “only”.....134

|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 2. Using ~てから for “right after” .....            | 137 |
| 3. Simultaneous actions (~ながら、あいだ、and ついでに)..... | 138 |
| 4. ~ば and related “if” forms .....               | 140 |
| 5. Regret and longing, via ~ばよかった and ~のに.....   | 145 |
| 6. “The more X, the more Y” via ~ば・ほど.....       | 146 |
| 7. The sentence final かな and かしら.....            | 146 |

## Chapter 7

|                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. Expressing “even if” via ~ても.....                | 166 |
| 2. Conveying difficulty via なかなか~ない.....            | 167 |
| 3. Emphasis via こんなに・そんなに・あんなに・どんなに.....            | 168 |
| 4. Blame and credit with せいで and おかげで.....          | 170 |
| 5. Saying “without [verbing]” via ~ないで and ~ずに..... | 171 |
| 6. The suffix ~的.....                               | 173 |
| 7. A fistful of counters.....                       | 175 |

## Chapter 8

|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 0. A note about politeness.....                  | 196 |
| 1. The “honorific” register 尊敬語.....             | 197 |
| 2. The “humble” register 謙譲語.....                | 204 |
| 3. Avoiding common mistakes with honorifics..... | 207 |
| 4. Using ~てくれる・あげる・もらう with keigo.....           | 210 |
| 5. Polite language.....                          | 212 |

## Chapter 9

|                                                             |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. The passive form (受け身・受動態).....                          | 240 |
| 2. The causative form (使役動詞).....                           | 242 |
| 3. The causative-passive form (使役受動態).....                  | 247 |
| 4. Passive/causative/causative-passive particle review..... | 250 |
| 5. Requesting actions with ~てほしい・~てもらいたい.....               | 251 |
| 6. The ~てしまう ending.....                                    | 252 |
| 7. Words using 似.....                                       | 253 |
| 8. Requests via ~なさい.....                                   | 254 |
| 9. までに as a deadline.....                                   | 254 |

## Chapter 10

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. Questions within sentences.....                      | 276 |
| 2. Defining things via という.....                         | 277 |
| 3. The “As a noun” form として.....                        | 278 |
| 4. Metaphors via ~のよう.....                              | 278 |
| 5. 気 words.....                                         | 281 |
| 6. Using ~ていく・てくる to show the start/end of actions..... | 284 |
| 7. Desiring positive futures via ~といい.....              | 285 |
| 8. Expressing regret via ~てすみませんでした.....                | 285 |
| 9. Using たびに to mean “every time”.....                  | 286 |
| 10. Seeking confirmation via negative endings.....      | 286 |



## Chapter 11

1. Depending on via によって.....308
2. Contrasting expectations with くせに.....309
3. Subsidiary Verbs.....310
4. A few counters more.....312
5. Extent via ~ほど.....316
6. Saying “for” as in “given that”.....317
7. Suggesting via ~たらどう.....318
8. Two uses of ばかり.....318
9. Saying “ever since” with ~てからは.....319
10. Two new uses of ある.....319

## Chapter 12

0. A note about impoliteness.....345
1. The ~ちゃう version of ~てしまう.....346
2. The ら抜き言葉 phenomenon.....346
3. Saying “stuff like” withなんて.....347
4. More sentence-final particles.....347
5. The ~え variants of い adjectives and ~ない.....348
6. The command form (命令形).....349
7. Pronouns beyond わたし・あなた.....350
8. Casual adverbs.....353
9. Expressing contempt for behavior via ~(て)やがる.....354
10. Repeating yourself via ~ってば.....355
11. The ~か・かい interrogative endings.....355



## SO YOU'VE FINISHED ・ 終わったね、よくできた

Congratulations! You're done! I hope you feel more confident in your Japanese abilities, and that my explanations helped you understand grammar points you've been struggling with (or eased you through ones you'd never seen!). Writing this textbook wasn't easy, but I imagine getting through the whole thing was harder. If you do challenge N4 and pass, drop me a message! I'd love to know my time was put to good use.

Moving forward to the next level of Japanese study is tricky – the more advanced you get, the more limited the resources available to you become. Especially free ones. The number one thing I recommend is getting a good tutor – especially one with experience designing clear learning plans aimed at accomplishing concrete goals (such as passing a specific JLPT level). While this will cost you, moving into N3/2/1 level Japanese is, in my mind at least, nearly impossible without chances to interact with highly skilled speakers. Yes, you can use Japanese media to improve your reading and listening, but practicing your skills in interacting, thinking on your feet, listening carefully, and thinking critically in a new language really require another human being.

In addition to a teacher, I also recommend some kind of textbook or course. There are a number of excellent grammar guides online, but many don't really organize the grammar into any concrete study plan. They are useful for reviewing specific points you're struggling with, but not for making concrete steps forward. More troubling, most don't really provide courses of vocabulary that help you move forward. Apps then can be fun, and are certainly better than nothing, but rarely bother to explain grammar to you. This isn't necessarily a critique! These resources weren't designed to do everything. But it does mean they can't replace a well-designed course. I personally have been impressed with the Tobira intermediate textbook, and the Kanzen Master JLPT practice texts. These don't *replace* a good teacher, but texts like them can be a great supplement for a teacher, or even give you something to work through with a teacher to great effect.

Another simple strategy I recommend is to start learning 1-2 new words a day. When I moved to Japan, I set a daily goal of looking up 2 new words that I thought I would need (or learned IRL). For instance, before my first trip to a Japanese dentist, my 2 words a day for a few weeks were dental vocabulary – it's not in most textbooks, but I needed the words. As part of this daily learning process I would take a lined notebook, and fill in four lines: on the first line I would write the word in kanji, then in hiragana, then in English, and then fill the line with the word in kanji. On the second line, I would then use the word in short sentences. Then, I would repeat this on the next two lines for the second word. This had the benefit of turning memorization into immediate *use*, and learning kanji as things used to write words rather than in the abstract. I then would budget 30-60 minutes each weekend to reviewing everything I've learned, sometimes even starting new notebooks filled with vocab I'd forgotten from the first, and then starting back at the beginning once I "caught up" to my current new vocab. Through this, I learned an extra (that is, on top of my normal study) 730 words a year (or so, I won't pretend I never missed a day), and all the kanji that came with them. Plus, they were all words I *wanted* to know and use, not words someone told me would be important. Doing something similar will put you well ahead of the pack, and supplement whatever you're doing.

All in all though, the most important strategy is to just keep it up! Japanese is, in my opinion, not a "hard" language. It's a time consuming one, for sure. And if you struggle with it you shouldn't feel bad. Learning any language involves struggles. But Japanese is a fairly consistent, logical language, and if you put the time in you will get to where you want to be. The most important thing is not mystical innate talent, but just a regular study habit: a minimum of 30 minutes a day every day, including time to go back and review things you already "know", along with enough self-forgiveness to not beat yourself up when you miss a few days here or there... with mild stress on the word *few*. As someone who had no background in learning a language, didn't start learning Japanese till they were 18, and had absolutely no familiarity with Asian writing systems before starting, I do think I'm qualified to say that if I can do it, you can too. Indeed, many of you are likely starting in much better positions than me due to how easy it is to engage with authentic Japanese materials now compared to when I started, and therefore have every possibility to quickly outstrip my meager talents. The only real advice I have left to give is consequently real old-man stuff, so forgive me, but here it is: the best thing you can do in your dedicated study time is turn off the screens (besides your dictionary), and commit to uninterrupted Japanese work. If you can make that a habit, unfollow all these lame "kanji so hard" meme accounts that exist only to sap motivation, and surround yourself with a community of engaged learners, you'll also wonder why people find Japanese to be a "hard" language too. Best of luck. I'm rooting for you.

